THE

WELLINGTON COLLEGE

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

BY

H. W. EVE, M.A.,

Formerly Head Master of University College School, London,
Late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge,
Officier d'Académie.

AND

F. DE BAUDISS,

Late Senior Modern Language Master at University College School,
Formerly one of the Modern Language Masters at
Wellington College.

NINETEENTH EDITION

SEVENTY-FIFTH THOUSAND.

REVISED AND ENLARGED.

LONDON:
DAVID NUTT.

1917.

LONDON
PRINTED BY WILLIAMS, LEA AND CO.,
CLIFTON HOUSE, WORSHIP STREET, & 46 & 47, LONDON WALL, E.C.

PREFACE

TO THE

TWELFTH TO THE SEVENTEENTH EDITIONS.

THE present editions have been carefully revised and some changes have been made in the Accidence, the most important of which is the introduction of a chapter (XVI.) on the connection between French and Latin verbs. An abridged set of Gender Rules, 43*a*, and a Parsing table of Pronouns, 90*a* and 90*b*, have also been added. The Minor Syntax is no longer printed with the complete Grammar, but only with the Accidence. In the Syntax the following Sections are either new or partially re-written, 30, 30*a*, 49, 62*a*, 65*a*, 67, 72, 82*a*, 112*a*, 115, 115*a*, 137, 138. The numbering of the Sections of the Syntax in the earlier editions has been strictly adhered to. In the Accidence it has also been retained except between Sections 103 and 123. In the thirteenth edition, Section 2 of the Accidence has been re-written.

April, 1898.

H. W. E.
F. DE B.

*** In the fifteenth and sixteenth editions, Appendices containing the licences tolerated by the decree of 26th February, 1901, and a phonetic transcription of the lists on pp. 330, 331, have been added. Both editions have undergone careful revision.

March, 1904.

*** The seventeenth edition has undergone further careful revision.

February, 1908.

CONTENTS.

ACCIDENCE.

PAGE

INTRODUCTORY 1

1. Alphabet. 2. Sounds of the Letters. 3. Orthographic Signs. 4. Acute and Grave Accent. 5. Circumflex Accent. 6. Cedilla. 7. Diæresis or *Tréma*. 8. Hyphen. 9. Apostrophe and Elision. 10. Capital Letters. 11. Stops.

I. ARTICLES AND NOUNS 5

12. No Cases in French. 13. Number. 14. Gender. 15. Articles. 16. *Le, la* before a vowel. 17. Article with *à, de*. 18. Declension of Articles. 19. Partitive Article.

II. PLURAL OF SIMPLE NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES... ... 8

20. Most Nouns add *s; s, x, z*. 21. *Au, eu, œu*. 22. *Al*. 23. *Ail, ou*. 24. Irregular and double plurals. 25. *Ant, ent*. 26. Nouns without plural inflexion. 27. Different senses in singular and plural. 28. Nouns used in plural only. 29. Plural of Adjectives. 30. Adjectives in *al*.

III. FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS 11

31. General rule—*e muet, er, gu*. 32. Endings *f, eux*. 33. Endings *en, on, el, eil*. 34. Ending *et*. 35. *Bel, nouvel*, &c. 36. Exceptions—first list, second list. 37. Nouns and Adjectives in *eur*. 38. Feminine of Nouns. 39. *Esse* and *ine*. 40. Names of animals.

IV. GENDER OF NOUNS 18

41. General Rules. 42. Masculine endings. 43. Feminine endings. 43*a*. Abridged Gender Rules. 44. Masculines in *e muet*. 45. Nouns with two genders —First list. 46. Second list. 47. Gender of *gens*.

PAGE

V. PLURAL OF COMPOUND NOUNS 36

48. General Principles. 49. Nouns in Apposition. 50. Nouns with Prefix. 51. Noun depending on Noun. 52. Compounds of Verb and Noun. 52*a*. Miscellaneous Phrases. 53. Particular Cases. 53*a*. List of Compound Nouns.

VI. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES 39

54. Formation. 54*a*. Latin Survivals. 55. Comparison of Adverbs. 56. Form with *le plus*.

VII. NUMERALS 40

57. Definitions. 58. Cardinals 58*a*. Pronunciation. 59. Ordinals. 60. Notes on Cardinals and Ordinals. 61. Fractions. 62. What o'clock is it? 63. Days of month. 63*a*. Ellipses. 64. Titles.

VIII. PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES 44

65. Classification. 66. Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives. 67. Conjunctive and Disjunctive Personal Pronouns. 68. Declension of Conjunctives. 69. Reflexive Pronouns. 70. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns. 71. Disjunctive Reflexive do. 72. Possessive Adjectives. 73. Possessive Pronouns. 74. Demonstrative Adjectives. 75. Demonstrative Pronouns. 76. Relative Pronouns. 77. Examples of *qui*, *lequel*. 78. *Ce qui*. 79. Interrogative Adjectives. 80. Interrogative Pronouns. 81. Distributive Adjectives and Pronouns. 82. Indefinite Pronouns. 83. *Quelque*, *quelqu'un*. 84. *Quelque*, *quel...que*. 85. Negative Pronouns. 86. *Tout*. 87. *Quelconque*, *quiconque*. 88. *Autre*. 89. *Plusieurs*. 90. Reciprocal Pronouns. 90*a*. Parsing of some Pronouns. 90*b*. Rendering of some English Pronouns.

IX. VERBS—INTRODUCTORY 57

91. Moods. 92. Indicative. 93. Conditional. 94. Imperative. 95. Subjunctive. 96. Infinitive. 97. Participles. 98. Voices. 99. Compound Tenses. 100. Conjugations. 101. Primitive Tenses. 102. Conjugation compared with Latin.

PAGE

X. CONJUGATION OF AUXILIARIES 60

103. *Avoir.* 104. *Être.*

XI. REGULAR CONJUGATIONS 64

105. First, *parler.* 106. Second, *finir.* 107. *Dormir.* 108. Verbs like *finir.* 109. Verbs like *dormir.* 110. *Offrir*, &c. 111. Third, *recevoir.* 112. Fourth, *Rendre.* 113. *Craindre.* 114. *Connaître.* 115. *Instruire.* 116. Notes on First Model. 117. Second. 118. Third. 119. Fourth.

XII. CONJUGATION OF CERTAIN IRREGULAR VERBS ... 75

120. *Aller.* 121. *S'en aller.* 122. *S'asseoir.* 123. *Courir.* 124. *Croire.* 125. *Faire.* 126. *Lire.* 127. *Mourir.* 128. *Pouvoir.* 129. *Prendre.* 130. *Rire.* 131. *Savoir.* 132. *Venir.* 133. *Valoir.* 134. *Voir.* 135. *Vouloir.*

XIII. FORMATION OF TENSES... 83

136. General Principles. 137. Tenses formed from Imperfect Stem. 138. Present Indicative. 139. Past Definite. 140. Infinitive and derived Tenses.

XIV. VARIOUS FORMS OF CONJUGATION 88

141. Verb with *être—devenir.* 142. Passive Verbs—*être aimé.* 143. Pronominal Verbs—Pronoun in Acc. 144. Ditto, Pronoun in Dative. 145. Translation of Pronominal Verbs. 146. Impersonal Verbs—*falloir—y avoir.* 147. Negative Conjugation. 148. Interrogative Conjugation. 149. Negative Interrogative Conjugation. 150. Passive Verbs variously conjugated. 151. Reflexive Verbs variously conjugated. 152. Position of Pronouns. 153. Pronouns with Imperative.

XV. NOTES ON THE FIRST CONJUGATION 99

154. General Remarks. 155. Verbs in *ger.* 156. Verbs in *cer.* 157. Verbs in *eter, eler.* 158. *acheter*, &c. 159. *mener*, &c. 160. *é* in penultimate. 161. *employer*, &c.

PAGE

XVI. CONNECTION OF FRENCH AND LATIN VERBS ... 104

162. General Remarks. 163. Principles of Change. 164. The Tenses in French and Latin. 165. Person-endings. 166, &c. First Conjugation. 167, &c. Second Conjugation. 168, &c. Third Conjugation. 169, &c. Fourth Conjugation.

XVII. ADVERBS 117

170. Formation. 171. Adjectives as Adverbs. 172. Negative Adverbs. 173. Adverbs of Quantity. 174. Adverbs of Time. 175. Adverbs of Place. 176. Adverbs of Degree, Manner, &c. 177. Adverbs connecting Sentences. 178. Relative and Interrogative Adverbs. 179. Comparison of Adverbs. 180. Position of Adverbs.

XVIII. PREPOSITIONS—CONJUNCTIONS 123

181. Prepositions. 182. Words and phrases used as Prepositions. 183. Conjunctions. 184. Co-ordinative Conjunctions. 185. Subordinative Conjunctions. 186. Translation of *as*, *before*, *after*.

XIX. CALENDAR 126

187. Days of the Week. 188. Months, &c.

TABLES OF REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS 128

SYNTAX.

PAGE

I. First Concord—Place of the Nominative ... 141

1. First Concord. 2. Subjects coupled by *et*. 3. Subjects coupled by *ou, ni-ni*. 4. Nouns coupled by *comme*, &c. 5. *Ce* as nominative—attraction. 6. Collective Nouns, &c. 7. Number of Verb, with Nouns of Multitude. 8. Adverbs of Quantity. 9. *Le peu de*. 10. Impersonal Verbs. 10*a*. Ordinary Verbs used impersonally. 11. Inversion in Interrogative Sentences. 11*a*. After *peut-être, aussi*, &c. 12. In Dependent Sentences. 12*a*. Miscellaneous Inversions. 13. Ellipsis of Nominative. 13*a*. Pleonasm.

II. Articles and Nouns. 148

14. Definite Article in French, where not in English. 14*a*. Omission of Article after *de, avec, sans*. 15. Idioms with Definite Article, *la bouteille, les mains, la barbe blanche, le Maréchal, la vieille*, exclamations, *de la sorte*. 16. Use of Definite Article with Geographical names. *Obs.* 1. *Le Mont Olympe Obs.* 2. *Corfou, Londres. Obs.* 3. *La Haye, les Etats-Unis, le Japon*. 17. Geographical names with *de*. 18. Omission of the Article. 19. In Apposition. 19*a*. With Appositive complements. 20. With Genitive or Dative used as an Adjective. 21. With Nouns and Prepositions forming Adverbs. 22. With Verbs and Nouns connected in sense. 23. The Partitive Genitive. *Obs.* 1. *Le meilleur des Romains. Obs.* 2. *Bien des. Obs.* 3. *Pas des. Obs* 4. *Sans* and Infinitive. *Obs.* 5. *Force. Obs.* 6. *Est-il de.* 23*a*. The Partitive Article. 24. Proverbs, &c. 24*a*. Coupled Nouns. 25. Repetition of the Article. 26. Proper Names of Persons. 26*a*. *Les Newton*. 26*b*. *La Fontaine.—le Tasse*. 27. Singular of parts of the body. 27*a*. No Article with *jamais*. 27*b*. French and English Nouns.

PAGE

III. ADJECTIVES 160

28. Concord of Adjectives. 29. Synesis with *vous*. 30. Compound Adjectives. 30*a*. Adjectives of colour. *Obs.* 1. *Jaunes et puce*. *Obs.* 2. *Nord, sud*. *Obs.* 3. *Bon*, &c. *Obs.* 4. *Grognon*, &c. 31. Two Adjectives connected by *et*. 32. With Nouns connected by *et*. 33. With Nouns connected by *ou*. 34. Position of Adjectives: (1) Do they distinguish? (2) Emotion; (3) Euphony. 35. Adjectives that follow. 35*a*. Adjectives that precede. 35*b*. Two Adjectives. 36. Meaning varies with place. 37. Nouns used as Adjectives. 37*a*. Adjectives as Nouns. 38. *Feu, demi, nu*. 38*a*. *Avoir l'air*. 39. Adjective, as Adverb. 40. Euphonic inflexion of *tout*. *Obs.* 1. *Toute autre, tout autre*. *Obs.* 2. *Tout-puissant*. 41. Remarks on Superlatives: (1) *Aux hommes les plus vaillants*; (2) a most; (3) *Ce qu'il y a de plus terrible*; (4) absolute; (5) *Le moins*. 41*a*. *Seul, le premier*. 42. The more, the better.

IV. PERSONAL PRONOUNS 172

43. As Nominative to Verbs. 44. Conjunctive Pronoun Pleonastic as subject. 45. Disjunctive with *à* after Reflexive Verbs, *penser, être*, &c. *Obs. Il me montre à eux*. 45*a*. Verbs of motion. *Obs. Venir* with Dative, *rapporter* with *à* or Dative. 46. Disjunctive after Prepositions and Conjunctions. 46*a*. Various uses of Disjunctive. 47. Position of Governed Pronouns. 48. With Imperative Affirmative. 48*a*. With Imperative Negative. 49. With Infinitive. 50. Use of *vous* and *tu*. 51. Repetition of Governed Pronouns. *Obs.* 1. *Sa forme à lui*. *Obs.* 2. *Se succèdent les unes aux autres*. 52. Conjunctive Pronoun pleonastic as Object. 53. Repetition with each Verb. 54. What Disjunctive answers to *se*? 55. Translation of *it* with Prepositions. 56. The so-called pleonastic use of *le*, &c. 57. Phrases with *le* pleonastic. 58. Grammar rather than Sense. 58*a*. Third Person for Second.

PAGE

V. Possessive Pronouns and Adjectives 181

59. Translation of *mine*, *thine*, &c. *Obs.* 1. It is mine, *Obs.* 2. *Un mien*. *Obs.* 3. A friend of mine, 60. Omitted in speaking of parts of the body. *Obs.* 1. *Goût*, *vie*, &c. *Obs.* 2. Singular, not Plural. *Obs.* 3. *Changer de*, *redoubler de*. 61. Dative of Personal instead of Possessive. *Obs.* 1. Ailing members. *Obs.* 2. Possessive in Poetry. 62. Notes on Possessive Adjectives—*these my friends*, &c. 62*a*. Idiomatic use of Possessive. 63. How to address relatives—*mon capitaine*, *monsieur*, &c. 64. Repetition of Possessive. 64*a*. *À sa rencontre*, &c. 65. Use of *en* for Possessive.

VI. Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives ... 184

65*a*. *Ce* for *the*. 66. *Ce* indeclinable. 66*a*. Nominative to *être*. 67. Meaning *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*. 68. To translate *it is* impersonal. 69. To repeat the real Nominative. *Obs.* 1. Another form. *Obs.* 2. *Que* pleonastic after *c'est*. 70. *Ce sont* used for *c'est*. 71. Tmesis of *ce*, *là*. 72. *Il est vrai* or *c'est vrai*. 73. Repetition of the Demonstrative Adjective. 74. *Celui*. *Obs.* 1. Immediately precedes Relative. *Obs.* 2. *Lui qui*. 75. *Celui-là* as antecedent. *Obs.* *Celui-là* pleonastic. 76. *Celui-ci* and *celui-là*. 77. Use of *ceci*, *celà*. *Obs.* 1. *Cela*, that fellow. *Obs.* 2. *Cela est* for *c'est*. 78. *Tel*, with or without Article. *Obs.* Such a great man. 79. Idiomatic uses of *tel*: (1) many a; (2) *tel que*; (3) *tel quel*. 80. Different uses of *même*; (1) *le même*, *un même*; (2) declined after Nouns or Pronouns; (3) Adverb. *Obs.* *A même de*, *de même*.

VII. Relative Pronouns 192

81. Concord. 82. Position. 82*a*. *Qui* and *que* as Relatives. 83. Distinctions between *qui* and *lequel*. 83*a*. Use of *quoi* as relative, *de quoi*, *il n'y a pas de quoi*. 84. Use of *dont*. 85. Order of sentence after *dont*. 86. Noun after *dont* has Article. 87. *Dont* not used with a Noun governed by

PAGE

Preposition. 88. Idiomatic uses of Relative (1) *à qui sa belle mine* (2) *et que.* 88*a. Qui... qui* Demonstrative. 89. *Où* for *auquel, dans lequel. Obs.* 1. *Que. Obs.* 2. *Par où, d'où.* 89*a. When* with an Antecedent. 90. Use of *ce qui, ce dont,* &c. 91. *What, that* meaning *that which.* 91*a. Whatever.* 92. Omission of Antecedent: (1) *qui* for *celui qui;* (2) *à qui le ferait;* (3) *voilà qui, qui pis est.* 93. Punctuation of relative sentences. 93*a. Quiconque.* 93*b.* Attraction.

VIII. Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives ... 199

94. Different classes of Interrogatives. 95. *Qui* Interrogative. 96. *Que* Interrogative. 97. Periphrastic forms of the Interrogative. 98. The dependent Interrogative *what. Obs.* Indirect questions of appeal. 99. *What* rendered by *quoi.* 100. Summary of Rules on Interrogative Pronouns. 101. Repeated questions. 102. To translate *whose?* 103. Interrogative Adjective. 104. *Lequel* with Genitive.

IX. Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns 203

105. Use of *on, soi. Obs.* 1. Plural Adjective. *Obs.* 2. *On* for *vous, je.* 106. Use of *l'on.* 107. *Soi* requires an Indefinite subject. 108. *Quelque, quel que, quoi que, qui que. Obs.* 1. *Whatever,* &c. *Obs.* 2. *Quelque,* however. *Obs.* 3. *Tout...que,* &c. *Obs* 4. *Quelque,* about. 109. Translation of *any.* 110. Use or omission of the Article with *tout. Obs.* 1. *Tout Rome. Obs.* 2. Every one. *Obs.* 3. *Tout rêver.* 111. Idioms with *autre. Obs.* 1. *Autre que. Obs.* 2. *Nous autres. Obs.* 3. *L'un et l'autre. Obs.* 4. *Autre*=greater. *Obs.* 5. *Autrui.*

X. Accusative Case, and Use of "Faire" 209

112. Transitive Verbs. 112*a.* Place of Accusative. 113. The Cognate Accusative *Obs.* 1. *Parler toilette. Obs.* 2. *sentir la lampe.* 113*a.* English Nouns as Verbs. 113*b.* No double Accusative. 114. Time and place. *Obs.* 1. Accusative of time when.

PAGE

Obs. 2. Ditto of place. *Obs.* 3. Price. 115. Construction of *Faire* with another Infinitive. *Obs.* 1. Reason of Dative. *Obs.* 2. Passive, translation. *Obs.* 3. Agent with *de*, *par*. *Obs.* 4. Ambiguities. 115*a*. Reflexive Pronouns omitted after *faire*. 116. The Verbs *laisser*, *voir*, *entendre*, *ouïr*. *Obs.* 1. Ambiguity. *Obs.* 2. Passive, translation. 117. Second Acc. in apposition to the First. *Obs.* Acc. and Inf. 118. Accusative absolute. 118*a*. Accusative with *voici*, *voilà*. *Obs.* *Ne voilà-t-il pas.* 118*b*. Place of Adverbs as Accusative.

XI. GENITIVE CASE AND USE OF DE 215

119. Meaning of Genitive. 120. Genitive meaning from: (1) separation; (2) asking; (3) *relever*, &c.; (4) changing; (5) making. 121. Genitive of Origin. 122. Fulness and the reverse. *Obs.* 1. Not *avec* after filling. *Obs.* 2. *Jouir*, *user*, &c. 123. Verbs and Adjectives denoting feelings. *Obs.* 1. English Transitives. *Obs.* 2. Praise, blame, &c. *Obs.* 3. *Admirable de.* 124. Possessive Genitive and Genitive of quality. *Obs.* 1. *Il est à.* *Obs.* 2. *Il est de*, *On dirait de.* *Obs.* 3. Article omitted. *Obs.* 4. *Le chemin de Paris.* *Obs.* 5. Loose relations. 124*a*. Genitive of subject. 124*b*. Objective Genitive. 125. Partitive Genitive: (1) Adverbs of quantity, *Bien des*, *force*, *là*, *où* (2) Negative Particles, *ne pas vouloir de* (3) *chacun*, &c. (4) superlatives, numerals, &c.; (5) measures; (6) *d'entre*. 126. Ellipsis of the partitive word. 126*a*. Partitive Article. 127. Verbs of Perceiving, Remembering. 128. *Un soufflet de donné*, *quelqu'un de moins*, &c. 129. *Quoi de*, with an Adjective. 130. Agent expressed by *de* or *par*. 130*a*. Genitive of Instrument or Means. 131. More Idiomatic uses of the Genitive. 132. With words of nearness, approaching, &c. 133. Idiomatic Genitive of Time. 134. Genitive of Measure and Comparison. *Obs.* 1. *Il s'en faut de beaucoup.* *Obs.* 2. *Long de.* 135. Genitive of respect. *Obs.* *Suffire de*, *être assez de.*

PAGE

136. Thirty feet high. 137. Genitive of Manner. 138. Genitive with *servir, traiter*. 138*a*. Genitive of price. 139. *Plus de. Obs. Plus d'un, plus qu'un.* 139*a*. Genitive and Apposition 139*b*. Genitive without *de*. 140. Uses of *en*. 141. *En* meaning some, any. 142. Idioms with *en:* (1) *à cause de cela;* (2) almost Pleonastic; (3) *en vouloir à;* (4) *s'en aller*, &c.

XII. Dative Case and Use of À 231

143. Meaning and Uses of the Dative. 144. Dative of Relation, remoter object. 145. Dative in French, *of* or *from* in English. 145*a*. Parts of the body. 146. Good and harm. *Obs. Is to*, of proportion. 146*a*. No Passive of Verbs with Dative only. 147. Observations on *dativus commodi:* (1) *prendre part à;* (2) *renoncer à;* (3) *que c'est aimable à vous.* 148. Dative of possessor. 149. The Ethic Dative. 150. The Dative of the Instrument. 151. Dative of Instrument forming Adverb of Manner. 152. Rest in space and time. *Obs.* 1. Attached to. *Obs.* 2. At the distance of. *Obs.* 3. *Pied à pied. Obs.* 4. *Aux Pays-Bas.* 153. Time when. 154. Motion, direction, extent. *Obs.* 1. Of time. *Obs.* 2. Of numbers. 155. *A moi*, not *me*, with Verbs of Motion. 156. Tendency, &c. 157. Compound Nouns formed with *à. Obs.* 1. Explanation varies. *Obs.* 2. Article or not. *Obs.* 3. *à la.* 158. Elliptical Uses of Dative.

XIII. Remarks on Other Prepositions 240

159. Distinction of *en, dans. Obs.* 1. *ès, en l'. Obs.* 2. Of time. *Obs.* 3. *En* and *dans trois jours. Obs.* 4. Of dress. *Obs.* 5. *Prendre dans.* 159*a*. *Dans en, à*, with geographical names. 160. Adverbial Phrases formed with *en*. 161. Meanings of *avec*. 162. Meanings of *par*. 163. *Avant* and *devant*. 164. *Sous* and *sur. Obs. Au-dessus de, au-dessous de.* 164*a*. *Dès* and *depuis*. 165. Uses of *pour*. 165*a*. *Sans*, but for. 165*b*. *Entre, parmi*. 166.

PAGE

Across rendered by *à travers, au travers.* 167. *Près de* and *auprès de, hors, jusqu'à, comme.* 168. The Prepositions *de, à, en* repeated. 168*a*. Nouns connected by Prepositions.

XIV. Use of the Tenses 247

169. The Present; (1) historical; (2) for future; (3) *arriver, tomber.* 169*a*. Present and Imperfect to render English Perfect and Pluperfect. 170. The Preterite Definite. 171. The Imperfect. 172. Preterite Definite and Imperfect compared. 173. The Preterite Indefinite. 174. The Pluperfect. 175. The Preterite Anterior. 176. Future and Future Perfect in principal sentences. 177. Future and Conditional in temporal sentences. 178. The Conditional, past and present. 179. Imperfect for Past Conditional. 179*a*. Euphony—objection to *parlasse, agîtes.* 180. Subjunctive in principal sentences. 181. Optative. 182. *Could have, should have, might have. Obs.* 1. Have to. *Obs.* 2. Must have. *Obs.* 3. *Devoir* Pleonastic. *Obs.* 4. Older use. 183. Periphrastic forms. 183*a*. Exceptional forms.

XV. Voices and Auxiliaries 259

184. Neuter Verbs with *être* only, or *être* and *avoir. Obs.* 1. *Rester, demeurer. Obs.* 2. *Echapper. Obs.* 3. *Convenir.* 185. The Past Participle of Neuter Verbs. 185*a*. Equivalent of English Passive.

XVI. Infinitive Mood 262

186. Infinitive, a verbal Noun. 187. The Infinitive is used without a Preposition. 188. As Nominative to a Verb. *Obs.* 1. *Parlant* not a Noun. *Obs.* 2. Infinitive with Article. *Obs.* 3. Older use. 189. After certain Impersonals. 190. After Auxiliaries of Mood. 191. Accusative and Infinitive. *Obs.* 1. Passive rendering. *Obs.* 2. Participle or *qui.* 192. Verbs of thinking, hoping, and declaring. 193. After Verbs of motion. 194. In exclamations and questions of appeal. *Obs.* 1. Indirect questions.

PAGE

Obs. 2. Elliptical. 195. The Infinitive with *de*. 196. Representing a Genitive. *Obs.* 1. *Afin de*, &c. *Obs.* 2, *A moins de*. *Obs.* 3. Free use of *de*. 197. Certain Transitive Verbs—*achever*, &c. 198. After Impersonal Verbs. *Obs.* 1. Third Singular of *être*. *Obs.* 2. *Que* Pleonastic. *Obs.* 3. With Verb and Adjective. 199. After a comparative, *than to* is *que de*. 200. Historical Infinitive. 201. *Pour* with Infinitive. *Obs.* Because of, though. 202. The Infinitive with *à*. 203. After Verbs governing the Dative. *Obs.* 1. *Etre à*. *Obs.* 2. *Avoir à* *Obs.* 3. *Consister à*, &c. *Obs.* 4. Corresponding Nouns. *Obs.* 5. *De* in older French. 204. *Difficile à* or *de*. 205. Verbs of teaching and learning. 206. Verbs of judging, recognising. 207. Equivalent to the Participle in *dus*. 208. To form Compound Nouns. 209. *Par* with Infinitive ; 209*a*. *Après* with Infinitive. 210. The subject of the Infinitive. 211. Infinitive much used in French.

XVII. PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND GERUND 275

212. Participle or Gerund. 212*a*. Gerund : (1) with Accusative ; (2) Reflexive ; (3) Accusative absolute ; (4) Secondary Predicate ; (5) with *ne . . . pas ;* (6) followed by Adverb ; (7) with *en*. 212*b*. Participle ; (1) Appositive Complement after *être*, &c. ; (2) preceded by Adverb ; (3) Epithet. 213. Gerund with *en* ; (1) Contemporaneous ; (2) Concessive ; (3) translated *by ;* (4) with *aller*. 214. The subject of the Gerund. 215. After Verbs of knowing. 215*a*. Idioms with Participles. 216. Adjectives formed from Present Participles.

XVIII. PAST PARTICIPLE 279

217. Different ways of using the Past Participle. 218. Adjectival use, Passive. 219. Idiomatic use of *excepté*, &c. 220. Neuter Verbs with *avoir* and Impersonals. 221. Transitive Verbs. 222. Pronoun in Dative. 223. Pronoun denoting extent.

PAGE

Obs. 1. *Valoir, coûter. Obs.* 2. *Peser.* 224. Object a sentence. 225. *L'.* 226. *Combien de.* 227. *En.* 228. *Laisser, voir*, &c., with an Infinitive. *Obs.* 1. *Oublier de. Obs.* 2. *Faire* with Infinitive. 229. *Pouvoir, devoir*, &c. 230. Reflexive Verbs. *Obs. Laisser*, &c., reflexively. 230*a*. Sentence begins with Participle.

XIX. Subordinate Sentences and Use of the Subjunctive 285

231. Theory of the complex sentence. 232. Meaning of the Subjunctive. 233. Classification of Substantival sentences. 234. Oblique Enunciation. 235. Oblique Interrogation. 236. Oblique petition. 237. Classification of Adverbial Sentences.

XX. Substantival Sentences 289

238. Forms of Oblique Enunciation: (1) *que* Indicative; (2) *que* Subjunctive; (3) Infinitive: (4) Accusative and Infinitive. 239. Indicative or Subjunctive with Verbs of declaring, &c.: (1) Affirmatively; (2) Negatively; (3) Interrogatively; (4) Hypothetically. *Obs. Il s'ensuit que*, &c. 239*a*. Substitute for Subjunctive future and conditional. 240. *Douter, nier*, &c. *Obs.* The same negatively, &c. 241. Construction after Verbs, &c., denoting probability or possibility. 242. *C'est que, ce n'est pas que, non que.* 243. Clause in Apposition to *de ce que, à ce que.* 244. Verbs, &c., denoting states of mind. *Obs.* 1. Explanation. *Obs.* 2. *Concevoir, comprendre. Obs.* 3. Other constructions. 245. Oblique Interrogation. *Obs.* 1. Insert *de savoir* before *si*. *Obs.* 2. *que répondre*. 246. Oblique petition: (1) *que* Subjunctive; (2) *de* Infinitive; (3) *que* Conditional. 247. Wish, command. *Obs.* Impersonal *il faut*, &c. 248. Fear, hindering. *Obs. Peu s'en faut que, il tient à moi que.* 249. Future or conditional in edicts.

XXI. Adjectival Sentences 298

250. Relative Clause in Indicative. 251. Subjunctive

PAGE

after: (1) Negative; (2) Conditional Clause; (3) *peu*. 252. After Superlative. *Obs.* 1, 2, 3. Cases where Indicative is used. *Obs.* 4. *autant que*. 253. Purpose or consequence requiring Subjunctive. 254. Concessive sentences.

XXII. ADVERBIAL SENTENCES 301

255. CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.—Indicative or Subjunctive. *Obs.* 1. *A ce point que*. *Obs.* 2. *Que* alone. *Obs.* 3. Distinguished from Noun sentence. 256. *Assez, trop . . . pour que*. 257. *Sans que*. 258. *De mon sang la coupe serait pleine—que je boirais*, &c. 259. Infinitive. *Obs.* 1. Subject after *il faut*. *Obs.* 2. *Si que . . . de*. *Obs.* 3. *Sans*. 260. FINAL SENTENCES.—Words meaning *in order that*. 261. Infinitive in final sentences. *Obs. afin de* and *pour*. 262. TEMPORAL SENTENCES.—Mood and Tense required. 263. *When* with an antecedent. 264. Other Temporal Conjunctions, *avant que, tant que, jusqu' à ce que*, &c. 265. Infinitive in Temporal Sentences. 266. *Que* as conjunction of time: (1) to repeat *quand*, (2) after *à peine*, &c., (3) like *où*, (4) *que . . . ne* until. 267. Present after *depuis que, il y a que*. 268. Words for *wherever*. 269. *Au lieu que*, whereas. 270. CAUSAL SENTENCES.—Indicative with *parce que*, &c. *Obs. Non que*, &c. 271. Infinitive *à cause de, faute de, pour*. 272. COMPARATIVE SENTENCES.—Indicative used. *Obs.* 1. *Que . . . ne*. *Obs.* 2. *D'autant que*. *Obs.* 3. According as. 273. To qualify Superlatives. 274. CONDITIONAL AND CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.—Protasis and Apodosis. 275. Uses of *si, posé que, pour peu que, bien entendu que*. 276. Moods and Tenses after *si*. 277. *Que* to mean if: (1) for *si*; (2) *Qu'il parle*. 278. Tenses in Apodosis: (1) Pluperfect Subjunctive; (2) Indicative. 279. *A moins que, à moins de, que* equivalent. 280. Whether—or, *soit que—soit que*, &c. 281. *Loin que*. 282. Words meaning *although*. *Obs.* 1. Subjunctive used. *Obs.* 2. *Tout . . . que*. 283. Ellipsis

PAGE

of *if*, *although*. 284. *Quand* with conditional. *Obs.* 1. Ellipsis. *Obs.* 2, see § 240. *Obs.* 3. Pluperfect Subjunctive. 285. Infinitive in Concessive sentences. 286. Sequence of Tenses—Exceptions.

XXIII. USE OF THE NEGATIVE AND SOME ADVERBS ... 314

287. Independent Negative. 288. *Ne...pas*, &c. *Obs.* 1. *Sans*. *Obs.* 2. *Ne pas* with Infinitive. *Obs.* 3. *Ne . . . plus que*. 288*a*. To render *only*. 289. *Jamais, plus, rien que, rien moins que*. 290. *Pas* omitted. 291. *Que ne*, after Comparative. *Obs.* 1. *Autre*. *Obs.* 2. *Mieux que nul autre, autant que... aucun*. 292. Verbs of fearing. 293. *A moins que . . . ne*. 294. Verbs of doubting, denying, despairing. 295. Verbs of hindering—*il tient à*. 296. *Ne* or *ne pas* after *si*. 297. Ellipsis—*n'eût été, n'était*. 298. Negatives with *depuis que, il y a que*. 299. *Ne* after *avant que, sans que*. 300. *Qui ne* consecutive. 301. To render *nor*. 302. Position of *how, so*. 303. Idiomatic Use of *près*. 304. *Peu* as Negative. 305. Position of Adverbs. 306. *Que si*. 307. *À peine si*. 308. Such as. 309. English Adverbs rendered by French Verbs, 310. Either. 311. *A même*.

APPENDIX I. 324

Hints on Pronunciation. 1. Division of words. 2. Muteness of Vowels. 3. *H* mute or aspirated. 4. Muteness of final Consonants. 5. Rules for *s* final. 6. *T* final. 7. *X, Z* final. 8. *Liaison des mots*. 9. Pronunciation of *E*. 10. *L mouillé*. 11. Nasal sounds *M, N*. 12. Note on *S*. 13. *ti*. 14. Double Consonants. 15. Tonic accent. 16. Quantity. 17. Miscellaneous, *c, g, ch, th, p, qu, y, gn*.

APPENDIX II. List of Verbs with different constructions ... 340

APPENDIX III. Prepositions required before Infinitive ... 346

APPENDIX IV. Verbs and Accusatives omitting Article ... 350

APPENDIX V. Comparative Table of Indicative and Subjunctive 353

PAGE

APPENDIX VI. Licences allowed by the Arrêté du 26 février 1901 355

APPENDIX VII. Phonetic transcriptions of examples on pp. 330, 331 363

ACCIDENCE.

Introductory.

1. **ALPHABET.** The French alphabet consists of twenty-six letters, which are the same as the English letters.

The French names of the letters are—*a*, *bé*, *cé*, *dé*, *é*, *effe*, *gé*, *ache*, *i*, *ji*, *ka*, *elle*, *emme*, *enne*, *o*, *pé*, *qu* or *ku*, *erre*, *esse*, *té*, *u*, *vé*, *double vé*, *ics*, *i grec*, *zède*; *f*, *h*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*, are *feminine*, all other letters masculine.[1]

K, W are used exclusively in words borrowed from foreign languages, as *kiosque*, *wagon*, and in names of measures, &c., formed from the Greek, as *kilomètre*.

2. **SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.** French, like English, has an imperfect alphabet. There is not a separate symbol[2] for each sound, while, at the same time, there are several sounds, each represented by more than one letter or combination of letters. The *sounds* of the language are as follows:—

(1.) **Vowel Sounds,** viz., **a** in *avoir*; **a** in *âme*; **e muet**; **e fermé** in *thé*, *avez*; **e ouvert**[3] in *père*, *tête*; **i** or **y**; **o** in *col*, *croquer*; **o** in *trône*, *gros*; **u** in *tu*; and lastly, the sounds **eu** in *feu*, of **eu** in *seul*, and **ou** in *fou*. Several of these vowel-sounds are often represented by combinations of vowels, as **o** by **au** and **eau, e** by **ei, ai.**

There are *no true diphthongs* in French, that is, no combinations of vowels, in which two vowels are joined in pronunciation, each retaining its own sound, as **a** and **u** do in the German Haus. Besides the combinations of vowels, as **au, eau, eu,** &c., which represent simple vowel sounds,

[1] According to the more recent but less generally used method, the consonants are named *be*, *ce*, *de*, *fe*, *ge*, &c. (*e* being pronounced as in the article *le*). When so named, all consonants are masculine.

[2] The symbol **œ** is used only in a few words, *bœuf*, *sœur*, *œil*, &c.; **æ** is used only in Latin words like *Scævola*, *ædicule* (little temple), and some foreign names as *Hændel* (German *Händel*, English *Handel*), *Mælor* (a lake in Sweden). Thoroughly naturalised words like *æsthétique* are better spelt with *e*, as *esthétique*.

[3] See Appendices I. and VII.

there are three sounds represented by vowels—(1) the palatal continuant, consonantal **i**, represented in English by *y*; and the lip continuants, viz., (2) consonantal **u**, which has no English equivalent, and (3) the sound which we represent by **w**. The first is seen in the **i** of **volontiers, milieu,** the second in the **u** of **lui, puis,** and the third in the **ou** of **oui, douane,** and the **o** of **roi, croix.** Each of these combinations forms a single syllable, and the words just given must be distinguished from words like *févri-er*, *il clou-a*, in which the sounds are separated.

(2.) **Nasal Vowels** (*voyelles nasales*), **a** nasal (written **an, en, am, em**), **i** nasal (**in, im, ain, aim, ein**), **o** nasal (**on, om**), **u** nasal (**un, um, eun**), which have no equivalents in English. There are also combinations of nasal vowels with continuants, as **point, Rouen, bien.** These words are monosyllables.

(3.) **Consonants** (*consonnes*). Three have each two sounds, viz.,

c = **k** before **a, o, u,** but **c**=**s** before **e, i, y;**

g is pronounced as in *good* before **a, o, u;** before **e, i, y** it has a sound like that of *s* in *leisure;*

s between two vowels = **z,** otherwise it is pronounced as English **s** in *base, so.*

The letter **h** is not pronounced at all; at the beginning of a word it is either—

(1) mute (**h** *voyelle*), in which case elision, as *l'homme*, or "liaison," as *ces hommes* (= *cè-zommes*) occurs,

(2) or aspirated (**h** *consonne*), though not pronounced, as in *le héros* (= *le éros*), *mes haines* (= *mè aines*), where neither elision nor "liaison" takes place.

3. **ORTHOGRAPHIC SIGNS.** Note the following :—

(′) acute accent (*l'accent aigu*).	(ç) cedilla (*la cédille*).
(`) grave do. (*l'accent grave*).	(¨) diæresis (*le tréma*).
(^) circumflex do. (*l'accent circonflexe*).	(-) hyphen (*le trait d'union*).
	(’) apostrophe (*l'apostrophe*).

4. **ACUTE AND GRAVE ACCENTS.** These accents have nothing to do with the stress on a syllable, or *tonic* accent. The acute accent is placed over **e** only; as in **vérité, déshonorer.**

The grave accent may be placed on **e**, before final **s**, or

before a single consonant, or before a combination of a mute and a liquid ; as in **très, première, mènerai, espiègle.**

Also over **a** in **déjà, là, çà, à,** and over **u** in **où**, *where.*

It serves to distinguish—

dès, *from,* from **des,** *of the, some,* and **dés,** *dice.*
à, *to,* from **a,** *has* (from *avoir*).
çà, *there,* from **ça,** *that* (short for *cela*).
là, *there,* from **la,** *the* (article).
où, *where* from **ou,** *or.*

5. **THE CIRCUMFLEX ACCENT** may stand over any vowel except **y,** to denote that some contraction has taken place. The contraction most commonly denoted by it is the omission of **s,** as in **âpre,** from *asper,* **goût,** from *gustus;* but occasionally, as in **oublîrai** for *oublierai,* **mûr** from *maturus,* it indicates some other contraction. Lastly, in **Drôme, théâtre,** and a few other words, the circumflex accent is only a sign of the length of the syllable.

It further serves, of course, to distinguish words ; as—

dû (from *devoir*), from **du,** *of the,*
crû (from *croître*), from **cru** (from *croire*),

and so on.

6. **THE CEDILLA,** placed under **c,** gives that letter the sound of the English **s,** as **plaça, rançon.** It can only be used before **a, o, u,** inasmuch as **c** has of itself a sibilant sound before **e, i.**

7. **THE DIÆRESIS** denotes that the vowel over which it is placed should be separated in pronunciation from the preceding vowel ; as **haïr, Antinoüs, aiguë,** contrasted with *je hais, fou, figue.*

8. **THE HYPHEN,** as in **parlé-je, quatre-vingt-cinq,** joins words closely connected in sense. It is used much more freely than in English. **(App. VI.)**

9. **THE APOSTROPHE** denotes the elision of a vowel at the end of a word before a vowel or *h* mute at the beginning of the next. **(App. VI.)**

The following elisions are permitted in French :—

a is elided in **la**, article and pronoun.

e is elided

(1.) in **je, me, te, se, le,**[1] **ce, que, de, ne,** in all cases where the next word is closely connected in sense with them.

(2.) in **quoique, lorsque, puisque,** when followed by **il, elle, on, un** ; notice also *puisqu'ainsi est.*

(3.) in *jusqu'à, jusqu'alors, jusqu'en, jusqu'ici, jusqu'où, quelqu'un,* the noun *presqu'île,* and some compounds of *entre,* as *entr'acte, s'entr'aider, entr'ouvrir.*

(4.) Before a consonant in *feminine* compounds of **grand** ; *grand'mère, grand'messe.*[2]

i is elided in **si,** before **i** in *s'il, s'ils,* but not before *elle.*

10. **CAPITAL LETTERS** (*les lettres majuscules*) are used in French as in English, except that (1) adjectives formed from names of countries and other proper names, as **français, machiavélique,** and even such adjectives used as nouns, as **les dominicains, les cartésiens** ; (2) names of months and days of the week, as **vendredi, janvier** ; (3) nouns formed from proper names, like **le calvinisme**—are written with small characters, *minuscules.*

11. **THE STOPS** are as in English :—

, *la virgule,* comma.
; *le point* (*et*) *virgule,* semicolon.
: *les deux points,* colon.
? *le point d'interrogation,* note of interrogation.
! *le point d'exclamation,* note of exclamation.
"..." *les guillemets,* inverted commas.
( ) *la parenthèse,* parenthesis.
[ ] *les crochets,* brackets.
— *le trait suspensif* or *le tiret,* dash.
... *les points de suspension* or *les points suspensifs.*

The stops are used much as in English ; the chief difference is in the use of the colon before a quotation :

Il venait de parler de moi, car il disait : "*Ecoutez, mon brave...*" (Note capital E.)

[1] Of course not in cases like *rends-le avec usure.*

[2] There is really no elision ; in old French, adjectives derived from Latin adjectives of two terminations retained the same form for the masculine and feminine, (e.g., *lettres royaux*). The apostrophe is due to the grammarians of the 17th century. See *Brachet,* p. 102.

I.—Articles and Nouns.

12. **NO CASES IN FRENCH.** Nouns have, properly speaking, no cases in French; that is to say, if we wish to translate into French an English possessive, or a Latin genitive or dative, we must put a preposition before the noun. Its termination cannot be altered, as in *homo, hominis; man, man's; Mann, Mannes;* but we must say, for instance, **le livre de l'homme**, *the book of the man*, not, as in English, *the man's book*. As the pronouns have cases, it is convenient to speak of the cases of nouns. Analogies with Latin syntax are also thus brought out.

13. **NUMBER.** There are two numbers in French, *singular* and *plural*. Most French nouns form their plural by adding *s* to the singular; but there are exceptions. See Chap. II.

14. **GENDER.** There is, strictly speaking, no neuter gender in French; all nouns are either masculine or feminine. Those who know Latin will do well to remember that, in nearly all cases, the gender of a French noun derived from the Latin is feminine if the Latin word be feminine, masculine if the Latin word be masculine or neuter. More detailed rules are given below.

15. **ARTICLES.** There are three articles in French: the indefinite article—

Masc. **un.**[1] Fem. **une**; **a, an.**

The definite article—

Masc. **le.**[2] Fem. **la.** Plural **les**; **the.**

And the partitive article—

Masc. **du.** Fem. **de la.** Plural **des**; some.

The plural is the same in both genders.

16. ***LE, LA*, BEFORE A VOWEL.** When the Article **le, la**, precedes a word beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute

[1] From the Latin *unus*, one.

[2] From the Latin *illum, illam; illos, illas*.

(and remember that *h* is generally mute in French), its last letter is cut off; as—

l'enfant, the child;	not *le enfant.*
l'homme, the man;	not *le homme*
l'école, the school;	not *la école.*

But **la haine**, *hatred;* **le houx**, *the holly*, &c.; because in those words the *h* is aspirated.[1]

17. **ARTICLE WITH** *A*, *DE*. The words **le**, **les**, coalesce with the prepositions **à**, **de**, but **la** does not.[2] Thus—

de le, becomes **du.**	**à le**,[3] becomes **au.**
de les, becomes **des.**	**à les**, becomes **aux.**

18. **DECLENSION OF DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE ARTICLES.** The definite article, then, can be declined as follows. It may, for convenience, be said to have four cases, nominative, genitive, dative and accusative; the accusative is the same as the Nominative :—

(1.) Before a consonant or aspirated *h*—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
	Masc.	Fem.	Both Genders.
N.A.	**le**	**la**	**les.**
G.	**du**	**de la**	**des.**
D.	**au**	**à la**	**aux.**

(2.) Before a vowel or *h* mute (both genders)—

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
N.A.	**l'**	(*enfant*)	**les** (*enfants*).
G.	**de l'**	(*enfant*)	**des.**
D.	**à l'**	(*enfant*)	**aux.**

The indefinite article does not coalesce with **de** and **à**. It is declined as follows—

---

[1] But remember that the so-called aspirated *h* is not pronounced, but only prevents elision of the final vowel, or *liaison* of the final consonant of the preceding word. (See p. 2, and Appendix I. to Syntax.)

[2] Also with *en* in old French, *en les* = *ès*, in *bachelier ès arts*, *ès lettres*, &c.

[3] Notice Latin words where *al* becomes *au* in French, *alter*, *autre ; salvus*, *sauf.*

	Masc.	Fem.
N.A.	**un.**	**une.**
G.	**d'un.**	**d'une.**
D.	**à un.**	**à une.**

19. **THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.** The partitive article is really the genitive case of the definite article.

du *pain*, some bread, bread. **de la** *bière*, some beer, beer.
de l'*eau*, some water, water. **des** *livres*, some books, books.

It may be preceded by **à** and other prepositions, but not by another **de**. It is therefore declined, if we may use the term :

N.A.	**du**	**de la**	**des**
G.	**de**	**de**	**de**
D.	**à du**	**à de la**	**à des**

II.—Plural of Simple Nouns and Adjectives.

20. **MOST NOUNS ADD** *S*. As above stated, most nouns form the plural by adding **s** to the singular ; as—

homme, man, **hommes**, men. **fou**, madman, **fous**, madmen.
bœuf, ox, **bœufs**, oxen. **éventail**, fan, **éventails**, fans.

S, X, Z. Nouns ending in **s, x, z**, remain the same in the plural as in the singular ; as—

héros, hero, **héros**, heroes.
prix, prize, **prix**, prizes.
gaz, gas, **gaz**, gases.

21. *AU, EU, ŒU*. Nouns ending in **au, œu, eu**, take **x**, not **s** ;[1] as—

feu, fire, **feux**, fires.
vœu, wish, **vœux**, wishes.
tableau, picture, **tableaux**, pictures.

22. *AL*. Nouns in **al** change **al** into **aux** ; as—

cheval, horse, **chevaux**, horses.
mal, evil, **maux**, evils.

[1] Except *landau*, a kind of carriage, which makes *landaus*, and the adjectives *bleu, feu*, § 29.

But

bal, cal, carnaval,
pal, régal, chacal,[1]

and a few less common words,[2] are regular, and make

bal, ball (*i.e.* dance), **bals**, balls,
chacal, jackal, **chacals**, jackals,

and so on.

23. *AIL, OU.* Eight nouns in **ail** change **ail** into **aux**—

bail, émail, çorail, plumail, travail,
soupirail, vantail, vitrail;[3]

as—

bail, lease, **baux**, leases.
corail, coral, **coraux**, corals.

and so on.

And seven in **ou** make **oux**—

bijou, joujou, genou, pou,
hibou, caillou, chou ;[4]

as—

bijou, jewel, **bijoux**, jewels.
chou, cabbage, **choux**, cabbages,

and so on.

All other nouns in **ail**,[5] **ou** are regular, *i.e.*, take **s**, as—

détail, detail, **détails**, details.
fou, madman, **fous**, madmen.
clou, nail, **clous**, nails.

24. **IRREGULAR AND DOUBLE PLURALS.** **Ciel**, *heaven*, makes **cieux**; **ciel**, meaning *climate*, and in combinations like **ciel de lit**, **ciel de tableau**, &c., makes **ciels**.

---

[1] Ball (dance), wart, carnival, stake, treat, jackal.

[2] Viz., *aval, nopal, serval, narval, caracal, choral, idéal.* ***Val*** has plural *vaux* in *par monts et par vaux*, but *vals* in phrases like *les vals supérieurs des fleuves.*

[3] Lease, enamel, coral, feather-brush, labour, air-hole, folding-door, stained glass window.

[4] Jewel, plaything, knee, louse, owl, pebble, cabbage.

[5] Viz., *éventail, épouvantail, détail, bercail, gouvernail, portail.*

Œil, *eye*, makes **yeux**; but in compounds, when **œil** does not mean a real eye, **œils**; as **œils-de-bœuf**, *round windows*, **œils-de-chat**, *catseyes* (agate).

Aïeul, *grandfather*, makes **aïeuls**; **aïeul**, *ancestor*, makes **aïeux**.

Bétail, *cattle*, being a collective noun, has no plural; **bestiaux**, *heads of cattle* is sometimes set down as its plural.

Ail, *garlic* makes **aulx**, *heads of garlic;* but **ails**, *sorts of garlic*, in botany.

Travail, *work*, generally makes **travaux**, but **travails** in the two unusual senses, (1) *trave, frame* for holding vicious horses when shod, (2) *report* of a minister to the sovereign.

25. *ANT, ENT.* Nouns in **ant, ent,** make their plural in **ants, ents.** But the "Revue des Deux Mondes" and some other good authorities did, till recently, write **ans, ens,** in words of more than one syllable.

26. **NOUNS WITHOUT PLURAL INFLEXION.** A number of words in French do not admit of a plural termination. That they are plural is shown by the article attached. They are—

(1.) Adverbs and other properly indeclinable words used as nouns; as *les si, les oui, les pourquoi.* Also the letters of the alphabet, *les a, les f.*

(2.) Many words and phrases (especially phrases) borrowed from other languages and used as nouns; as *des postscriptum, des fac-simile, des in-octavo.* Notice in this class the names of prayers, &c., *des miserere, des credo, des Te-Deum.* On the other hand, foreign words thoroughly naturalised take *s*; as *des opéras, des pensums* (pronounced *painçomes*) impositions, *des toasts.* (App. VI.)

(3.) Proper names, where two or more persons of the same family are named, *les deux Corneille,* or where *les Newton,* &c., may be rendered *a Newton.* (See Syntax, § 26.)

27. **DIFFERENT SENSES IN SINGULAR AND PLURAL.** As in English, there are a number of nouns

that have a meaning in the plural which they have not in the singular.

The following are some of the commonest. Of course, the plural is not always limited to the special meaning given below, but may be simply a plural of the ordinary meaning of the singular.

aboi, barking,	**abois**, death-agony.
arrêt, sentence, seizure,	**arrêts**, arrest (military).
assise, (course in building) layer,	**assises**, assizes.
chausse, hood (academic),	**chausses**, breeches.
ciseau, chisel,	**ciseaux**, scissors.
effet, effect, result,	**effets**, effects, goods.
état, state (in all senses),	**états**, estates[1] (Parliament).
être, being,	**êtres**, parts of a house.[2]
fer, iron,	**fers**, fetters.
gage, pledge,	**gages**, wages.
harde, herd (of deer, &c.), leash,	**hardes**, clothes.
lettre, letter (in all senses),	**lettres**, literature.
limbe, limb (of the moon),	**limbes**, limbo, outskirts of hell.[3]
lumière, light,	**lumières**, knowledge.
lunette, telescope,	**lunettes**, spectacles.
manière, manner,	**manières**, manners.
trousse, bundle,	**trousses**, breeches.[4]
troupe, troop,	**troupes**, troops, soldiers.
vacance, period during which anything is vacant.	**vacances**, holidays.

28. **NOUNS USED IN PLURAL ONLY**. There are also a number of words used in the plural only; as *aborigènes*, aborigines, *annales*, annals, *alentours*, environs, *bésicles*, spectacles, *décombres*, ruins, *dépens*, expense, *entre-*

---

[1] *Etats-Généraux*, States-General; also in the same sense as the singular, *les Etats-Unis*, the United States.

[2] Especially in the phrase, *connaître les êtres*, to know one's way about a house. **Derived from *Exteras*.**

[3] The confines of hell, where Dante saw the good men who lived before the Christian era—*Limb* of the moon is really *edge*, Latin *limbus*.

[4] Mostly in *aux trousses de quelqu'un*, at a person's heels.

faites (in the expression *sur ces entrefaites*, meanwhile), *frais*, expense, *étrennes*, new year's gift, *épousailles*, wedding, *fonts* (*baptismaux*), font, *relevailles*, churching, *obsèques*, obsequies, *mânes*, Manes, departed spirits, *mœurs*, character, *pleurs*, tears, *prémices*, first-fruits, *vêpres*, vespers, *vivres*, victuals, *les Indes*, the Indies, &c. Notice the phrases *aux aguets*, on the watch ; *aux prises*, grappling ; *à reculons*, backwards ; *à tâtons*, feeling one's way ; *faire ses adieux ; se rendre sur les lieux*.

Obs. 1. *Les mathématiques*, mathematics, is plural in French as in English ;—but *la politique*, politics, *l'éthique*, ethics, *la physique*, physics, *l'hydrostatique*, hydrostatics, and all other names of sciences in *ique*, are used in the singular only.

Obs. 2. *Un pantalon*, a pair of trousers, *un caleçon*, a pair of drawers, are singular.

29. **PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.** Adjectives follow exactly the same rules as nouns ; as—

Masc. **heureux**, happy,	**heureux.**
Fem. **heureuse**,	**heureuses.**
Masc. **beau**, beautiful,	**beaux.**
Fem. **belle**,	**belles.**
Masc. **égal**, equal,	**égaux.**
Fem. **égale**,	**égales.**
Masc. **bon**, good,	**bons.**
Fem. **bonne**,	**bonnes.**

Adjectives which have a second form for the masculine singular, as *beau*, *bel ; vieux*, *vieil ; fou*, *fol*, form their plural masculine from the *first* form, *beaux*, *vieux*, *fous*. *Bleu*, *feu* (the late), make *bleus*, *feus*.

30. **ADJECTIVES IN** *AL*. The masculine plural of adjectives in **al** is formed in **aux**, as **royaux**, **égaux**, **banaux**, &c. A few adjectives such as *final*, occasionally form a plural in **s** (*sons finals*). But the general practice is altogether to avoid using the masculine plural of adjectives in *al* of modern formation, such as *glacial*, *théâtral*, &c. It is easy to do so by putting, for example, *funeste* for *fatal*, *de glace* for *glacial*, *de mer* for *naval*.

III.—Feminine of Adjectives and Nouns.

31. **THE GENERAL RULE** is that the feminine of adjectives is formed by adding e mute to the masculine ; as—

Masc.		Fem.	
clair,		**claire,**	clear.
poli,		**polie,**	polished.
délicat,		**délicate,**	delicate.
spontané,		**spontanée,**	spontaneous.
amical,		**amicale,**	friendly.
ras,		**rase,**	shaven.
latin,		**latine,**	Latin.
bigot,		**bigote,**	bigot (ed).

If the masculine ends in e mute, the feminine is the same as the masculine ; as **sage,** wise ; **terrible,** terrible.

32. **ENDINGS** *EL, EN, ET, ER.* If e mute were added to adjectives with these endings without any alteration, there would be two mute, or nearly mute, e's in successive syllables. The end of the word would, in fact, be almost lost in pronunciation. In forming the feminine they either double the consonant or put a grave accent on the last e but one—

(I.) Adjectives ending in **el, en,** double the final consonant ; as—

Masc.		Fem.	
réel,		**réelle,**	real.
chrétien,		**chrétienne,**	Christian.

(II.) Those ending in **er** put a grave accent on the *e* ; as—

Masc.		Fem.	
léger,		**légère,**	light.

(III.) Those ending in **et** generally double the consonant ; as—

Masc.		Fem.	
muet,		**muette,**	mute.

(IV.) But a few ending in **et,**

complet, concret, discret, indiscret, inquiet, replet, secret, incomplet,

put a grave accent on the preceding **e** ; as—

Masc.		Fem.	
complet,		**complète,**	complete.

33. **ENDINGS** *AN, ON, EIL, IL.* Adjectives ending in **on, eil,** also double the final consonant before the **e** of the feminine ; as—

Masc. **bon,**	Fem. **bonne,** good.
pareil,	**pareille,** like.

Beware of doubling the **l** and **n** of **al, an, il.** Thus—

Masc. **social,**	Fem. **sociale,** social.
persan,	**persane,** Persian.

Notice the adjectives ending in **il**—

Masc. **puéril,**	Fem. **puérile,** puerile.
vil,	**vile,** vile.

But—

Masc. **gentil,**	Fem. **gentille,** pretty.

34. **ENDINGS** *F, EUX, U.* The ending **f** is changed into **ve** ; as—

Masc. **rétif,**	Fem. **rétive,** restive.
bref,	**brève,** short,

with a grave accent where the ending is **ef.**

The ending **eux** becomes **euse** ; as—

Masc. **glorieux,**	Fem. **glorieuse,** glorious.

Adjectives ending in **gu** place the *tréma* (two dots) over the final **e.** The effect is to show that the **u** and the **e** belong to different syllables, and that therefore the **u** is sounded.

Masc. **aigu,**	Fem. **aiguë,** sharp.
ambigu,	**ambiguë,** ambiguous.

Thus *ai-gu-ë* is trisyllabic, *bri-gue, fi-gue,* disyllabic.

But the *tréma* is not put over the final **e** of other adjectives ending in **u** ; as—

Masc. **pointu,**	Fem. **pointue,** pointed.

Notice the two participles—

Masc. **dû,**	Fem. **due** (from *devoir*).
crû,	**crue** (from *croître*),

35. **BEL, NOUVEL, &c.** Some adjectives have a subsidiary, form for the masculine gender, which is used before a vowel or *h* mute, as, *un bel enfant.* The feminine of such adjectives is formed from the subsidiary form.

Masc.		Fem.	
beau, bel,[1]		**belle,** beautiful.
nouveau, nouvel,		**nouvelle,** new.
vieux, vieil,		**vieille,** old.
mou, mol,		**molle,** soft.
fou, fol,		**folle,** mad.

Vieux is, however, used as well as **vieil** before a vowel or *h* mute.

36. **EXCEPTIONS.** The following fall under none of the above rules :—

FIRST LIST.

bas, basse, low.
blanc, blanche, white.
doux, douce, soft.
épais, épaisse, thick.
faux, fausse, false.
gras, grasse, fat.
gros, grosse, big.
las, lasse, weary.
long, longue,[3] long.
nul, nulle, no.
public, publique, public.
sec, sèche, dry.

SECOND LIST.

absous, absoute, acquitted.
bellot, bellotte, pretty.
bénin, bénigne,[4] benignant.
caduc, caduque, fading, decrepit.
coi, coite, snug, quiet.
dissous, dissoute, dissolved.
exprès, expresse, express.
favori, favorite, favourite.
frais, fraîche, fresh.
franc, franche, free.
franc, franque,[5] Frank.
gentil, gentille, pretty.
grec, grecque, Greek.
hébreu, Hebrew, has no feminine ; *hébraïque* is used.
jaloux, jalouse, jealous.
jumeau, jumelle, twin.
malin, maligne, malignant.
muscat, muscade, muscat.
oblong, oblongue, oblong.

---

[1] Also in Philippe le Bel, Charles le Bel.

[3] Because the guttural sound has to be retained.

[4] It should be observed how in most cases the *feminine* represents the Latin form, as in *benignus, malignus, caducus, crassus, quietus* (coi), *dulcis,* &c., compared with the French.

[5] Also *Langue franque,* Lingua Franca. Add to this list : *ammoniac, ammoniaque ; métis, métisse,* half-breed.

paysan, paysanne, peasant.
profès, professe, professed (of monks and nuns).
roux, rousse, red.
sot, sotte, foolish.
tiers, tierce, third.
turc, turque, Turkish.
vieillot, vieillotte,[1] oldish.

Plusieurs, *several*, and **leur**, *their*, have no distinct form for the feminine.

37. **NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN** *EUR*. Words ending in **eur**, and formed from Latin or French verbs, are either nouns denoting an agent, or adjectives; most of them are used in both capacities. There are three distinct feminine terminations corresponding to **eur**, viz., **rice**, **euse**, **eresse**, besides the ordinary **eure**.

I. Words in **teur**, derived from Latin words in *tor*, make the Feminine in **trice** (Latin *trix*); as—

électeur,	elector,	**électrice.**
créateur,	creative, creator,	**créatrice.**
bienfaiteur,	benefactor,	**bienfaitrice.**

and somewhat similarly,

ambassadeur,	ambassador,	**ambassadrice.**

II. Most other words of this class in **eur** make **euse.**

trompeur,	deceitful, deceiver,	**trompeuse.**
quêteur,	beggar,	**quêteuse.**
flatteur,	flattering, flatterer,	**flatteuse.**
pêcheur,	fisherman,	**pêcheuse.**

III. A few change **eur** into **eresse**; as—

pécheur,[3]	sinner,	**pécheresse.**
vengeur,	avenger, avenging,	**vengeresse.**
chasseur,	hunter,	**chasseresse** (in poetry).
enchanteur,	enchanting,	**enchanteresse.**
demandeur,	claimant,	**demanderesse.**[4]
défendeur,	defendant,	**défenderesse.**

[1] Notice *ras, rase; obtus, obtuse; préfix, préfixe; bigot, bigote; dévot, dévote*, all regular.

[3] From *peccator; pêcheur*, fisherman, from *piscator*.

[4] In the legal sense; in its ordinary sense *demandeuse*.

There are one or two exceptions—

gouverneur,	governor,	*gouvernante*.
serviteur,[1]	servant,	*servante*.
chanteur,	singer,	*chanteuse* or *cantatrice*.
empereur,	emperor,	*impératrice*.

IV. Adjectives like **supérieur**, **majeur**, &c., unconnected with verbs, are regular.

supérieur,	superior,	**supérieure**.
meilleur,	better,	**meilleure**.

38. **NOUNS**. Most nouns follow the same rules as adjectives in the formation of the feminine; as—

ami, friend,	**amie**, female friend (like *poli*).
berger, shepherd,	**bergère**, shepherdess (like *léger*).
lion, lion,	**lionne**, lioness (like *bon*).
ours, he-bear,	**ourse**, she-bear (like *clair*).
tourtereau, turtle-dove (cock),	**tourterelle**, turtle-dove (hen) (like *beau*).
Juif, Jew,	**Juive**, Jewess (like *neuf*).
veuf, widower,	**veuve**, widow (like *neuf*).
préfet, prefect,	**préfète** (*Mme la préfète*).

Notice the following:—

chat, tom-cat,	**chatte**, cat (female).
compagnon, companion,	**compagne**.
époux, husband,	**épouse**, wife.
loup, he-wolf,	**louve**, she-wolf.
mulet, mule (masc.),	**mule** (fem.).[2]

39. *ESSE* **AND** *INE*. The terminations **esse** and **ine**, like similar terminations in English, often form the feminine; **esse** generally replaces *e* mute.

héros, hero,	**héroïne**, heroine.
prince, prince,	**princesse**, princess.
traître, traitor,	**traîtresse**, traitress.

If such words be used as adjectives, as **une langue**

[1] *Servant*, lay-brother. [2] Also **canard**, duck, drake, **cane** (fem.).

traîtresse, they adopt the same method of forming the feminine.

The following are instances of the termination *esse* irregularly added :—

abbé,	abbot,	*abbesse.*
dieu,	divinity,	*déesse.*
devin,	diviner,	*devineresse.*
doge,	doge,	*dogaresse.*
duc,	duke,	*duchesse.*
pair,	peer,	*pairesse.*

40. **NAMES OF ANIMALS**, &c. Occasionally, animals of different sexes are denoted by distinct words.

coq, cock.	**poule**, hen.
homme, man.	**femme**, woman.
bouc, he-goat.	**chèvre**, she-goat.

Many names of animals have no separate forms to denote gender, and are always masculine or always feminine, as it happens. Thus **tortue**, *tortoise*, **baleine**, *whale*, are feminine,[1] **castor**, *beaver*, masculine. If it be necessary to distinguish the sex, the word **mâle** or **femelle** is used, as **la tortue mâle**, or **le mâle de la tortue**, **la femelle du castor**, or **le castor femelle.**

Words denoting a profession, employment, &c., generally exercised by men, are used in the masculine gender, even in speaking of women. Such are **auteur**,[2] **poète**, **peintre**, &c. **Ange** is masculine even when applied to women.

40*a*. **FEMININE ONLY.** Certain adjectives are used in the feminine only, and with particular nouns only, as *race*, *peste* **bovine**; *ignorance* **crasse**; *cour*, *indulgence* **plénière**, &c.

---

[1] So too *panthère*, *girafe*, *gazelle*, *grenouille*, *cigogne*, *grue*, *taupe*, *anguille*, *souris*, *perdrix*, *fourmi*.

[2] Sometimes, but very rarely, the expressions *femme auteur*, *femme poète*, *femme écrivain*, are used, as *Histoire des femmes écrivains de la France*. *La docteresse* has recently come in.

IV.—Gender of Nouns.

41. GENERAL RULES.[1]

I. Names denoting **men** and **male animals** are masculine, those denoting *women* and *female animals*, feminine.

A few words like *caution*, surety, *connaissance*, acquaintance, *recrue*, recruit, *sentinelle*, sentinel, *dupe*, dupe, *estaffette*, courier, and the names of the players in an orchestra, when the names of the instruments happen to be feminine (*la flûte*, *la clarinette*, &c.), are feminine, even though they denote males. So *la basse*, though a male voice, **le soprano**, &c., though a female.

II. Names of **metals**, as **le platine**, platinum, and of **trees**,[2] as **le chêne**, oak, **un orme**, elm, **le wellingtonia**, wellingtonia, **le saule**, willow; **shrubs**, as **le fuchsia**, fuchsia, **le lierre**, ivy, **un oléandre**, oleander, are masculine, except—

épine, aubépine,	thorn, whitethorn.
ronce, yeuse, vigne,	bramble, ilex, vine.

III. Names of **months**, as **le nivôse**, **le septembre**, and **days of the week**, as **le dimanche**, are masculine.

Obs. Compounds of *mi*, like *la mi-août*, mid-August, are feminine, except **midi**, **minuit**.

IV. Names of **mountains**, as **le Vésuve**, **le Jura**, are masculine. But plural names of chains—*Alpes*, *Ardennes*, *Vosges*, *Andes*, *Pyrénées*, *Cévennes*, *Cordillères*, and compounds of *Sierra*, as *la Sierra Nevada* are feminine. **Apennins**, **Karpathes**, **Balkans**, though plural, are masculine.

V. Names of *countries and towns ending in e mute*, as *la Belgique*, *Vienne*, are feminine, except—**le Hanovre**, **le Maine**, **le Perche**, **le Pélopon(n)èse**, **le Bengale**, **le Mexique**, **le Caire**, **le Havre**, **le Locle**.

---

[1] Throughout this chapter masculine nouns and terminations are printed in black type, feminine nouns and terminations in italics.

[2] Contrary to Latin analogy. *Épine*, *aubépine*, come from *spina*, *alba spina*. *Bourdaine*, *hièble*, and sometimes *viorne* are also feminine. **Arbre** is masculine, in spite of the Latin.

Tyr, Sion, Ilion, Jérusalem are feminine; other names of towns ending in a consonant, though naturally masculine, are often made feminine, especially in poetical language. *Athènes, Thèbes, Gênes*, &c., though apparently plural in form, are treated as feminine singular. **Paris, Lyon** are always masculine; **Londres** generally.

VI. Names of rivers are usually masculine, even those which end in e, as **le Nil, le Mein, le Volga, l'Adige, le Tage, l'Ebre, le Danube, l'Amazone, le Gange, le Tibre.** The names of *French* rivers ending in *e* are, however, feminine, as *la Loire, la Seine*, the only exception being **le Rhône.**

Notice the following names of rivers as being feminine: *la Guadiana, la Tamise, la Moselle*, as well as *la Néva*, and other Russian rivers in *a*.

VII. The names of *festivals* are feminine,[2] as *la Saint-Jean*, Midsummer Day; *la Noël*, Christmas;[1] *la Toussaint*, All Saints' Day; *la Saint-Sylvestre*, December 31.

VIII. **Adjectives** and **Infinitives** used as nouns are masculine; as **le rose**, *rose-colour* (though *la rose*, the flower, is feminine); **le dormir, le sourire, les vivres, l'intérieur, le neuvième** (fraction).

So also are adverbs, &c., used as nouns, **le si, le pourquoi, le pour et le contre.**

IX. Masculine participles used as nouns are masculine, as **le volant,** shuttlecock, **le démêlé,** quarrel; feminine participles, as *la résultante*, resultant, *la renommée*, renown, feminine. The same applies to nouns obviously from Latin participles, as **le conflit,** conflict, *la réponse*, answer, *la recette*, receipt.

X. Compound nouns are of two classes:—

(1.) Nouns qualified by a noun with preposition, as **chef-d'œuvre,** masterpiece; by an adjective, as *basse-cour*

[1] Only in *à la Noël*; **Noël** alone is masculine. [2] *Fête* understood.

poultry-yard, **chat-huant**, screech-owl; or by a noun in apposition, as **chou-fleur**, cauliflower, **oiseau-mouche**, humming-bird. The gender of such compounds is that of the chief noun; thus **chef-d'œuvre** is masculine, like **chef**; **chat-huant** masculine, as **chat**; *basse-cour* feminine, as *cour*; **chou-fleur, oiseau-mouche**, masculine, as **chou, oiseau**, the *first* of the two components.

(2.) Miscellaneous phrases used as nouns, like **tête-à-tête, cure-dents, passe-partout**, where, even if there is a noun, it could not, according to the sense, determine the gender. All such phrases are masculine. Under the same head fall nouns like **le rouge-gorge, le rouge-queue**, i.e., **l'oiseau à rouge gorge**, &c., though *gorge*, *queue*, are feminine.

But *perce-neige*, snowdrop, and some other compounds of *perce* are feminine; so are *garde-malade*, nurse, *garde-robe*, wardrobe, *entre-côte*, steak, and *averse*, shower, *alarme*, alarm, the formation of which is disguised.

XI. The crude forms, or roots of verbs, are masculine; as—

départ, root of *départir*.
don, root of *donner*.
emploi, root of *employer*.
soupçon, root of *soupçonner*.

But most of those ending in *e* mute or with *e* mute suffixed are feminine, as—

adresse, from the root of *adresser*.
dispute, from the root of *disputer*.

Except—

blâme, change, conte, compte, doute, risque, reproche, reste, rêve, songe, souffle, trouble.

41*a* **AGREEMENT AND DISAGREEMENT WITH LATIN.** Nouns derived from Latin masculines and neuters are masculine, as **le musée**, museum, **le peuple**, people (*populus*), **un espace**, space (*spatium*); nouns derived from Latin feminines are feminine, as *la vertu*, virtue (*virtus*), *la faim*, hunger (*fames*), *la croix*, cross (*crux*).

Allowance must be made for the fact that some nouns had different forms, or were of more than one gender in Latin, and that the French noun is often formed from a Low-Latin original, which differed from the classical form.

The following are the chief exceptions:[1]—

I. Names of **trees**, masculine in French, feminine in Latin.

II. Nouns in **eur**, not denoting an agent, as *la vapeur*, *la terreur*, &c., from Latin masculines.[2]

III. Feminine nouns formed from Latin neuter plurals, as *une arme*, weapon, from *arma; la saussaie*, willow-plantation, from *saliceta ; la joie*, joy, from *gaudia ; la merveille* marvel, from *mirabilia ; la volaille*, fowl, from *volatilia*.

IV. Nouns whose gender is apparently changed by analogy with familiar groups of French words, as **le sort**, lot (*sors*), **un art** (*ars*), art, **le salut**, salvation (*salus*), *la course*, race (*cursus*), *la mer*, sea (*mare*), **le dimanche**, Sunday (*dies dominica*).[3]

42, 43. **RULES DEPENDING ON TERMINATION.** In the following pages, masculine nouns and endings are printed in black type, feminine nouns in italics. Rules are printed in type of the ordinary size; exceptions in small type.

---

[1] Taken from the late Professor Cassal's treatise on the French Genders, to which we are largely indebted throughout this chapter.

[2] Other examples are : **un arbre** (arbor), *la brebis* (vervex), *la cendre* (cinis), *la comète* (cometa), *la dent* (dens), **un été** (aestas), **le front** (frons), *la jument* (jumentum), *la paroi* (paries), *les mœurs* (mores).

[3] This change is possibly due to analogy with derivatives from *-ura*.

42. RULES.[1]

I. RULE.—**A, I, O, U,** are masculine, as—

In **A, diorama,** diorama, **fuchsia,** fuchsia.
In **I, merci,** thanks, **balai,** broom, **effroi,** fright.
In **O, écho,** echo, **numéro,** number.
In **U, fichu,** shawl, **chou,** cabbage, **chapeau,** hat.

II*a*. RULE.—**EUR** is masculine (1) denoting an agent, as **pêcheur,** fisherman; (2) denoting a metaphorical agent, as **équateur,** equator; (3) when an adjective, as **l'intérieur.**

II*b*. RULE.—*EUR*, denoting a quality, is feminine[2], as—

pudeur, modesty, *horreur*, horror.

Also *fleur*, flower, and *mœurs*, manners.

III. RULE.—*ION* (except when augmentative, as **le million**), *ISON*, *AISON*, *OISON*, are feminine, as—

religion, religion. *action*, action.
prison, prison. *toison*, fleece.
raison, reason. *foison*, plenty.

TION is the commonest feminine ending.

IV. RULE.—All other nouns ending in consonants are masculine, for example, those ending—

In **B,** as **club,** club.
In **C,** as **choc,** shock, **bec,** beak.
In **D,** as **pied,** foot, **nid,** nest.
In **F,** as **œuf,** egg, **canif,** penknife.

---

[1] Note the difference of type mentioned on page 21. The lists given, especially of nouns in *e* mute, are by no means exhaustive, but it is hoped that nothing of importance is omitted. For full details see "The French Genders," by Professor Cassal.

[2] This is the most remarkable deviation from the Latin rules of gender; the Latin words in *or*, from which the French *eur* is de-

43. EXCEPTIONS.

I. Exceptions (feminine)—

eau, peau, glu,	water, skin, birdlime.
bru, tribu, vertu,	daughter-in-law, tribe, virtue.
paroi, fourmi,	partition, ant.
foi, loi, merci,[1]	faith, law, mercy.

II*b*. Exceptions—

bonheur, malheur, pleurs,	happiness, misfortune, tears.
chœur, cœur, honneur,	choir, heart, honour.
labeur, déshonneur,	labour, dishonour.

III. Exceptions—

bastion, grison, oison,	bastion, greybeard, gosling.
tison, peson, bison, poison,	brand, steelyard, bison, poison.
pion, scion, champion,	pawn, scion, champion.
million, talion, lampion,	million, retaliation, lamp-post.
lion, scorpion,[2]	lion, scorpion.

and a few less common nouns.

IV. Exceptions (feminine)

In *F, clef, nef, soif.*	key, nave, thirst.

---

rived, are masculine. An effort was made, in the 16th century, to restore the original gender, which succeeded only in two or three cases. **Malheur, bonheur,** are from **heur,** *augurium. Il n'y a qu'heur et malheur en ce monde.*

[1] Masculine when it means thanks. Except also dances in *a*, as *la polka* and *la sépia, la villa,* &c.

[2] Also **brimborion, gabion, galion, tabellion, septentrion, stellion, camion, billion, trillion,** &c.

RULES.

In **G**, as **sang**, blood, **joug**, yoke, **poing**, fist.
In **L**, as **fusil**, gun, **miel**, honey, **mal**, evil.
In **M**, as **essaim**, swarm, **nom**, name, **parfum**, perfume.
In **N**, as **pain**, bread, **coussin**, cushion, **don**, gift, **soupçon**, suspicion, **chausson**, sock, **pinson**, chaffinch, **poisson**, fish, **poison**, poison.
In **P**, as **coup**, blow, **cep**, vine-stock.
In **Q**, as **coq**, cock.
In **R**, as **or**, gold, **métier**, trade, **cuir**, leather. (But see Rule II.)
In **S**, as **os**, bone, **cours**, course, **tas**, heap, **ananas**, pine-apple, **omnibus**, omnibus, **pathos**.
In **T**, as **sort**, lot, **jouet**, toy, **art**, art, **consulat**, consulate, **argument**, argument. (**ment** is the masculine ending *par excellence*.)
In **X**, as **choix**, choice, **borax**, borax.
In **Z**, as **gaz**, gas, **nez**, nose.

V*a*. RULE.—*TÉ*, *TIÉ*, are feminine, as—

beauté, beauty.	*électricité*, electricity.
amitié, friendship.	*moitié*, half.

V*b*. RULE.—Other words in **É** are masculine, as **blé**, wheat, **gré**, liking.

---

[1] Also written *cuillère*. With either orthography the *r* is sounded. Henry IV. told Malherbe that the *r* ought to be mute, and the noun masculine. Malherbe replied that even the King's power was insufficient to enforce it north of the Loire.

[2] Masculine in other meanings.

[3] Notice *la foi*, faith, **le foie**, liver, *la fois*, time.

[4] Pronounce the *t*, to distinguish it from **dos**, back.

EXCEPTIONS.

In *M*, *faim.*	hunger.
In *N*, *main*, *fin*, *maman.*	hand, end, mamma.
Besides Rule III. *façon*, *rançon.*	fashion, ransom.
leçon, *chanson.*	lesson, song.
mousson, *moisson.*	monsoon, harvest.
cuisson, *boisson.*	cooking, drink.
In *R*, *chair*, *mer*, *cour.*	flesh, sea, court.
cuiller,[1] *tour.*[2]	spoon, tower.
In *S*, *fois*,[3] *brebis*, *vis.*	time (3 times, &c.), sheep, screw.
oasis, *souris.*[3]	oasis, mouse.
In *T*, *part*, *plupart*, *gent.*	share, majority, tribe.
nuit, *forêt*, *dent.*	night, forest, tooth.
hart, *mort*,[2] *dot*,[4] *jument.*	rope, death, dowry, mare.
In *X*, *perdrix*, *paix*, *croix.*	partridge, peace, cross.
faux,[3] *chaux*, *voix.*	scythe, lime, voice.
toux, *noix*, *poix.*	cough, nut, pitch.

V*a*. EXCEPTIONS in *TÉ*—

côté, été, traité.[5]	side, summer, treaty.
doigté, comité, comté.[6]	fingering, committee, county.
pâté, arrêté, aparté.	pie, décision, aside.

and participles used as nouns, as écarté, précipité.

V*b*. EXCEPTIONS — *clé*, key, *psyché*, looking-glass.

---

[5] *Tractatum*, *comitatus*, &c., while most words in *té* are from Latin words in *tas*.

[6] But *la Franche-Comté*, *la vicomté*.

RULES.

VI. RULE.—*IE*, *UE* are feminine, as—

vie, life, *chênaie*, oak-forest, *voie*, way.
sortie, coming out, *crue*, rising (of river).
nue, cloud, *roue*, wheel, *queue*, tail.

VI*a*. RULE.—So also are the terminations, *GUE*, *QUE*-

physique, physics, *mathématiques*, mathematics.
brigue, cabal, *figue*, fig, *harangue*, harangue.

VII. RULE.—*ÉE* is feminine, as *année*, year, *assemblée*, assembly, *dictée*, dictation (see IX., p. 19).

VIII. RULE.—**ASME**, **ISME**, **OME**, **EME** are masculine, as **cataplasme**, plaster, **socialisme**,[1] socialism, **axiome**, axiom, **emblème**, emblem.

IX. RULE.—**AGE**[2] is masculine, as **bavardage**, chattering, **voyage**, journey, **ménage**, housekeeping.

So are most nouns in **GE** preceded by a vowel, as **siège**, seat, **prodige**, marvel, **éloge**, panegyric, **déluge**, flood.

X. RULE.—**AIRE**, **OIRE**, **TÈRE** are masculine, as—

dictionnaire, dictionary,
laboratoire, laboratory,
honoraire, fee.
monastère, monastery.

---

[1] Also **aphélie**, **périhélie**, **becfigue**, **exergue**, **bésigue**, **panégyrique**, **cantique**, **distique**, **pique-nique**, **kiosque**, **obélisque**, **mollusque**, **colloque**, **calque**, &c.

[2] Both these terminations are constantly used to form new words; *age* is from *aticum*, low Latin, *agium*.

EXCEPTIONS.

VI. Exceptions in *IE*—

foie, parapluie,	liver, umbrella.
génie, incendie,	genius, conflagration.

VI*a*. Exceptions in *GUE, QUE*—

cirque, zodiaque, portique,	circus, zodiac, portico.
casque, disque, moustique,	helmet, disc, mosquito.
dogue, phoque, lexique,[1]	bulldog, seal, lexicon.
masque, manque, chèque,	mask, want, cheque.

Also adjectives in *ique* used as nouns, as tonique, tonic (medicine), and compounds of logue, loque, as dialogue, soliloque.

VII. Exceptions. Nouns in *ÉE* from Latin *eus, eum*, as musée, museum, coryphée, chorus-leader. Also apogée, périgée.

VIII. Exceptions—

crème, trirème,	cream, trireme.
mi-carême,	mid-Lent Sunday.

IX. Exceptions—

cage,[4] *image, nage,*	cage, image, swimming.
page, plage, rage,	page (of book), shore, rage.
neige, strige, tige,	snow, vampire, stem.
loge, horloge,	box (in theatre), clock.

and nouns in *auge*, as *sauge*, sage.

X. Exceptions—

chaire, aire, circulaire,	pulpit, area, circular.
paire, affaire, grammaire,	pair, affair, grammar.
armoire, gloire, histoire poire,	cupboard, glory, history,
victoire, mangeoire, foire,	victory, manger, fair. [pear
artère, mâchoire, écritoire,	artery, jaw, inkstand,

and *mémoire*, meaning *memory*, with a few less common nouns.[5]

---

[3] From the Latin neuter plural.

[4] *Cage*, &c., derived from *cavea*, *imago*, *pagina*, *plaga*, *rabies*. Other exceptions are *saxifrage*, *passerage*, *ambages*, *énallage*, *hypallage*.

[5] *Glaire, haire, jugulaire, nummulaire, dentaire, dentelaire*, &c., and names of flowers, as *calcéolaire*, also *chimère*.

RULES.

XI. RULE.—The following are feminine :—

ANCE, ENCE as	*chance*, chance, *science*, science.
URE, IÈRE	*nature*, nature, *matière*, matter.
NE	*laine*, wool, *lanterne*, lamp-post.
SE	*brise*, breeze, *base*, base.
TE	*faute*, fault, *récolte*, harvest.
CHE	*hache*, axe, *branche*, branch.
TUDE, ADE	*solitude*, solitude, *promenade*, walk.

XII. RULE.—Nouns ending in E mute after a doubled consonant are feminine, as *griffe*, claw, *feuille*, leaf, *balle*, ball, *pomme*, apple, *canne*, cane, *trappe*, trap-door, *barre*, bar, *masse*, mass, *paillasse*, mattress[1], *gazette*, gazette.

XIII. RULE.—Abstract nouns in *ICE* are feminine, as *justice*, *malice*. Also *milice*, militia, *prémices*, first fruits, *épices*, spices.

---

[1] But le paillasse, clown, quack.

EXCEPTIONS.

XI. Exceptions:—Most nouns in **PTE, CTE,** as **compte,** account, **acte,** document. Also,

augure,[1] **murmure, parjure,**	augury, murmur, perjury.
grade, silence, cimetière,	degree, silence, cemetery.
âne, crâne, chêne,	ass, skull, oak.
trône, cone, domaine, frêne,	throne, cone, domain, ash.
jeûne, prône, patrimoine,	fast, sermon, patrimony.
malaise,[2] **diocèse,**	indisposition, diocese.
faite, doute, gîte,	summit, doubt, lair.
culte, conte, rite,	worship, tale, rite.
vote, tumulte, site,	vote, tumult, site.
plébiscite, mérite,	plebiscite, merit.
antidote, satellite,	antidote, satellite.

and technical terms as **oxygène, sulfate, chlorure.**

XII. Exceptions—

parterre, beurre,	pit, (of theatre), butter.
tonnerre, leurre,	thunder, lure.
libelle, codicille, lierre,	lampoon, codicil, ivy.
intervalle, verre, cimeterre,	interval, glass, scimitar.
mille, vermicelle, colosse,	mile, vermicelli, colossus.
squelette, carrosse,	skeleton, carriage.

and **gramme** with compounds, as **milligramme**[3]; also **lemme.**

XIII. Exceptions—

vice, service, supplice,	vice, service, torture.
caprice, préjudice, indice,	caprice, detriment, sign.
artifice, auspice,	artifice, auspice.

---

[1] Many of these are obvious to those who know Latin, e.g., *augurium, murmur, perjurium, gradus,* κοιμητήριον, *fastigium, cultus, plebiscitum,* &c.; *chêne, frêne,* are names of trees.

[2] But *aise* is feminine. [3] But *épigramme, anagramme* are feminine.

43*a*. **ABRIDGED GENDER RULES.** The following is a brief summary of the chief gender rules. Details and exceptions will be found above.

I. The French masculine represents the Latin masculine and neuter, the French feminine the Latin feminine.

II. Infinitives as **le lever** (*du soleil*, sunrise), and adjectives, adverbs, &c., used as nouns, as **le vrai, le pour et le contre** (*pro* and *con*) are masculine (really neuter). So are compound nouns made up of a verb and a noun, as **le portefeuille, le porte-clefs.**

III. Nouns ending in **a, i, o, u** are masculine, as **le choléra, le souci, le numéro, le tissu.** This rule includes diphthong endings, as **un emploi, le chapeau, le cheveu, le trou.**

IV. Nouns ending in *té*, *tié* are feminine, as *la beauté*, *la pitié*. Other nouns ending in **é** are masculine, as **le blé, le dé.**

V. Nouns ending in *ée*, *ie*, *ue* are feminine, as *la journée*, *la vie*, *la queue*.

VI. Nouns ending in *e* mute preceded by a doubled consonant are feminine, as *la barre*, *la pomme*, *la canne*.

VII. Nouns ending in *nce*, *tude*, *ure*, *ade*, as *la science*, *la solitude*, *la nature*, *la promenade*, are feminine.

VIII. Nouns ending in **age, ège, me, aire, oire** are masculine, as **le voyage, le siège, un emblème, le dictionnaire, le laboratoire.**

IX. Most other nouns ending in *e* mute after a consonant are feminine, as *la faute*, *la laine*.

X. Nouns ending in *son*, *sion*, *tion* are feminine, as *la raison*, *une occasion*, *la population*.

XI. Most other nouns ending in consonants are masculine, as **le monument, le canif, le sort, le cuir, le nez.** Remember especially that **ment** is a masculine ending.

XII. Abstract nouns in *eur* are feminine, as *la faveur*.

COMMON EXCEPTIONS.

I. Names of trees are masculine; *abstract nouns* in *eur* are feminine

II. *perce-neige, perce-feuille, perce-pierre.*

III. *eau, peau, loi.*
tribu, vertu, foi.

IV. **côté, été, traité.**
pâté, comité, comté.

V. **foie, parapluie, génie, incendie.**
Nouns from Latin eus, eum, as **coryphée, musée.**

VI. **carrosse, beurre, tonnerre.**
squelette, verre, lierre.

VII. **silence, murmure, grade, parjure.**

VIII. *cage, image, nage, page* (of a book), *plage, rage.*
paire, affaire, grammaire.
armoire, gloire, histoire.

IX. **arbre, caractère, change, cable.**
compte, conte, meuble, cigare, mensonge.
doute, ongle, pouce, sable.
peigne, reproche, risque, sucre, songe.

X. **poisson, poison, oison.**

XI. *clef, nef, soif, main, fin, faim.*
chair, mer, cour, nuit, forêt, dent, and many in *x.*

XII. **bonheur, malheur, honneur, pleurs.**

44. MISCELLANEOUS MASCULINES IN E MUTE.

The following is a list[1] of important masculine words in *e* mute, many of which fall under none of the preceding rules:

abîme,	désordre,	meuble,	rôle,
angle,	dimanche,	mobile,	royaume,
antre,	doute,	monde,	sable,
arbre,	empire,	monstre,	sabre,
astre,	espace,	murmure,	sceptre,
baptême,	exercice,	navire,	scrupule,
beurre,	faîte,	négoce,	sexe,
blâme,	fleuve,	nombre,	siècle,
buste,	foie,	ongle,	signe,
cable,	genre,	ordre,	site,
calme,	germe,	parapluie,	songe,
cadre,	geste,	peigne,	souffle,
caractère,	glaive,	peuple,	spectre,
carrosse,	globe,	poème,	style,
centre,	gouffre,	pôle,	sucre,
cercle,	groupe,	pouce,	système,
change,	havre,	précipice,	terme,
chapitre,	hôte,	prestige,	texte,
charme,	incendie,	prétexte,	tome,
cigare,	insecte,	principe,	trouble,
cloître,	ivoire,	prodige,	tumulte,
code,	jeûne,	proverbe,	type,
commerce,	légume,	régime,	uniforme,
compte,	linge,	règne,	vacarme,
conte,	luxe,	remède,	ventre,
coude,	manque,	reproche,	verbe,
crime,	marbre,	reste,	verre,
culte,	membre,	rêve,	volume,
cycle,	mélange,	risque,	vote,
désastre,	mensonge,	rite,	zèle.

[1] Compiled chiefly from Van Laun's French Grammar, where fuller list is given.

NOUNS WITH TWO GENDERS.[5]

45. First List (Very Common Nouns).

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*
garde,	guardian.	1. guardianship. 2. name of a regiment "The Guards."[1]
livre,	book (*librum*).	1. pound (*libram*). 2. franc.
manche,	handle.	1. sleeve. 2. British Channel.
mémoire,	memorandum, memoir.	memory.
merci,	thanks.[2]	mercy (*à la merci de*).
mort,	dead man (*mortuum*).	death (*mortem*).
mousse,	cabin-boy.	moss, froth.
page,	attendant (*παιδίον*).	page of a book (*paginam*).
somme,	sleep (*somnum*).	sum (*summam*)
souris,	smile (*risum*).	mouse (*soricem*).
tour,	tour, turn, trick.	tower (*turrem*).
vase,	vessel (*vas*).	mud.
voile,	veil	sail.

46. Second List (Less Common Nouns).

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*
aide,	helper.	assistance.
aigle,	eagle (bird).	eagle (standard).
aune,	alder (*alnum*).	ell (*ulnam*).
barbe,	barb, Barbary horse.	beard (*barbam*).
barde,	bard, poet.	1. slice of bacon. 2. armour for a horse.
Bourgogne,	Burgundy (wine).[3]	Burgundy (province).
caustique,	caustic substance.	caustic curve.
Champagne,	champagne (wine).[3]	Champagne (province).
coche,	coach.[4]	1. sow. 2. notch.
couple,	pair (united by marriage, friendship, &c.).	couple (two individuals united by chance).

[1] Notice the curious expression, *un garde-française.*

[2] *Merci* is properly feminine from *mercedem.* In the expression *grand'merci* (lit. it is a great favour) the origin of *grand'* (p. 4, note) was forgotten, and *merci* came to be looked upon as masculine.

[3] Written *du bourgogne, du champagne.*

[4] Almost obsolete except in the phrase *la mouche du coche,* "the fly on the wheel."

[5] See (App. VI.) for recent changes.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*
crêpe,	veil, crape.	pancake.
critique,	critic.	criticism.
élève,	pupil.	breeding (of cattle, &c.).
espace,	space.	printer's lead.
enseigne,	ensign (officer).[1]	ensign (colours), signboard.
faune,	Faun.	fauna.
faux,	falsification (*falsum*).	scythe (*falcem*).
foudre,	1. thunderbolt (in poetry). 2. great warrior, orator.	lightning, thunderbolt (literal).
greffe,	chancery.	graft, grafting.
guide,	guide.	reins (plural only).
hymne,	lyric poem.	hymn (in church service).
litre,	litre (a cubic decimetre).	funereal hangings.
manœuvre,	artisan.	manœuvre.
martyre,	martyrdom.	female martyr.
mode,	mood, manner.	fashion.
moule,	mould (*modulum*).	cockle, mussel.
office,	duty, divine service.	pantry.
paillasse,	clown, jack-pudding.	straw mattress.
palme,	palm (span).	palm-branch.
parallèle,	comparison, parallel of latitude.	parallel line, parallel in siege works.
pendule,	pendulum (oftener *balancier*).	clock.
période,	conclusion, culminating point.	period (of recurrence, or in a sentence).
pique,	spade (in cards).	pike, pique.
physique,	physique, constitution.	physics, natural philosophy.
ponte,	punter (gaming).	laying of eggs.
poêle,	1. stove (*pensile*). 2. pall (*pallium*).	frying-pan (*patellam*).
poste,	assigned post, duty, &c.	mail, post-office.
pourpre,	purple.	purple robe.
prétexte,	pretext.	*toga praetexta.*
relâche,[3]	off day (theatre).	anchorage.
remise,	fly, hired carriage.	1, delay, &c.; 2. coach-house.

[1] Formerly an officer, both in army and navy, now superseded.

[2] See § VIII., p. 19.

[3] The Englishman who mistakes this for the name of a play is a standing joke in Paris.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*
solde,	balance (money).	soldier's pay.
Suisse,	Swiss, beadle.	Switzerland (*la Suisse*).
trompette,	trumpeter.	trumpet.
vague,	space, vagueness.	wave.
vapeur,	steamer.	vapour, steam.

Chose is feminine, but **quelque chose** masculine (notice *le petit Chose*, little 'thingamy'); *personne*, person, is feminine; **personne**, any one, a pronoun, masculine.

Amour (love) is masculine in the singular, feminine in the plural, *amours;* but when it means a Cupid, always masculine.

Pâques, Easter, denoting the date, is masc. sing., denoting the religious festival, fem. sing., as *Pâques fleuries*, Palm Sunday; *Pâques closes*, Low Sunday; *Pâque*, Passover, fem. sing.

Orgue, organ, is masculine in the singular, *orgues* feminine in the plural, as formed from neuter plural *organa*.[1]

Enfant is sometimes used as a feminine noun in the singular; *une enfant*, a girl. In the plural it is always masculine.

Orge, barley, feminine, but **orge mondé, orge perlé.**

Œuvre, feminine, but masculine in some senses; **le grand œuvre**, the philosopher's stone; **l'œuvre de...**, all the works of.

47. **GENDER OF** *GENS*. **Gens**, people, is properly the plural of the obsolete feminine noun, *gent*, a race. It is generally masculine, and always so when without an adjective, but the gender of the adjectives with which it is connected depends on their position. **(App. VI.)**

(1.) The adjective is masculine: (*a*) when in the predicate, as *les* **gens** *de bien sont* **heureux**; (*b*.) when an epithet following its noun, as **tous** *les* **gens dangereux**; (*c*.) when an epithet preceding its noun, provided it has no distinct form for the feminine, as **tous** *les* **faux honnêtes** *gens*. In each case other adjectives like **tout** follow suit.

(2.) If the adjective immediately preceding *gens* has a distinct form for the feminine, *gens* is treated as a feminine noun, so far as that adjective and any adjectives going before it are concerned, as **quelles** *gens*, *de fort* **dangereuses** *gens*, **toutes** *les* **vieilles** *gens*.

[1] Coppée writes: **L'orgue** *d'Hermann—Noel et Chapsal nous obligent à écrire cette phrase barbare—était* **un des plus grandes** *de Paris.*

[2] See Appendix VI. for the licences.

(3.) Even when a feminine adjective precedes *gens*, any following adjectives or other words referring to it are masculine, as—

Les bonnes gens *sont* **tous heureux.**
Ne vous fiez pas à de **telles gens ?** **Ils** *veulent vous tromper.*
Dieu aura-t-il pitié **d'un seul** *de ces* **bonnes gens ?**

(4.) *Gens*, when qualified by a genitive, as **gens d'affaires**, is always masculine. But *certaines gens de lettres.* (Voltaire.)

Thus, in fact, the words agreeing with **gens** are all masculine, except adjectives with a distinct form for the feminine *preceding* it, which, by a curious survival, are feminine. *Tout*, *quel*, *tel*, &c., preceding such adjectives, are also made feminine.

V.—Plural of Compound Nouns.

48. **GENERAL PRINCIPLES.** There are in French a number of compound nouns, consisting of two or more words united by a hyphen. The formation of the plurals of such nouns is, for the most part, a matter of common sense ; a few rules are here given to show the principles employed. (App. VI.)

49. **NOUNS IN APPOSITION.** If a compound noun be composed of two nouns in apposition, or of a noun and the adjective which qualifies it, both parts take the sign of the plural, as—

chou-fleur,	cauliflower (cabbage flower),	**choux-fleurs.**
chef-lieu,	capital,	**chefs-lieux.**
beau-père,	father-in-law,	**beaux-pères.**
cerf-volant,	kite (flying-stag),	**cerfs-volants.**
garde-forestier,	forester,	**gardes-forestiers.**
basse-cour,	poultry-yard,	**basses-cours.**
lieutenant-colonel,	lieutenant-colonel,	**lieutenants-colonels**

50. **NOUN AND PREFIX.** If it consists of a noun and an indeclinable prefix, the noun only is made plural, as—

vice-roi,	viceroy,	**vice-rois.**
sous-préfet,	under-prefect,	**sous-préfets.**

51. **NOUN DEPENDING ON NOUN.** If it consists of a noun, and a second noun connected with it by a preposition and dependent upon it, or even of a noun with

a second noun depending upon it without a preposition, the first noun only takes the sign of the plural :—

arc-en-ciel,	rainbow,	**arcs-en-ciel.**
timbre-poste,	postage-stamp,	**timbres-poste.**
hôtel-Dieu,	hospital (house of God),	**hôtels-Dieu.**
ver-à-soie,	silk-worm,	**vers-à-soie.**

52. **COMPOUNDS OF VERB AND NOUN.** The numerous compounds, which are still being formed by prefixing the imperative of a verb to a noun, which it governs, are invariable in the plural.

un tire-bouchon,	corkscrew,	**des tire-bouchon.**
un porte-clefs,	turnkey,	**des porte-clefs.**
un abat-jour,	lamp-shade,	**des abat-jour.**

52*a*. **MISCELLANEOUS PHRASES.** If the compound noun be a phrase like **tête-à-tête, ouï-dire,** where it is not a word which is made plural, but rather the whole idea, no alteration is made. Thus the plural of **un tête-à-tête** is **des tête-à-tête,** that is two "instances of the laying together of heads."

So again—

un pied-à-terre,	footing,	**des pied-à-terre.**
un on-dit,	rumour,	**des on-dit.**

53. **PARTICULAR CASES.** The following particular cases call for notice :—

I. Compounds of **garde,** denoting persons, come under §51, **garde** being treated as a noun ; as—

un garde-chasse,	game-keeper,	**des gardes-chasse.**

But those denoting things follow §52*a*, and take no sign of the plural ; *garde* is then part of a verb :—

un garde-feu,	fire-guard,	**des garde-feu.**[1]

II. In a few words, as **portemanteau, garderobe, gendarme, pourboire,** the two parts have so completely coalesced, that they are treated as simple nouns, and make **portemanteaux, garderobes, gendarmes, pourboires.**

[1] Littré prefers to make all compounds of *garde* invariable. Some have two meanings, to which our rule gives different plurals, as *garde-magasin,* (1) a shop-watcher, (2) an article that will not sell.

III. The feminine adjective **grand'**[1] in **grand'mère, grand'messe,** &c., is left unchanged; as—

grand'mère, grandmother, **grand'mères.**
grand'messe, high mass, **grand'messes.**

But in the masculine it follows the rule, **grands-pères.**

53*a*. **LIST OF COMPOUND NOUNS.**—The following are some of the commonest compound nouns presenting any difficulty.

un appui-main,	maul-stick,	*des appuis-main.*
un (also *une*) *après-midi,*	afternoon,	*des après-midi.*
un arrière-ban,	reserve force,	*des arrière-bans.*
une arrière-pensée,	reservation,	*des arrière-pensées.*
un bain-marie,	water-bath (technical),	*des bains-marie.*
un bas-relief,	bas-relief,	*des bas-reliefs.*
un blanc-seing,	blank paper signed,	*des blancs-seings.*[2]
un bouchetrou,	stop-gap,	*des bouchetrous.*
un brèche-dents,	gap-toothed man,	*des brèche-dents.*
un coupe-gorge,	den of thieves,	*des coupe-gorge.*
un entr'acte,	interlude,	*des entr'actes.*
un entrecôte,	steak,	*des entrecôtes.*
un entresol,	mezzanine, entresol,	*des entresols.*
un fier-à-bras,	bully, firebrace,	*des fier-à-bras.*[3]
un fourmi-lion,	ant-lion,	*des fourmis-lions.*
un franc-alleu,	freehold,	*des francs-alleus.*
un gagne-pain,	means of livelihood,	*des gagne-pain.*
un gentilhomme,	nobleman,	*des gentilshommes.*
un gobe-mouches,	fly-catcher,	*des gobe-mouches*
un loup-garou,	were wolf (wolf man),[4]	*des loups-garous.*
une mi-carême,	Mid-lent Sunday,	*des mi-carême.*
un passeport,	passport,	*des passeports.*
un Peau-rouge,	Red Indian,	*des Peaux-rouges.*
un portefeuille,	portfolio,	*des portefeuilles.*
un portemanteau,	portmanteau,[5]	*des portemanteaux.*
un prud'homme,	honest man,	*des prud'hommes.*
un rouge-gorge,	redbreast,	*des rouges-gorges.*
un sauf-conduit,	safe-conduct, pass,	*des saufs-conduits.*
un terre-plein,	platform,	*des terre-pleins.*

---

[1] See note on p. 4. [2] Or *blanc-seings.* [3] Or *fiers-à-bras.*
[4] Or rather wolf-man-wolf, since *garou* is really *were-wolf*, man-wolf [5] Also a set of clothes-pegs.

VI.—Comparison of Adjectives.

54. **FORMATION OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.** French differs from most languages in having no comparative and superlative terminations.

The comparative is formed by prefixing **plus**, *more*—

Singular.	Plural.
Masc. **plus beau**,	**plus beaux**, fairer.
Fem. **plus belle**,	**plus belles**.

the superlative by prefixing the definite article and **plus**—

Masc. **le plus beau**,	**les plus beaux**, the fairest.
Fem. **la plus belle**,	**les plus belles**.

Or a pronominal adjective may take the place of the article, as **mon plus beau**, &c.

54*a*. **LATIN SURVIVALS.** A few common adjectives retain comparatives and superlatives derived from the Latin, viz.:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bon,	**meilleur**,	**le meilleur.**
mauvais,	**pire**,	**le pire.**
petit (menu)	moindre,	le moindre.

Obs. 1. A few other Latin comparatives and superlatives exist, but only as detached words without positives. Such are *majeur* (in *force majeure*), *mineure* (in *l'Asie Mineure*), *inférieur*, *révérendissime*, *minime* trivial, *infime*, &c. These are of modern introduction.

Obs. 2. *Bon*, *mauvais*, *petit*, are also compared with *plus*. Notice that one says *meilleur marché*, cheaper, not *plus bon marché*, *de meilleure heure*, earlier; but *je lui en sais plus mauvais* (not *pire*) *gré*, I owe him a worse grudge for it.

55. **ADVERBS.** Four adverbs are compared, **beaucoup**, **bien**, **mal**, **peu**. It is important not to confound their comparatives and superlatives with those of the corresponding adjectives. **Mal** is also compared with **plus**.

beaucoup,	**plus**,	**le plus.**
bien,	**mieux**,	**le mieux.**
mal,	**pis**,	**le pis.**
peu,	**moins**,	**le moins.**

56. **FORM WITH *LE PLUS*.** There is a second form of the superlative, formed by prefixing **le plus** or **le moins**, without declining **le**. See Syntax, § 41.

VII.—Numerals.

57. **DEFINITIONS.** There are two sorts of numerals, *cardinal numerals*, answering the question *how many?* and *ordinal numerals*, answering the question *where in the list?*

58. **CARDINALS.** The cardinal numbers are :—

1, **un** (fem. **une**). 2, **deux.** 3, **trois.** 4, **quatre.** 5, **cinq.** 6, **six.** 7, **sept.** 8, **huit.** 9, **neuf.** 10, **dix.** 11, **onze.** 12, **douze.** 13, **treize.** 14, **quatorze.** 15, **quinze.** 16, **seize.** 17, **dix-sept.** 18, **dix-huit.** 19, **dix-neuf.** 20, **vingt.** 21, **vingt et un.**[1] 22, **vingt-deux,** &c. 30, **trente.** 31, **trente et un.**[1] 32, **trente-deux,** &c. 40, **quarante,** etc. 50, **cinquante,** &c. 60, **soixante,** &c. 70, **soixante-dix.**[2] 71, **soixante et onze.** 72, **soixante-douze.** 73, **soixante-treize.** 74, **soixante-quatorze.** 75, **soixante-quinze.** 76, **soixante-seize.** 77, **soixante-dix-sept.** 80, **quatre-vingts.** 81, **quatre-vingt-un.** 82, **quatre-vingt-deux,** &c.

90, **quatre-vingt-dix.** 91, **quatre-vingt-onze,** &c., as 72.

100, **cent.** 101, **cent un.**[3] 102, **cent deux,** &c.

110, **cent dix.** 111, **cent onze,** &c.

200. **deux cents.** 201, **deux cent un.**[3]

1000, **mille.** 1001, **mille un.**[4] 2000, **deux mille.**[5]

100,000, **cent mille.** 200,000, **deux cent mille.**

1,000,000, **un million.** 200,000,000, **deux cents millions.**

1,000,000,000, **un milliard** or **un billion.**[6]

1,000,000,000,000, **un trillion.**

1,000,000,000,000,000, **un quadrillion.**

58*a*. **PRONUNCIATION OF NUMERALS.** The pronunciation of several numerals varies according as they occur :—1. Before a consonant or *h* aspirated ; 2. Before a

---

[1] *Vingt-un*, *trente-un*, &c., are not so much used.

[2] *Septante* (70), *octante* (80), *nonante* (90), are provincial. *La Septante* is the Septuagint version of the Old Testament.

[3] Notice that the *t* of *cent* is not carried.

[4] *Les mille et une nuits*, the Arabian Nights.

[5] Between 1,000 and 2,000 the reckoning by hundreds, *quinze cents*, &c., is freely used. Especially *onze cents* is preferred to *mille cent*.

[6] Note the difference between our notation and the French. In English a billion is a million million, a trillion a million billion, &c.

vowel or *h* mute ; 3. At the end of a sentence ; 4. When equivalent to an ordinal. Thus :—

Cinq—1. **cin** *chevaux ;* 2. **cin-k***ommes (cinq hommes) ;* 3. *il y en a* **cink** ; 4. *le* **cink** *mai, le* **cink** *août.*[1]

Six—1. **si** *chevaux ;* 2. **si-z***ommes ;* 3. *il y en a* **siss** ; 4. *le* **siss** *janvier, le* **siss** *avril.*

Sept—1. **sè** *chevaux ;* 2. **sè-t***ommes ;* 3. *il y en a* **sett** ; 4. *le* **sett** *mai, le* **sett** *août.*

Huit—1. **hui** *chevaux ;* 2. **hui-t***ommes ;* 3. *il y en a* **huitt** ; 4. *le* **huitt** *janvier, le* **huitt** *avril.*

Neuf—1. **neu** *chevaux ;* 2. **neu-v***ommes ;* 3. *il y en a* **neuff** ; 4. *le* **neuf** *mai, le* **neuff** *août.*

Dix—1. **di** *chevaux ;* 2. **di-z***ommes ;* 3. *il y en a* **diss** ; 4. *le* **diss** *janvier, le* **diss** *avril.* Note—**diz-sept**, **diz-***huit*, **diz-***neuf.*

Vingt—1. **vin** *chevaux* ; 2. **vin-t***ommes* ; 3. *il y en a* **vintt** ; 4. *le* **vintt** *mai, le* **vintt** août. Note from 21 to 29, **vintt-***deux*, **vintt-***huit* ; but from 80 to 99, *quatre*-**vin**-*deux*, *quatre*-**vin**-*onze*, &c.

Huit and **onze** are treated as if they begun with consonants, as **le onze**, **le huitième**, **les huit**, without *liaison.*

59. **ORDINALS.** Ordinal numerals are formed from the corresponding cardinal numerals by adding **ième**, and dropping *e* mute from those that end in that letter ; **neuf** also changes *f* into *v*. The following are a few of the ordinals :

1st, **le premier**, **la première** ;[2] 2nd, **le second**, **la seconde**, or **le** or **la deuxième** ;[3] 3rd, **troisième** ;[2] 4th, **quatrième** ; 5th, **cinquième** ;[4] 6th, **sixième** ; 7th, **septième** ; 8th, **huitième** ; 9th, **neuvième** ; 10th, **dixième**, &c.

20th, **vingtième** : 21st, **vingt et unième** ; 22nd, **vingt-deuxième**,[5] &c. ; 30th, **trentième** ; 31st, **trente et unième.**

101st, **le** or **la cent unième.** 20,000th, **le** or **la vingt millième**, 1,000,000th, **le** or **la millionième**, &c.

---

[1] In the phonetic notation **sē**, **sēk** ; **si**, **sis** ; **se**, **set** ; **hų**, **hųt** ; **nœ**, **nœf** ; **di**, **dis** ; **vē**, **vēt** ; **diz.**

[2] *Prime* is used in a few phrases, as *de prime abord, de prime saut ; tiers* in *le tiers état, une fièvre tierce*, &c.

[3] *Deuxième* should not be used of the second of a set of two only ; it always suggests a third at least. *Second* as if *segond.*

[4] Notice the inserted *u*. [5] Not *vingt-premier*, *vingt-second.*

From the ordinal numbers are formed adverbs, as **premièrement** (*en premier lieu*), **secondement** (1, 2, &c.).[4]

60. **NOTES ON CARDINALS AND ORDINALS.**

I. **Vingt, cent,** take an **s** when multiplied by another number, but *only when no number follows them.*[1] **(App. VI.)**

180 men, **cent quatre-vingts hommes.**

385 men, **trois cent quatre-vingt-cinq hommes.**

Beware of saying *un cent*,[2] *un mille*, for 100, 1000.

II. **et** is inserted in **vingt et un,** &c., omitted in **cent un, mille un, deux cent un,** &c.

III. **un** in **vingt et un,** &c., takes the feminine inflexion when necessary, as **les mille et une nuits,** the Arabian Nights.

IV. The words denoting *numbers below* 100 are connected by hyphens, *provided there be no "et."* But **cent, mille,** &c., do not take a hyphen either before or after them. **(App. VI.)**

V. **mille,** meaning a thousand, has no plural.

VI. **million, billion, milliard,** &c., are nouns ; we must say—**trois cents millions de francs,** 300,000,000 francs.

When followed by other numbers, they retain the **s,** as—

517,387,211, **cinq cent dix-sept millions, trois cent quatre-vingt-sept mille, deux cent onze.**

VII. In giving the date from the Christian era, **mil** is used instead of *mille*, as—

(en) **mil huit cent soixante-dix.** (App. VI.)

VIII. In giving the date, and in such expressions as Chapter 200, Number 80, where the cardinal number is used for the ordinal, *cent* and *vingt* do not take the *s* which they have when followed by a noun.

En mil **huit cent,** *l'an mil huit cent* **quatre-vingt,** *chapitre* **quatre-vingt,** *numéro* **deux cent.**

IX. The feminine nouns, **huitaine, dizaine, quinzaine, vingtaine, quarantaine,**[3] &c., and the masculine noun

[1] Notice *l'hôpital des Quinze-Vingts* (300) formerly a blind asylum.

[2] *Cent* is a noun in phrases like *un cent d'œufs*.

[3] Whence our *quarantine*. Notice *faire la cinquantaine*, to celebrate one's golden wedding.

[4] **Also *prime* (1°), *secondo*, &c.**

millier, followed by *de*, are often used instead of numerals ; hundreds, as a noun, is rendered by **centaines,** thousands by **milliers,** as *plusieurs* **milliers** *d'hommes.*

X. In speaking of age, **ans** is not omitted as in English. The form is **j'ai vingt ans** or **je suis âgé de vingt ans, à dix-sept ans,** at 17.

XI. Notice the derivatives **un sexagénaire,** a man of 60 ; **un octogénaire,** a man of 80 ; **un trimestre,** a quarter (three months) ; **un semestre,** a half-year.

XII. The *first three pages* is **les trois premières pages.**

XIII. The following are specimens of arithmetical phrases :—**Sept et huit font quinze ; quatre fois cinq font vingt ; trois soustraits de quatre, reste un ; ôtez sept de quinze, reste huit ; je pose cinq et retiens un,** set down 5 and carry 1.

61. **FRACTIONS.** Fractions are expressed by the ordinal numbers, except in the case of the first four.

one-half,	**un demi,** or **la moitié.**		
one-third,	**un tiers,**	two-thirds,	**deux tiers.**
one-fourth,	**un quart,**	three-fourths,	**trois quarts.**
one-fifth,	**un cinquième,**	two-fifths,	**deux cinquièmes,**

and so on. Further, **demi** is either an indeclinable prefix, as in *une demi-heure*, or a declinable adjective, agreeing with a noun understood, as *une heure et demie.*

62. **WHAT O'CLOCK IS IT?** In specifying the time of day the usage is as follows :—

10 minutes past 5, *cinq heures dix* (*minutes*).
20 minutes to 7, *sept heures moins vingt* (*minutes*).

generally omitting *minutes*, but never *heures.*

A quarter past 6, *six heures et* (*un*) *quart,*
Half-past 6, *six heures et demie.*
A quarter to 7, *sept heures moins un quart.*

Remember that 12 noon is **midi** ; 12 midnight, **minuit,** not *douze heures*, and that *demi* when subjoined to these words follows their gender, not that of *heure.*

Half-past twelve, *midi* (*minuit*) *et demi.*
Precisely at two, *à deux heures précises.*
A little before eleven, *vers les onze heures.*
A little before one, *sur les une heure.*

63. **DAYS OF MONTH.** In speaking of days of the month, except the 1st, cardinal numbers are used, and *de* is generally omitted, as—

Le vingt-neuf juillet, written **le 29 juillet.**
Le treize vendémiaire, written **le XIII vendémiaire.**
Le premier août, written **le 1er août,**

omitting in all cases the word *jour*, and leaving out "on." In apposition omit the article, as **mercredi, 11 juin.**

Notice—

Every other day, *tous les deux jours*, or *de deux jours l'un.*
This day week (future), *d'aujourd'hui en huit.*
This day fortnight, *d'aujourd'hui en quinze.*
A week ago, this day week (past), *il y a huit jours.*

Huit jours, *quinze jours*, being used for a week, a fortnight.

63*a*. **ELLIPSES.** Besides the ellipsis of **jour** and of words like **régiment,** common to English and French, notice that of **classe,** in **la cinquième, professeur de cinquième ; étage,** as **au premier,** on the first floor ; **éperons, in piquer des deux.** But *an*, *heure*, are not omitted.

64. **TITLES.** In giving the titles of Kings, as the Henries, the Charles's, &c., the cardinal numbers are used, except the first, which is *premier*, as : *Charles Premier* (written 1er), *Henri Quatre* (IV), *Louis Seize* (XVI). But *Charles-Quint*,[1] not *Charles Cinq*. Also *Sixte-Quint* (Pope).

VIII.—Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives.

65. **CLASSIFICATION.** A pronoun is a word which takes the place of a noun, to avoid the necessity of repeating it. Certain adjectives are usually classed with pro-

[1] *i.e.*, The great Emperor. *Charles Cinq* is a French king.

nouns, and are called pronominal adjectives. Such are *my*, *this*, *every*, &c.

They are divided into the following classes :—

1. Personal and Reflexive.	Conjunctive, as **je, te, se.**	
	Disjunctive, as **moi, eux.**	
2. Possessive	Adjectives, as **mon, votre.**	
	Pronouns, as **le mien, le vôtre.**	
3. Demonstrative	Adjectives, as **ce, cette.**	
	Pronouns, as **celui.**	
4. Relative	Pronouns, as **qui, lequel.**	
	Adjective, sometimes **lequel.**	
5. Interrogative	Adjectives, as **quel ?**	
	Pronouns, as **qui ?**	
6. Distributive	Adjectives, **chaque.**	
	Pronoun, **chacun.**	
7. Indefinite	Adjectives, as **quelque.**	
	Pronouns, as **quelqu'un.**	
8. Reciprocal	Pronoun, **l'un l'autre.**	

66. **PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.** The distinction between a pronoun and a pronominal adjective is that the former takes the place of a noun, the latter qualifies it. Thus **je, cela, chacun, le nôtre** are pronouns; **chaque, mon, quelque** pronominal adjectives; **ce** may be either.

67. **CONJUNCTIVE AND DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.** Personal pronouns are either *conjunctive*, that is, capable of standing just before a verb, as its subject or object, or *disjunctive*, that is, capable of being used in a part of the sentence not closely connected with the verb. Thus in the sentences—

je lui *parle*, I speak to him ; **elle me** *loue*, she praises me ;
moi, je *pense à* **lui**, I, for my part, think of him ;
tu t'en *plains plus qu'***eux**, you complain of it more than they (do) ;

je, lui (in first sentence), **elle, me, tu, te, en**, are conjunctive pronouns ; **moi, lui** (in third sentence), **eux**, are disjunctive. See Syntax, §§ 43—46.

68. **DECLENSION OF CONJUNCTIVES.** Conjunctive personal pronouns are declined as follows :—

Nominative.	Dative.	Accusative.
je, I.	**me**, to me.	**me**, me.
tu, thou.	**te**, to thee.	**te**, thee.
il, he, **it**.	**lui**, to him.	**le**, him, **it**.
elle, she, **it**.	**lui**, to her.	**la**, her, **it**.
nous, we.	**nous**, to us.	**nous**, us.
vous, ye *or* you.	**vous**, to you.	**vous**, you.
ils, **elles**, } they.	**leur**, to them.	**les**, them.

en, *of him, of her, of it, of them*, is used before a verb as the genitive of **il, elle, ils, elles.**

y, *to it, to them*, is used as the dative of **il, elle, ils, elles,** when they refer to things (and occasionally when they refer to persons) ; **y** also means *there.*

It is translated by **il**, or **elle**, according as the noun to which *it* refers is masculine or feminine.

69. **REFLEXIVE.** With a certain class of verbs, called reflexive verbs, the object of which is the same as the subject, pronouns meaning *myself, himself*, &c., are used. Except in the third person, these pronouns (called reflexive pronouns) are the same as the personal pronouns. They are not used in the nominative.

me, to myself, myself.	**nous**, to ourselves, ourselves.
te, to thyself, thyself.	**vous**, to yourselves, yourselves.
se, to himself, himself.	**se**, to themselves, themselves.
to herself, herself.	
to itself, itself.	

je me *loue*, I praise myself.
tu te *loues*, thou praisest thyself.
elle se (dative) *plaît*, she pleases herself, and so on.

70. **DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL.** The disjunctive personal pronouns are uninflected. Like nouns they make their genitive by prefixing **de**, their dative by prefixing **à**, as—

il parle **d'eux**, he speaks of them.
venez **à moi**, come to me.

They are—

moi, I, me.	**nous**, we, us.	
toi, thou, thee.	**vous**, ye *or* you, you.	
lui, he, him.	**eux**,	} they, them.
elle, she, her.	**elles**,	

71. **DISJUNCTIVE REFLEXIVE.** The Disjunctive personal pronouns are also used as reflexive pronouns, strengthened if necessary, by **même**, plural **mêmes**, as—

je pense à **moi** (-**même**), of myself.
ils pensent à **eux** (-**mêmes**), of themselves.

72. **POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.** The possessive *adjectives* are—

Masc.	Fem.	Plur.
mon,	**ma**,	**mes**, my.
ton,	**ta**,	**tes**, thy.
son,	**sa**,	**ses**, his, her, *or* its.
notre,	**notre**,	**nos**, our.
votre,	**votre**,	**vos**, your.
leur,	**leur**,	**leurs**, their.

Obs. 1. **Leur** does not change in the feminine.

Obs. 2. If the next word begins with a vowel or *h* mute, **mon** is used instead of **ma**, **ton** instead of **ta**, **son** instead of **sa**.

Thus— **son humilité**, not *sa humilité*.
ton aimable sœur, not *ta aimable sœur*.

but **sa haine**, because the *h* in **haine** is not mute. In old French the *a* was elided. We have a survival of this in the phrase *ma mie*, properly *m'amie*, my dear.

Obs. 3. Remember that the *same possessive adjective* means *his* and *her*, and that its gender depends only on the noun it qualifies, as—

son livre, *his book* or *her book*.
sa sœur, *his sister* or *her sister*.

73. **POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.** Possessive *pronouns* take the place of nouns, and agree in gender and number with the nouns for which they stand, *sa sœur et les miennes*. Here *les miennes* stands for *mes sœurs*, a feminine plural noun. They are—

Singular.	Plural.
Masc. le mien.	les miens, mine.
Fem. la mienne.	les miennes.
Masc. le tien.	les tiens, thine.
Fem. la tienne.	les tiennes.
Masc. le sien.	les siens, his, hers, *or* its.
Fem. la sienne.	les siennes.
Masc. le nôtre.	les nôtres, ours.
Fem. la nôtre.	les nôtres.
Masc. le vôtre.	les vôtres, yours.
Fem. la vôtre.	les vôtres.
Masc. le leur.	les leurs, theirs.
Fem. la leur.	les leurs.

Obs. 1. Remember that in **le nôtre, le vôtre,** the *o* is pronounced nearly as in the English word *note;* in **notre, votre,** almost like *o* in *not.*

Obs. 2. Also that the plural of *le nôtre, le vôtre,* is **les nôtres, les vôtres,** not *les nos, les vos.*

74. **DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.** The chief demonstrative *adjective* in French is—

Mas. ce (cet), Fem. cette, Plural ces, this *or* that.

Before a vowel or *h* mute **cet** is used instead of **ce** as the masculine form, as **cet homme, cet oiseau.**

If we wish to distinguish *this* and *that* very clearly (as is done in vulgar English by saying *this here, that 'ere*), we must add **ci** or **là** to the noun. It is strictly grammatical and refined to do so in French. (App. VI.)

ce château-ci, this castle, this here castle.

cette maison-là, that house yonder, that 'ere house.

Besides **ce,** there are two demonstrative adjectives, **tel,** *such*, **le même,** *the same.*

Singular.	Plural.
Masc. tel,	tels.
Fem. telle,	telles.[1]
Masc. le même,	les mêmes.
Fem. la même,	les mêmes.

[1] *Tel,* adjective, is usually preceded in the singular by *un,* in the plural by *de,* representing the so-called partitive article.

75. **DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.** The demonstrative *pronouns* which take the place of nouns are—

I. ce indeclinable neuter, *it*, (often rendered in English by *he*, *she*, *they*) ; *that* (before a relative).

C'*est moi*, it is I ; *est*-ce *vous*, is it you ?

Qui sont les dames que voici ? Ce *sont mes sœurs*, Who are these ladies I see here ? They are my sisters.

Tout ce *qui brille n'est pas or*, all that which glitters is not gold (all is not gold that glitters).

II. ceci, *this*, cela, *that*, indeclinable neuter (in conversation cela is often contracted into ça).

Ceci *me plaît*, this pleases me.

Pensez à cela, think of that.

Fais ceci, *ne fais pas* cela ! Do this, don't do that !

III. celui, *he*, *she*, *that* (before a relative or *de*).

Singular.	Plural.
Masc. celui,	ceux.
Fem. celle,	celles.

Les habitants de la terre et ceux *de l'air*, the inhabitants of the earth and those of the air.

Celle *qui a fait ceci a bien agi*, she who did this acted well.

Cet ouvrage est celui *d'un habile homme*, this work is that of a clever man.

IV. celui-ci, *this one*, *the latter* ; celui-là, *that one*, *the former*.

Masc. celui-ci,	ceux-ci.
Fem. celle-ci,	celles-ci.
Masc. celui-là,	ceux-là.
Fem. celle-là,	celles-là.

Corneille *nous assujettit à ses caractères et à ses idées*, Racine *se conforme aux nôtres.* Celui-là *peint les hommes comme ils devraient être ;* celui-ci *les peint tels qu'ils sont.* Corneille makes us bow before his characters and ideas, Racine adapts himself to ours. The former paints men as they ought to be, the latter paints them as they are.

V. **un tel**, *such a one.*

un tel,	**de tels.**
une telle,	**de telles.**

VI. **le même**, *the same*, declined as above.

76. **RELATIVE PRONOUNS—DECLENSION OF *QUI, LEQUEL.*** I. **qui**, *who, which* (both numbers alike), is declined differently according as it refers to—

	(1.) Persons.	(2.) Animals or Things.
N.	**qui.**	**qui.**
G.	**dont** or **de qui.**	**dont** (not *de qui*) or **duquel**, &c.
D.	**à qui.**	[borrows from *lequel.*]
A.	**que** (with verb).	**que** (with verb).
	qui (with preposition).	[*lequel* with preposition.]

The *e* of **que** is elided before a vowel or *h* mute, as—

Les livres **qu'il** *a lus.*

II. **lequel**, *who, which.*

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
N. & A.	lequel,	laquelle.	lesquels,	lesquelles.
G.	duquel,	de laquelle.	desquels,	desquelles.
D.	auquel,	à laquelle.	auxquels,	auxquelles.

77. **EXAMPLES OF *QUI, LEQUEL.*** The following are examples of the use of **qui**, &c. :—

L'homme **qui** *parle*, the man who speaks.

Les maux **qui** *m'accablent*, the misfortunes which overwhelm me.

Les maux **dont** *il se plaint*, the evils of which he complains.

Le prince sur la protection **de qui** (or **duquel**) *vous comptez*, the prince on whose protection you rely.

La tempête **dont** *la violence nous a étonnés*, the storm, the violence of which astonished us.

La tempête à la violence **de laquelle** *nous avons été exposés*, the storm to the violence of which we were exposed.

Les services **qu'***il a rendus*, the services he rendered.

Les services par **lesquels** *il a gagné mon respect*, the services by which he has gained my respect.

Les hommes avec **qui** *j'ai voyagé*, the men with whom I travelled.

78. *CE QUI.* The antecedent and relative combined, to mean *that which, what*, are declined thus—

Nom. **ce qui**, that, which, *what.*
Gen. **ce dont**, that of which, *of what.*
Dat. **ce à quoi**, that to which, *to what*
Acc. **ce que**, that which, *what.*

Thus, *what*, when not interrogative, is **ce qui**, or **ce que.**

Ecoutez **ce que** *je dis*, listen to what I say.
C'est là **ce dont** *je me plains*, that's what I complain of.

79. **INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE.** The interrogative *adjective* is **quel**, *which? what?*

	Singular.	Plural.
Masc.	**quel.**	**quels.**
Fem.	**quelle,**	**quelles.**

Quelles *mains ont planté cet arbre?* What hands planted this tree?

Quels *furent mes chagrins!* What were my sorrows!

80. **INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.** The interrogative *pronouns* are—

I. **qui**, *who?* of persons; **que**, *what?* of things (in both numbers). A periphrastic form **qu'est-ce qui**, &c., is often preferred.

	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	**qui (qui est-ce qui),**	**(qu'est-ce qui).**
Gen.	**de qui,**	**de quoi.**
Dat.	**à qui,**	**à quoi.**
Acc.	**qui (qui est-ce que),**	**que (qu'est-ce que).**

Notice that when **qui** is a relative pronoun, its accusative is **que**; when it is an interrogative pronoun, its accusative is **qui.** *What* used as the complement of the verb *to be* may be rendered by **que** or **quel.**

Que or **quel** *sera mon destin?* What will my fate be?

II. **lequel**, *which?* (of several persons or things) is declined like the relative **lequel** above.

Laquelle *de ces fleurs préférez-vous?* Which of these flowers do you prefer?

III. **quoi**, *what?* is chiefly used with prepositions. It is used as nominative or accusative (with a verb) in a few phrases (Syntax, § 99). *Ce qui*, *ce que* are also dependent interrogatives.

81. **DISTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.** Distributive adjective **chaque**, *each*, *every*. No plural.

Distributive pronoun, **chacun**, fem. **chacune**, *each one*, *every one*. No plural.

Chaque *homme*, each man; **chacun** *de ces hommes*, each of these men.

Remember *never* to use **chacun** as an adjective.

82. **INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.**—**On** (conjunctive pronoun), **soi** (disjunctive pronoun).

On is used only as the subject or nominative of the sentence. It means *one*, *people*, like the German *man*.

Soi is used *after prepositions* to take the place of a *reflexive* pronoun in sentences of which **on** or some other indefinite pronoun is the subject, *occasionally* when a noun is the subject.

Chacun *pense à* **soi**, each one thinks of himself.

Aucun *n'est maître que chez* **soi**, no one is master but at his own house.

Obs. **L'on** is very often used for **on** after *et*, *si*, *où*, *quoi*, *qui*, *que*, and at the beginning of a sentence. Also after words ending in *i*, *é*, especially in poetry.

83. *QUELQUE*, *QUELQU'UN*. **Quelque** (adjective), *some*, *a few*; **quelqu'un** (pronoun), *some one*; **quelque chose** (pronoun), *something*.

	Singular.	Plural.
Masc. & Fem.	**quelque**,	**quelques**.
Masc.	**quelqu'un**,	**quelques-uns**.
Fem.	**quelqu'une**,	**quelques-unes**.

84. **DISTINCTION OF** *QUELQUE*, *QUEL . . QUE*, &c. Distinguish carefully the following cases.

I. Besides the meaning *some*, **quelque** is also used with nouns at the beginning of a sentence, meaning *whatever*. It is then declined as when it means *some*, and is followed by **que** later in the sentence, as—

Quelques *fautes* **que** *vous ayez commises*, whatever faults you (may) have committed.[1]

II. **Quelque** (indeclinable adverb) means *however*.

Quelque *grands* **que** *soient vos défauts*, however great your failings may be *or* are.

III. Lastly, **quel** followed by **que** is often used as a *predicate*, and is then declined—

Singular.	Plural.
Masc. **quel que,**	**quels que.**
Fem. **quelle que,**	**quelles que.**

It means *whatever*, as—

Quelles que *soient vos fautes*, whatever your faults may be (are).

Quelque chose is masculine, though **chose** is feminine; it is used with **de**, as—**quelque chose de bon**, something good.

85. **NEGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.** **Personne**, *no one;* **rien**, *nothing* (pronouns).

aucun, pas un, nul,[2] *no, not any* (adjectives).

Singular.	Plural.
Masc. **aucun,**	**aucuns.**
Fem. **aucune,**	**aucunes.**
Masc. **pas un,** / Fem. **pas une,**	None.
Masc. **nul,**	**nuls.**
Fem. **nulle,**	**nulles.**

None of these words are negative in themselves; they are made so by the word **ne**, which is joined to the verb of the sentence in which they occur.[2] But beware of adding **ne** when there is no verb.

86. *TOUT.* **Tout**, *all, any, every* (adjective).

Masc. **tout,**	**tous.**
Fem. **toute,**	**toutes les.**

[1] Notice **quelques grandes fautes** *que vous ayez commises*, whatever great faults.

[2] Both *aucun* and *nul* are also sometimes used without nouns, as pronouns properly so called. *Nul* should by derivation be negative in itself, but takes *ne* like other words of its class.

Tout le, *all the, all, the whole of* (adjective).

Masc.	**tout le,**	**tous les.**
Fem.	**toute la,**	**toutes les.**

Tout, indeclinable, *everything, anything* (pronoun).

Tout le monde, *every one, anyone* (*quivis*).

Tous deux, tous les deux, *both,* (also expressed by **l'un et l'autre**) (adjective or pronoun).

87. *QUELCONQUE, QUICONQUE.* **Quelconque,** plural **quelconques,** of both genders, *some or other* (in negative sentences, *any whatever*), follows the noun it qualifies, as—

Une idée **quelconque,** some idea or other, any idea whatever.

Quiconque (pronoun indeclinable), means *whoever.*

88. *AUTRE.* **Autre,** plural **autres,** declined with either article, used both as adjective and pronoun.

Autrui, indeclinable, *others,* not used in nominative.

Tout autre (feminine **toute autre**) means *any other.*

89. *PLUSIEURS.* **Plusieurs,** *several,* masc. and fem. Remember that it has no special form for the feminine.

90. **RECIPROCAL PRONOUN. L'un l'autre,** *one another* (which is really *one...another*).

N. & A.	l'un (l'une) l'autre,	les uns (unes) les autres.
G.	l'un (l'une) de l'autre,	les uns (unes) des autres.
D.	l'un (l'une) à l'autre,	les uns (unes) aux autres.

There is no *conjunctive* reciprocal pronoun in French, but the reflexive pronoun is often used in a reciprocal sense, either with or without **l'un l'autre.**

Ils **se** *détestent,* (or *ils* **se** *détestent* **l'un l'autre,**) they detest each other.

Ces filles **se** *ressemblent,* (or *ces filles* **se** *ressemblent* **l'une à l'autre,**) these girls are like each other.

Ces enfants sont jaloux **l'un de l'autre,** these children are jealous of each other.

Notice **l'un et l'autre,** *both;* **l'un ou l'autre,** *either;* **ni l'un ni l'autre,** *neither.*

90*a*. **PARSING OF SOME PRONOUNS, &c.** The following specimens may be useful.

me, te	(1) pers. pron. conj.; acc. case	*me, thee.*
	(2) pers. pron. conj.; dat. case	*to me, to thee.*
	(3) refl. pron. conj.; acc. case	*myself, thyself.*
	(4) refl. pron. conj.; dat. case	*to myself, to thyself.*
lui	(1) pers. pron. conj.; dat. case, m. and f.	*to him, to her.*
	(2) pers. pron. disj.; m. only	*he, him, it.*
	(3) refl. pron. disj.; m. only	*himself, itself.*
soi	refl. and indef. pron.	*oneself, himself, itself.*
leur	(1) pers. pron. conj.; dat. case	*to them.*
	(2) poss. adj.	*their.*
en	pers. pron. conj.; gen. case (properly adverb *thence*)	*of* or *from him, her, it, them.*
y	pers. pron. conj.; dat. case (neuter), (properly adv. *there*)	*to it, to them, in it, in them.*
qui	(1) relat. pron.; nom. or obj. of prep.	*who, which, whom.*
	(2) interrog. pron.; nom. or acc.	*who? whom?*
que	(1) relat. pron.; obj. of verb	*whom, which.*
	(2) interrog. pron.; obj. or complement	*what?*
dont	relat. pron.; gen. case (properly adverb *whence*)	*of* or *from whom, of* or *from which.*
lequel	(1) relat. pron.	*who, whom, which.*
	(2) interrog. pron.	*which?*
chaque	distributive adj.	*each.*
chacun	distributive pron.	*each, each one.*
quelque	(1) indef. adj.	*some, a few; whatever* (with *que*), *any* (after *if*).
	(2) adverb (with *que*)	*however.*
quelqu'un	indef. pron.	*some one; any one* (after *if*).

90*b*. RENDERING OF SOME ENGLISH PRONOUNS, &c.

Any	(1) in affirmative sentence (*quivis*)	**tout.**
	(2) in negative sentence (*quisquam, ullus*)	**aucun, nul.**
	(3) in interrogative or hypothetical sentence (*quis*)	**quelque.**
any one	(1) in affirmative sentence	**tout le monde.**
	(2) in negative sentence	**personne.**
	(3) in interrogative or hypothetical sentence	**quelqu'un.**
anything	(1) in affirmative sentence	**tout.**
	(2) in negative sentence	**rien.**
	(3) in interrogative or hypothetical sentence	**quelque chose.**
what	(1) interrog. pron. (with prep.)	**quoi ?**
	(as subject)	**qu'est-ce qui ?**
	(as obj. or complement)	**que ?**
		qu'est-ce que ?
	(2) interrogative adjective	**quel ?**
	(3) antecedent and relative	**ce qui, ce que.**
whatever	(1) pronoun in substantival sentence	**tout ce qui.**
		tout ce que.
	(2) pronoun in adverbial sentence	**quoi que.**
		quelque chose que.
	(3) adjective, epithet	**quelque...que.**
	(4) adjective, predicate	**quel...que.**
another	(1) a different one	**un autre.**
	(2) an additional one	**encore un.**
myself	(1) object of verb	**me.**
	(2) object of preposition	**moi, moi-même**
	(3) in apposition to *I*	**moi-même.**
himself	(1) object of verb	**se.**
	(2) object of preposition	**lui, lui-même.**
	sometimes	**soi, soi-même.**
	(3) in apposition to *he*	**lui-même.**

IX.—Verbs—Introductory.

91. **MOODS.** A French verb has, like a Latin verb, indicative, imperative, subjunctive, and infinitive moods.

It has also a fifth mood, the conditional.

92. **INDICATIVE.** The indicative mood (*Indicatif*) has four simple tenses—

Present (*Présent*),	**je parle**, I speak, I am speaking.
Imperfect (*Imparfait*),	**je parlais**, I was speaking.
Past[1] Definite (*Passé défini*),	**je parlai**, I spoke.
Future (*Futur simple*),	**je parlerai**, I shall speak.

and four compound tenses corresponding to them—

Past[1] Indefinite (*Passé indéfini*),	**j'ai parlé**, I spoke, I have spoken.
Pluperfect (*Plus-que-parfait*),	**j'avais parlé**, I had spoken.
Past[1] Anterior (*Passé antérieur*),	**j'eus parlé**, I had spoken.
Future Perfect (*Futur antérieur*),	**j'aurai parlé**, I shall have spoken.

93. **CONDITIONAL.** The conditional mood (*Conditionnel*) has two tenses—

Present (*Présent*),	**je parlerais**, I should speak.
Past (*Passé*),	**j'aurais parlé** / **j'eusse parlé** } I should have spoken.

94. **IMPERATIVE.** The imperative mood (*Impératif*) has two tenses, of which only the present is generally used—

Present (*Présent*),	**parle**! speak!
Past (*Passé*),	**aie parlé**! have spoken!

95. **SUBJUNCTIVE.** The subjunctive mood (*Subjonctif*) has two simple tenses—

Present (*Présent*),	**que je parle**, that I speak, *or* may speak.[2]
Imperfect (*Imparfait*),	**que je parlasse**, that I spoke, *or* might speak.

[1] Or Preterite Definite, &c.

[2] These are not the only translations of the subjunctive.

and two compound tenses—

Perfect (*Parfait*),	**que j'aie parlé**, that I have *or* [may have spoken.
Pluperfect (*Plus-que-parfait*),	**que j'eusse parlé**, that I had *or* [might have spoken.

96. **INFINITIVE.** The infinitive mood (*Infinitif*) has a present and a past tense—

Present,	**parler**,	to speak.
Past,	**avoir parlé**,	to have spoken.

97. **PARTICIPLES.** There are two simple participles (*Participes*)—

Present, Active,	**parlant**, speaking.
Past (or Passive) Participle,	**parlé**, spoken.

and a compound participle—

ayant parlé, having spoken.

98. **VOICES.** There are two voices in French, the active and the passive. The latter is formed entirely by using the auxiliary verb **être**, *to be*.

99. **COMPOUND TENSES.** The compound tenses of the active voice are mostly formed with the auxiliary **avoir**, *to have*. There is, however, a group of verbs which take instead the auxiliary **être**.

100. **CONJUGATIONS.** There are four conjugations in French, distinguished by the termination of the infinitive mood—

The *first*	conjugation ends in	-er,	as **parler**, to speak.
The *second*	,, ,,	-ir,	as **finir**, to finish.
			dormir, to sleep.
The *third*	,, ,,	-oir,	as **recevoir**, to receive.
The *fourth*	,, ,,	-re,	as **vendre**, to sell.
			craindre, to fear.
			connaître, to know.
			instruire, to instruct.

101. **PRIMITIVE TENSES.** There are five so-called primitive tenses, from which, or rather from the stems of which, the others are formed by rules to be given hereafter. The following table gives them for the four regular conjugations :—

	Pres. Inf.	*Pres. Part.*	*Past Part.*	*Pres. Ind.*	*Past Def.*
1.	parler,	parlant,	parlé,	parle,	parlai.
2.	finir,	finissant,	fini,	finis,	finis.
	dormir,	dormant,	dormi,	dors,	dormis.
3.	recevoir,	recevant,	reçu,	reçois,	reçus.
4.	vendre,	vendant,	vendu,	vends,	vendis.
	plaindre,	plaignant,	plaint,	plains,	plaignis.
	connaître,	connaissant,	connu,	connais,	connus.
	instruire,	instruisant,	instruit,	instruis,	instruisis.

Of course, these primitive tenses are only modifications of the root of the verb, obscured by numerous changes, and therefore not so easily recognisable as in Latin. The root more or less altered gives the **stems** of the primitive tenses, from which the others are said to be formed. The two important stems are those of the present participle (*imperfect stem*) and of the past definite (*perfect stem*). The Latin supine stem remains in the French past participle. They are as follows :—

parler,	PARL-	PARLA-	vendre,	VEND-	VENDI-
finir,	FIN-ISS-	FINI-	plaindre,	PLAIGN-	PLAIGNI-
dormir,	DORM-	DORMI-	connaître,	CONNAISS-	CONNU-
recevoir,	RECEV-	REÇU-	instruire,	INSTRUIS-	INSTRUISI-

102. **CONJUGATION COMPARED WITH LATIN.** These conjugations answer pretty nearly to the Latin conjugations, viz., the first French to the first Latin (*a*-verbs), the second French to the fourth Latin (*ī*-verbs), and to certain inceptives, the fourth French to the third Latin (consonant and *ĭ*-verbs), while the third French takes in verbs from the second Latin (*ē*-verbs), as well as from the third.

The first conjugation and the second with increased stem **iss** are still living conjugations, *i.e.*, new verbs are from time to time formed on their model. The other conjugations are not added to, and may be called dead or at least archaic.

X.—Conjugation of Auxiliaries.

103. AVOIR, *to have.*

PRIMITIVE TENSES.

Avoir—ayant—eu—j'ai—j'eus.

Indicative Mood.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
Present.		Past (or Preterite) Indefinite.	
*J'*ai,	I have.	*J'*ai eu,	I have had, *or* I had, &c.
tu as,	thou hast.	*tu as eu,*	
il or *elle* a,[1]	he, *or* she has.	*il a eu,*	
nous avons,[2]	we have.	*nous avons eu,*	
vous avez,	you have.	*vous avez eu,*	
ils or *elles* ont,[1]	they have.	*ils ont eu,*	
Imperfect.		Pluperfect.	
*J'*avais,	I had.	*J'*avais eu,	I had had, &c.
tu avais,	thou hadst.	*tu avais eu,*	
il avait,	he had.	*il avait eu,*	
nous avions,	we had.	*nous avions eu,*	
vous aviez,	you had.	*vous aviez eu,*	
ils avaient,	they had.	*ils avaient eu,*	
Past (or Preterite) Definite.		Past (or Preterite) Anterior.	
*J'*eus,	I had.	*J'*eus eu,	I had had, &c.
tu eus,	thou hadst.	*tu eus eu,*	
il eut,	he had.	*il eut eu,*	
nous eûmes,	we had.	*nous eûmes eu,*	
vous eûtes,	you had.	*vous eûtes eu,*	
ils eurent,	they had.	*ils eurent eu,*	
Future Simple.		Future Perfect.	
*J'*aurai,	I shall have.	*J'*aurai eu,	I shall have had, &c.
tu auras,	thou wilt have.	*tu auras eu,*	
il aura,	he will have.	*il aura eu,*	
nous aurons,	we shall have.	*nous aurons eu,*	
vous aurez,	you will have.	*vous aurez eu,*	
ils auront,	they will have.	*ils auront eu,*	

[1] Insert "or *elle*" "or *elles*" in all tenses.

[2] The loop ⌣ in *nous avons eu*, &c., denotes that the final letter of the first word must be carried on to the next word; *s* must then be pronounced like *z*, as *nou zavon zeu*. *Eu* in *avoir* is pronounced as *u*.

Conditional Mood.

Present.		Past.	
*J'*aurais,	I should have.	*J'*aurais eu,	I should have had, &c.
tu aurais,	thou wouldst have.	*tu aurais eu*,	
il aurait,	he would have.	*il aurait eu*,	
nous aurions,	we should have.	*nous aurions eu*,	
vous auriez,	you would have.	*vous auriez eu*,	
ils auraient,	they would have.	*ils auraient eu*,	

or *j'*eusse eu, &c., as plup. subj.

Subjunctive Mood.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
Present.		Perfect.	
*Que j'*aie,	That I have, *or* may have, &c.	*Que j'*aie eu,	That I have had, *or* may have had, &c.
que tu aies,		*que tu aies eu*,	
*qu'*il ait,		*qu'il ait eu*,	
que nous ayons,		*que nous ayons eu*,	
que vous ayez,		*que vous ayez eu*,	
qu'ils aient,		*qu'ils aient eu*,	
Imperfect.		Pluperfect.	
*Que j'*eusse,	That I had, *or* might have, &c.	*Que j'*eusse eu,	That I had had, *or* might have had, &c.
que tu eusses,		*que tu eusses eu*,	
qu'il eût,		*qu'il eût eu*,	
que nous eussions,		*que nous eussions eu*,	
que vous eussiez,		*que vous eussiez eu*,	
qu'ils eussent,		*qu'ils eussent eu*,	

Imperative Mood.

Aie,	Have! (thou).
qu'il ait,	let him have.
ayons,	let us have.
ayez,	have! (ye).
qu'ils aient,	let them have.

Infinitive Mood.

avoir, to have. avoir eu, to have had.

Participles.

ayant, having. eu, had.

ayant eu, having had.

104. ÊTRE, *to be.*

PRIMITIVE TENSES.

Être—étant—été—je suis—je fus.

Indicative Mood.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
Present.		Past (or Preterite) Indefinite.	
Je **suis,**	I am.	*J'***ai été,**	I have been, *or* I was, &c.
tu **es,**	thou art.	*tu as été,*	
il or *elle* **est,**	he, *or* she is.	*il a été,*	
nous **sommes,**	we are.	*nous avons été,*	
vous **êtes,**	you are.	*vous avez été,*	
ils or *elles* **sont,**	they are.	*ils ont été,*	
Imperfect.		Pluperfect.	
*J'***étais,**	I was.	*J'***avais été,**	I had been, &c.
tu **étais,**	thou wast.	*tu avais été,*	
il **était,**	he was.	*il avait été,*	
nous **étions,**	we were.	*nous avions été,*	
vous **étiez,**	you were.	*vous aviez été,*	
ils **étaient,**	they were.	*ils avaient été,*	
Past (or Preterite) Definite.		Past (or Preterite) Anterior.	
Je **fus,**	I was.	*J'***eus été,**	I had been, &c.
tu **fus,**	thou wast.	*tu eus été,*	
il **fut,**	he was.	*il eut été,*	
nous **fûmes,**	we were.	*nous eûmes été,*	
vous **fûtes,**	you were.	*vous eûtes été,*	
ils **furent,**	they were.	*ils eurent été,*	
Future Simple.		Future Perfect.	
Je **serai,**	I shall be.	*J'***aurai été,**	I shall have been, &c.
tu **seras,**	thou wilt be.	*tu auras été,*	
il **sera,**	he will be.	*il aura été,*	
nous **serons,**	we shall be.	*nous aurons été,*	
vous **serez,**	you will be.	*vous aurez été,*	
ils **seront,**	they will be.	*ils auront été,*	

Conditional Mood.

Present.		Past.	
Je **serais,**	I should be.	*J'*aurais été,	I should have been, &c.
tu **serais,**	thou wouldst be.	*tu aurais été,*	
il **serait,**	he would be.	*il aurait été,*	
nous **serions,**	we should be.	*nous aurions été,*	
vous **seriez,**	you would be.	*vous auriez été,*	
ils **seraient,**	they would be.	*ils auraient été,*	

or *j'*eusse été, &c., as plup. subj.

Subjunctive Mood.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
Present.		Perfect.	
Que je **sois,**	That I am, *or* may be, &c.	*Que* j'aie été,	That I have, *or* may have been, &c.
que tu **sois,**		*que tu aies été,*	
qu'il **soit,**		*qu'il ait été,*	
que nous **soyons,**		*que nous ayons été,*	
que vous **soyez,**		*que vous ayez été,*	
qu'ils **soient,**		*qu'ils aient été,*	
Imperfect.		Pluperfect.	
Que je **fusse,**	That I was, *or* might be, &c.	*Que* j'eusse été,	That I had, *or* might have been, &c.
que tu **fusses,**		*que tu eusses été,*	
qu'il **fût,**		*qu'il eût été,*	
que nous **fussions,**		*que nous eussions été,*	
que vous **fussiez,**		*que vous eussiez été,*	
qu'ils **fussent,**		*qu'ils eussent été,*	

Imperative Mood.

Sois,	Be! (thou).
*qu'*il **soit,**	let him be.
soyons,	let us be.
soyez,	be! (you).
*qu'*ils **soient,**	let them be.

Infinitive Mood.

être, to be. **avoir été,** to have been.

Participles.

étant, being. **été,** been.

ayant été, having been.

XI.—Regular Conjugations.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PARLER, *to speak.*

Parler—parlant—parlé—je parle—je parlai.

IMPERFECT STEM: **PARL—**; PERFECT STEM: **PARLA—.**

Indicative Mood.

SIMPLE TENSES.			COMPOUND TENSES.	
Present.			Past (or Pret.) Indefinite[1]	
Je **parle,**	I speak.	I am speaking, &c.	*J'*ai parlé,	I spoke, *or* I have spoken, &c.
tu **parles,**	thou speakest.		*tu as parlé,*	
il **parle,**	he speaks.		*il a parlé,*	
nous **parlons,**	we speak.		*nous avons parlé,*	
vous **parlez,**	you speak.		*vous avez parlé,*	
ils or *elles* **parlent,**	they speak.		*ils ont parlé,*	
Imperfect.			Pluperfect.	
Je **parlais,**	I was speaking.		*J'*avais parlé,	I had spoken, &c.
tu **parlais,**	thou wast speaking.		*tu avais parlé,*	
il **parlait,**	he was speaking.		*il avait parlé,*	
nous **parlions,**	we were speaking.		*nous avions parlé,*	
vous **parliez,**	you were speaking.		*vous aviez parlé,*	
ils **parlaient,**	they were speaking.		*ils avaient parlé,*	
Past (*or* Preterite) Definite.			Past (or Pret.) Anterior.	
Je **parlai,**	I spoke.		*J'*eus parlé,	I had spoken, &c.
tu **parlas,**	thou spokest.		*tu eus parlé,*	
il **parla,**	he spoke.		*il eut parlé,*	
nous **parlâmes,**	we spoke.		*nous eûmes parlé,*	
vous **parlâtes,**	you spoke.		*vous eûtes parlé,*	
ils **parlèrent,**	they spoke.		*ils eurent parlé,*	
Future Simple.			Future Perfect.	
Je **parlerai,**	I shall speak.		*J'*aurai parlé,	I shall have spoken, &c.
tu **parleras,**	thou wilt speak.		*tu auras parlé,*	
il **parlera,**	he will speak.		*il aura parlé,*	
nous **parlerons,**	we shall speak.		*nous aurons parlé,*	
vous **parlerez,**	you will speak.		*vous aurez parlé,*	
ils **parleront,**	they will speak.		*ils auront parlé,*	

[1] If the participle begins with a vowel, *J'ai aimé, tu as aimé, il a aimé, nous avons aimé, vous avez aimé, ils ont aimé.*

Conditional Mood.

Present.		Past.	
Je **parlerais,**	I should speak.	*J'***aurais parlé,**	I should have spoken, &c.
tu **parlerais,**	thou wouldst speak.	*tu aurais parlé,*	
il **parlerait,**	he would speak.	*il aurait parlé,*	
nous **parlerions,**	we should speak.	*nous aurions parlé,*	
vous **parleriez,**	you would speak.	*vous auriez parlé,*	
ils **parleraient.**	they would speak.	*ils auraient parlé,*	

or *j'***eusse parlé,** &c., as plup. subj.

Subjunctive Mood.

SIMPLE TENSES.		COMPOUND TENSES.	
Present.		Perfect.	
Que je **parle,**	That I speak, *or* may speak, &c	*Que j'***aie parlé,**	That I have, *or* may have spoken, &c.
que tu **parles,**		*que tu aies parlé,*	
qu'il **parle,**		*qu'il ait parlé,*	
que nous **parlions,**		*que nous ayons parlé,*	
que vous **parliez,**		*que vous ayez parlé,*	
qu'ils **parlent,**		*qu'ils aient parlé,*	
Imperfect.		Pluperfect.	
Que je **parlasse,**[1]	That I spoke, *or* might speak, &c.	*Que j'***eusse parlé,**	That I had, *or* might have spoken, &c.
que tu **parlasses,**		*que tu eusses parlé,*	
qu'il **parlât,**		*qu'il eût parlé,*	
que nous **parlassions,**		*que nous eussions parlé,*	
que vous **parlassiez,**		*que vous eussiez parlé,*	
qu'ils **parlassent,**		*qu'ils eussent parlé,*	

Imperative Mood.

		parlons,	let us speak !
parle,	speak ! (thou).	**parlez,**	speak ! (ye).
qu'il **parle,**	let him speak !	*qu'ils* **parlent,**	let them speak !

Infinitive Mood.

Present—**parler,**	to speak.
Past—**avoir parlé,**	to have spoken.

Participles.

parlant, speaking.	**ayant parlé,** having spoken.

[1] Be careful to pronounce the second *s* long in this tense.

106. SECOND CONJUGATION.—First Model.

FINIR, *to finish.*

Finir—finissant—fini—je finis—je finis.

Imperfect Stem : **FINISS—**; Perfect Stem : **FINI—.**

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je finis.	*Je* finissais.	*Je* finis.	*Je* finirai.
tu finis.	*tu* finissais.	*tu* finis.	*tu* finiras.
il finit.	*il* finissait.	*il* finit.	*il* finira.
nous finissons.	*nous* finissions.	*nous* finîmes.	*nous* finirons.
vous finissez.	*vous* finissiez.	*vous* finîtes.	*vous* finirez.
ils finissent.	*ils* finissaient.	*ils* finirent.	*ils* finiront.

Conditional Mood. Present.	*Imperative Mood.*
Je finirais.	
tu finirais.	Finis.
il finirait.	qu'il finisse.
nous finirions.	finissons.
vous finiriez.	finissez.
ils finiraient.	*qu'ils* finissent.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.
Que je finisse.	*Que je* finisse.
que tu finisses.	*que tu* finisses.
qu'il finisse.[1]	*qu'il* finît.[1]
que nous finissions.	*que nous* finissions.
que vous finissiez.	*que vous* finissiez.
qu'ils finissent.	*qu'ils* finissent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Indicative Mood.	*Conditional Mood.*
Past Indef., *j'ai* fini.	Past, *j'aurais* fini.
Pluperfect, *j'avais* fini.	*Subjunctive Mood.*
Past Ant., *j'eus* fini.	Perfect, *que* j'aie fini.
Fut. Perf., *j'aurai* fini.	Pluperf., *que* j'eusse fini.

Infinitive Mood.

Present, finir, Past, avoir fini.

Participles.

Present, finissant. Past, ayant fini.

[1] Notice the difference of these two persons.

107. SECOND CONJUGATION.—SECOND MODEL.

DORMIR, *to sleep.*

Dormir—dormant—dormi—je dors—je dormis.

IMPERFECT STEM: **DORM—**; PERFECT STEM: **DORMI—**.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past. Def.	Future.
Je dors.	*Je* dormais.	*Je* dormis.	*Je* dormirai.
tu dors.	*tu* dormais.	*tu* dormis.	*tu* dormiras.
il dort.	*il* dormait.	*il* dormit.	*il* dormira.
nous dormons.	*nous* dormions.	*nous* dormîmes	*nous* dormirons
vous dormez.	*vous* dormiez.	*vous* dormites.	*vous* dormirez.
ils dorment.	*ils* dormaient.	*ils* dormirent.	*ils* dormiront.

Conditional Mood.

Present.
Je dormirais.
tu dormirais.
il dormirait.
nous dormirions.
vous dormiriez.
ils dormiraient.

Imperative Mood.

Dors.
qu'il dorme.
dormons.
dormez.
qu'ils dorment.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.
Que je dorme.	*Que je* dormisse.
que tu dormes.	*que tu* dormisses.
qu'il dorme.	*qu'il* dormît.
que nous dormions.	*que nous* dormissions.
que vous dormiez.	*que vous* dormissiez.
qu'ils dorment.	*qu'ils* dormissent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Indicative Mood.
Past Indef., *j'ai* dormi.
Pluperfect, *j'avais* dormi.
Past Ant., *j'eus* dormi.
Fut. Perf., *j'aurai* dormi.

Conditional Mood.
Past, *j'aurais* dormi.

Subjunctive Mood.
Perfect, *que* j'aie dormi.
Pluperf., *que* j'eusse dormi.

Infinitive Mood.

Present, **dormir.** Past, **avoir dormi.**

Participles.

Present, **dormant.** Past, **ayant dormi.**

108. VERBS LIKE *FINIR.* All *regular* verbs of the second conjugation not mentioned below are conjugated like **finir.** Such are *fleurir*,[1] *agir*, *réussir*, *remplir*, *guérir*, *investir*, &c., which make *agissant*, *réussissant*, &c.

109. VERBS LIKE *DORMIR.* The following, perhaps the commonest verbs in **ir**, with their compounds, follow **dormir** :—

Infinitive.	Pres. Part.	Present Ind.		Pres. Subj.
sentir.	**sentant.**	**sens,**	**sentons.**	**sente.**
servir.	**servant.**	**sers,**	**servons.**	**serve.**
mentir.	**mentant.**	**mens,**	**mentons.**	**mente.**
partir.	**partant.**	**pars,**	**partons.**	**parte.**
se repentir.	**repentant.**	**repens,**	**repentons.**	**repente.**
sortir.	**sortant.**	**sors,**	**sortons.**	**sorte.**

But **asservir,** to enslave, from *serf* or Latin *servus*, **assortir,** to assort, from *sort*, (and its compound *réassortir*), **ressortir,**[2] to depend upon, from *ressort*, and **répartir,** to distribute, from *part*, are like **finir. Ressortir,** to stand out,[3] **repartir,** to start again, are compounds of *sortir*, *partir*, and are conjugated like them.

110. *OFFRIR.* The following are like **dormir,** except in the singular of the present indicative and imperative :—

offrir, souffrir, assaillir,
ouvrir, couvrir, tressaillir.

Present Indicative.	Imperative.
*j'***offre,** I offer.	**offre** ! offer ! (thou).
tu **offres,** thou offerest.	*qu'il* **offre,** let him offer.
il **offre,** he offers.	**offrons,** let us offer.
nous **offrons,** we offer, &c.	&c., &c.

Further—

offrir, souffrir,
ouvrir, couvrir,

make in the past participle **offert, souffert, ouvert, couvert.**

---

[1] Also borrows an imperfect and present participle from *florir*.

[2] e. g., *d'un tribunal.* [3] *Or*, go out again.

III. THIRD CONJUGATION

RECEVOIR, *to receive.*

Recevoir—recevant—reçu—je reçois—je reçus.

IMPERF. STEM: **RECEV— (REÇOIV—)**; PERF. STEM: **REÇU—.**

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je reçois.	*Je* recevais.	*Je* reçus.	*Je* recevrai.
tu reçois.	*tu* recevais.	*tu* reçus.	*tu* recevras.
il reçoit.	*il* recevait.	*il* reçut.	*il* recevra.
nous recevons.	*nous* recevions.	*nous* reçûmes.	*nous* recevrons.
vous recevez.	*vous* receviez.	*vous* reçûtes.	*vous* recevrez.
ils reçoivent.	*ils* recevaient.	*ils* reçurent.	*ils* recevront.

Conditional Mood.	*Imperative Mood.*
Present.	
Je recevrais.	
tu recevrais.	Reçois.
il recevrait.	*qu'il* reçoive.
nous recevrions.	recevons.
vous recevriez.	recevez.
ils recevraient.	*qu'ils* reçoivent.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.
Que je reçoive.	*Que je* reçusse.
que tu reçoives.	*que tu* reçusses.
qu'il reçoive.	*qu'il* reçût.
que nous recevions.	*que nous* reçussions.
que vous receviez.	*que vous* reçussiez.
qu'ils reçoivent.	*qu'ils* reçussent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Indicative Mood.	*Conditional Mood.*
Past Indef., j'ai reçu.	Past, *j'*aurais reçu.
Pluperfect, j'avais reçu.	*Subjunctive Mood.*
Past Ant., j'eus reçu.	Perfect, *que j'*aie reçu.
Fut. Perf., j'aurai reçu.	Pluperf., *que j'*eusse reçu.

Infinitive Mood.

Present, recevoir. Past, avoir reçu.

Participles.

Present, recevant. Past, ayant reçu.

N.B.—devoir, *to owe,* makes dû, due, in the Past Participle.

112. **FOURTH CONJUGATION.**—First Model.

VENDRE, *to sell.*

Vendre—vendant—vendu—je vends—je vendis.

Imperfect Stem: **VEND—**; Perfect Stem: **VENDI-**

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je vends.	*Je* vendais.	*Je* vendis.	*Je* vendrai.
tu vends.	*tu* vendais.	*tu* vendis.	*tu* vendras.
il vend.	*il* vendait.	*il* vendit.	*il* vendra.
nous vendons.	*nous* vendions.	*nous* vendîmes.	*nous* vendrons.
vous vendez.	*vous* vendiez.	*vous* vendîtes.	*vous* vendrez.
ils vendent.	*ils* vendaient.	*ils* vendirent.	*ils* vendront.

Conditional Mood.	*Imperative Mood.*
Present.	
Je vendrais.	
tu vendrais.	Vends.
il vendrait.	*qu'il* vende.
nous vendrions.	vendons.
vous vendriez.	vendez.
ils vendraient.	*qu'ils* vendent.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.
Que je vende.	*Que je* vendisse.
que tu vendes.	*que tu* vendisses.
qu'il vende.	*qu'il* vendît.
que nous vendions.	*que nous* vendissions.
que vous vendiez.	*que vous* vendissiez.
qu'ils vendent.	*qu'ils* vendissent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Indicative Mood.	*Conditional Mood.*
Past Indef., j'ai vendu.	Past, *j'*aurais vendu.
Pluperfect, j'avais vendu.	*Subjunctive Mood.*
Past Ant., j'eus vendu.	Perfect *que j'*aie vendu.
Fut. Perf., j'aurai vendu.	Pluperf., *que j'*eusse vendu.

Infinitive Mood.

Present, vendre. Past, avoir vendu.

Participles.

Present, vendant. Past, ayant vendu.

113. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Second Model.

CRAINDRE, *to fear.*

Craindre — craignant — craint — je crains — je craignis.

Imperfect Stem: CRAIGN—; Perfect Stem: CRAIGNI—.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je crains.	*Je* craignais.	*Je* craignis.	*Je* craindrai.
tu crains.	*tu* craignais.	*tu* craignis.	*tu* craindras.
il craint.	*il* craignait.	*il* craignit.	*il* craindra.
nous craignons.	*nous* craignions.	*nous* craignîmes.	*nous* craindrons.
vous craignez.	*vous* craigniez.	*vous* craignîtes.	*vous* craindrez.
ils craignent.	*ils* craignaient.	*ils* craignirent.	*ils* craindront.

Conditional Mood.

Present.

Je craindrais.
tu craindrais.
il craindrait.
nous craindrions.
vous craindriez.
ils craindraient.

Imperative Mood.

Crains.
qu'il craigne.
craignons.
craignez.
qu'ils craignent.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.
Que je craigne.	*Que je* craignisse.
que tu craignes.	*que tu* craignisses.
qu'il craigne.	*qu'il* craignît.
que nous craignions.	*que nous* craignissions.
que vous craigniez.	*que vous* craignissiez.
qu'ils craignent.	*qu'ils* craignissent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Indicative Mood.

Past Def., j'ai craint.
Pluperfect, j'avais craint.
Past Ant., j'eus craint.
Fut. Perf., j'aurai craint.

Conditional Mood.

Past, j'aurais craint.

Subjunctive Mood.

Perfect, que j'aie craint.
Pluperf., que j'eusse craint.

Infinitive Mood.

Present, craindre. Past, avoir craint.

Participles.

Present, craignant. Past, ayant craint.

114. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—THIRD MODEL.

CONNAÎTRE, *to know.*

Connaître—connaissant—connu—je connais—je connus.

IMPERFECT STEM: **CONNAISS—**; PERFECT STEM: **CONNU—.**

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
connais.	*Je* connaissais.	*Je* connus.	*Je* connaîtrai.
connais.	*tu* connaissais.	*tu* connus.	*tu* connaîtras.
connaît.[1]	*il* connaissait.	*il* connut.	*il* connaîtra.
us connaissons.	*nous* connaissions.	*nous* connûmes.	*nous* connaîtrons.
us connaissez.	*vous* connaissiez.	*vous* connûtes.	*vous* connaîtrez.
connaissent.	*ils* connaissaient.	*ils* connurent.	*ils* connaîtront.

Conditional Mood.

Present.

Je connaîtrais.
tu connaîtrais.
il connaîtrait.
nous connaîtrions.
vous connaîtriez.
ils connaîtraient.

Imperative Mood.

Connais.
qu'il connaisse.
connaissons.
connaissez.
qu'ils connaissent.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.
Que je connaisse.	*Que je* connusse.
que tu connaisses.	*que tu* connusses.
qu'il connaisse.	*qu'il* connût.
que nous connaissions.	*que nous* connussions.
que vous connaissiez.	*que vous* connussiez.
qu'ils connaissent.	*qu'ils* connussent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Indicative Mood.

Past Indef., j'ai connu.
Pluperfect, j'avais connu.
Past Ant., j'eus connu.
Fut. Perf., j'aurai connu.

Conditional Mood.

Past, j'aurais connu.

Subjunctive Mood.

Perf., que j'aie connu.
Pluperf., que j'eusse connu.

Infinitive Mood.

Present, connaître. Past, avoir connu.

Participles.

Present, connaissant. Past, ayant connu.

[1] Notice the circumflex—in old French *connoist.*

115. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Fourth Model.

INSTRUIRE, *to instruct.*

Instruire—instruisant—instruit—j'instruis—j'instruisis.

Imperfect Stem: **INSTRUIS—**; Perfect Stem: **INSTRUISI—.**

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	**Past Def.**	Future.
*j'*instruis.	*j'*instruisais.	*j'*instruisis.	*j'*instruirai.
tu instruis.	*tu* instruisais.	*tu* instruisis.	*tu* instruiras.
il instruit.	*il* instruisait.	*il* instruisit.	*il* instruira.
nous instruisons.	*nous* instruisions.	*nous* instruisîmes.	*nous* instruirons.
vous instruisez.	*vous* instruisiez.	*vous* instruisites.	*vous* instruirez.
ils instruisent.	*ils* instruisaient.	*ils* instruisirent.	*ils* instruiront.

Conditional Mood.	*Imperative Mood.*
Present.	
*j'*instruirais.	
tu instruirais.	Instruis.
il instruirait.	*qu'il* instruise.
nous instruirions.	instruisons.
vous instruiriez.	instruisez.
ils instruiraient.	*qu'ils* instruisent.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.
*Que j'*instruise.	*Que j'*instruisisse.
que tu instruises.	*que tu* instruisisses.
qu'il instruise.	*qu'il* instruisit.
que nous instruisions.	*que nous* instruisissions.
que vous instruisiez.	*que vous* instruisissiez.
qu'ils instruisent.	*qu'ils* instruisissent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Indicative Mood.	*Conditional Mood.*
Past Indef., j'ai instruit.	Past, *j'*aurais instruit.
Pluperf., j'avais instruit.	*Subjunctive Mood.*
Past Ant., j'eus instruit.	Perfect, *que j'*aie instruit.
Fut. Perf., j'aurai instruit.	Pluperf., *que j'*eusse instruit.

Infinitive Mood

Present, instruire. Past, avoir instruit.

Participles.

Present, instruisant. Past, ayant instruit.

116. NOTES ON FIRST MODEL. Conjugate like **vendre** all verbs ending **in endre**, except **prendre** and its compounds. Also **perdre, tordre,** and most verbs in **dre** not included under the second model.

Battre, *to beat*, and its compounds, are conjugated like **vendre**, except in the singular present indicative—

je **bats**, *tu* **bats**, *il* **bat**;

and the imperative—

bats, *qu'il* **batte**.

Rompre, *to break*, makes **rompt**[1] in the third person singular, present indicative. Its compounds follow it. **Mettre**, *to put*, follows **battre** in present indicative, but is irregular in the past part., and past def., **mis**.

117. NOTES ON SECOND MODEL. Conjugate like **craindre** verbs ending in **aindre, eindre, oindre**. Thus—

peindre, peignant, peint, je peins, je peignis;
joindre, joignant, joint, je joins, je joignis.

118. NOTES ON THIRD MODEL. Conjugate like **connaître** all verbs ending in **aître**, and the one verb in **oître, croître.**

Paître, *to graze*, and its compounds, are quite regular, except that the preterite definite of **paître** is not used, and the past participle is confined to falconry. But **repus, repu,** are common enough. **Naître** is irregular in the past participle and preterite definite, and of course in the imperfect subjunctive, **né, naquis, naquisse. Croître** takes a circumflex in those tenses, which are thus distinguished from the corresponding tenses of **croire**, to believe.

119. NOTES ON FOURTH MODEL. Conjugate like **instruire** all verbs ending **in uire**, that is to say, the verbs derived from compounds of the Latin *struere* and *ducere*, **cuire** from *coquĕre*, and **luire, nuire,** from *lucēre, nocēre*. **Luire** makes **lui; nuire, nui,** in the past participle; **luire** has no pret. def.; in other respects they follow **instruire.** Most other verbs ending in **ire**, as **lire,** happen to be like **instruire** in the present indicative and present participle with the tenses derived from them, but differ in other tenses.

---

[1] And, therefore, keeps nearer to the original Latin than any other verb in French.

XII.—Conjugation of CERTAIN IRREGULAR VERBS.

120. ALLER, *to go.*

STEMS: **ALL**— (**AILL**—), (**VA**—, **I**—), **ALLA**—.

Aller—allant—allé—je vais—j'allai.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je vais.	*J'*allais.	*J'*allai.	*J'*irai.
tu vas.	*tu* allais.	*tu* allas.	*tu* iras.
il va.	*il* allait.	*il* alla.	*il* ira.
nous allons.	*nous* allions.	*nous* allâmes.	*nous* irons.
vous allez.	*vous* alliez.	*vous* allâtes.	*vous* irez.
ils vont.	*ils* allaient.	*ils* allèrent.	*ils* iront.

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
*J'*irais.		*Que j'*aille.	*Que j'*allasse.
tu irais.	Va.[1]	*que tu* ailles.	*que tu* allasses.
il irait.	*qu'il* aille.	*qu'il* aille.	*qu'il* allât.
nous irions,	allons.	*que nous* allions.	*que nous* allassions
vous iriez.	allez.	*que vous* alliez.	*que vous* allassiez.
ils iraient.	*qu'ils* aillent.	*qu'ils* aillent.	*qu'ils* allassent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Je **suis allé** (e), &c. *Que je* **sois allé** (-e), &c.

Note that **aller** is conjugated with **être**, like **devenir**.

---

121. S'EN ALLER, *to go away.* SAME STEMS AS ALLER.

S'en aller—s'en allant—s'en allé—je m'en vais—je m'en allai.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je m'en vais.	*Je m'en* allais.	*Je m'en* allai.	*Je m'en* irai.
tu t'en vas.	*tu t'en* allais.	*tu t'en* allas.	*tu t'en* iras.
il s'en va.	*il s'en* allait.	*il s'en* alla.	*il s'en* ira.
nous nous en allons.	&c., &c.	&c., &c.	&c., &c.
vous vous en allez.			
ils s'en vont.			

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
Je m'en irais.		*Que je m'en* aille.	*Que je m'en* allasse.
tu t'en irais.	Va-*t'en.*	*que tu t'en* ailles.	*que tu t'en* allasses.
il s'en irait.	*qu'il s'en* aille.	*qu'il s'en* aille.	*qu'il s'en* allât.
&c., &c.	allons *nous-en.*	&c., &c.	&c., &c.
	allez *vous-en.*		
	qu'ils s'en aillent.		

COMPOUND TENSES.

*Je m'*en suis allé (-e). *Nous nous* en sommes allés (-es).
*tu t'*en es allé (-e). *vous vous* en êtes allé (-e, -s, -es)
*il s'*en est allé. *ils s'*en sont allés.
*elle s'*en est allée. *elles s'*en sont allées.

---

[1] Also *vas* in *vas-y.*

122. S'ASSEOIR, *to sit down.*[1] STEMS: **ASSEY—, ASSI—.**

S'asseoir—s'asseyant—assis—je m'assieds—je m'assis.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
*Je m'*assieds.	*Je m'*asseyais.	*Je m'*assis.	*Je m'* assiérai.
*tu t'*assieds.	*tu t'*asseyais.	*tu t'*assis.	*tu t'*assiéras.
*il s'*assied.	*il s'*asseyait.	*il s'*assit.	*il s'*assiéra.
nous nous asseyons.	&c., &c.	&c., &c.	&c , &c.
vous vous ass-yez.			
*ils s'*asseyent.			

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
*Je m'*assiérais.		*Que je m'*asseye.	*Que je m'*assisse.
*tu t'*assiérais.	Assieds-toi.	*que tu t'*asseyes.	*que tu t'*assisses.
*il s'*assiérait.	*qu'il s'*asseye.	*qu'il s'*asseye.	*qu'il s'*assît.
&c., &c.	asseyons-nous.	&c., &c.	&c., &c.
	asseyez-vous.		
	*qu'ils s'*asseyent.		

COMPOUND TENSES.

Je me **suis assis** (-e). *Nous nous* **sommes assis** (-es).
*tu t'*es **assis** (-e). *vous vous* êtes **assis (-e[2],-es).**
il (*elle*) *s'*est **assis (-e).** *ils* (*elles*) *se* **sont assis** (-es).
&c., &c.

---

123. COURIR, *to run.* STEMS: **COUR—, COURU—.**

Courir—courant—couru—je cours—je courus.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je cours.	*Je* courais.	*Je* courus.	*Je* courrai.
tu cours.	*tu* courais.	*tu* courus.	*tu* courras.
il court.	*il* courait.	*il* courut.	*il* courra.
nous courons.	*nous* courions.	*nous* courûmes.	*nous* courrons.
vous courez.	*vous* couriez.	*vous* courûtes.	*vous* courrez.
ils courent.	*ils* couraient.	*ils* coururent.	*ils* courront.

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
Je courrais.		*Que je* coure.	*Que je* courusse.
tu courrais.	Cours.	*que tu* coures.	*que tu* courusses.
il courrait.	*qu'il* coure.	*qu'il* coure.	*qu'il* courût.
nous courrions.	courons.	*que nous* courions.	*que nous* courussions.
vous courriez.	courez.	*que vous* couriez.	*que vous* courussiez.
ils courraient.	*qu'ils* courent.	*qu'ils* courent.	*qu'ils* courussent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

*J'*ai couru, &c. *Que j'*aie couru, &c.

---

[1] There are also forms *assois, assoyais, assoirai, assoie,* &c.

[2] Of a single person.

124. CROIRE *to believe.* STEMS: **CROY** (or **CROI**)—, **CRU**—.
Croire—croyant—cru (crue)—je crois—je crus.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je crois.	*Je* croyais.	*Je* crus.	*Je* croirai.
tu crois.	*tu* croyais.	*tu* crus.	*tu* croiras.
il croit.	*il* croyait.	*il* crut.	*il* croira.
nous croyons.	*nous* croyions.	*nous* crûmes.	*nous* croirons.
vous croyez.	*vous* croyiez.	*vous* crûtes.	*vous* croirez.
ils croient.	*ils* croyaient.	*ils* crurent.	*ils* croiront.

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
Je croirais.		*Que je* croie.	*Que je* crusse.
tu croirais.	Crois.	*que tu* croies.	*que tu* crusses.
il croirait.	*qu'il* croie.	*qu'il* croie.	*qu'il* crût.
nous croirions.	croyons.	*que nous* croyions.	*que nous* crussions.
vous croiriez.	croyez.	*que vous* croyiez.	*que vous* crussiez.
ils croiraient.	*qu'ils* croient.	*qu'ils* croient.	*qu'ils* crussent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

*J'*ai cru, &c. *Que j'*aie cru, &c.

125. FAIRE, *to make, to do.* STEMS: **FAIS**— (or **FASS**—), **FI**—.
Faire—faisant—fait (faite)—je fais—je fis.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je fais.	*Je* faisais.	*Je* fis.	*Je* ferai.
tu fais.	*tu* faisais.	*tu* fis.	*tu* feras.
il fait.	*il* faisait.	*il* fit.	*il* fera.
nous faisons.	*nous* faisions.	*nous* fîmes.	*nous* ferons.
vous faites.	*vous* faisiez.	*vous* fîtes.	*vous* ferez.
ils font.	*ils* faisaient.	*ils* firent.	*ils* feront.

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
Je ferais.		*Que je* fasse.	*Que je* fisse.
tu ferais.	Fais.	*que tu* fasses.	*que tu* fisses.
il ferait.	*qu'il* fasse.	*qu'il* fasse.	*qu'il* fît.
nous ferions.	faisons.	*Que nous* fassions.	*que nous* fissions.
vous feriez.	faites.	*que vous* fassiez.	*que vous* fissiez.
ils feraient.	*qu'ils* fassent.	*qu'ils* fassent.	*qu'ils* fissent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

*J'*ai fait, &c. *Que j'*aie fait, &c.

*** Pronounce *fai* like *fe* (e semi-mute) whenever the next syllable is sounded In Future and Conditional, as if spelt *f'rai, f'rais*, sounding the *e* only in *ferons, feriez.*

126. LIRE, *to read.*

STEMS : **LIS—, LU—.**

Lire—lisant—lu (lue)—je lis—je lus.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je lis.	*Je* lisais.	*Je* lus.	*Je* lirai.
tu lis.	*tu* lisais.	*tu* lus.	*tu* liras.
il lit.	*il* lisait.	*il* lut.	*il* lira.
nous lisons.	*nous* lisions.	*nous* lûmes.	*nous* lirons.
vous lisez.	*vous* lisiez.	*vous* lûtes.	*vous* lirez.
ils lisent.	*ils* lisaient.	*ils* lurent.	*ils* liront.

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
Je lirais.		*Que je* lise.	*Que je* lusse.
tu lirais.	Lis.	*que tu* lises.	*que tu* lusses.
il lirait.	*qu'il* lise.	*qu'il* lise.	*qu'il* lût.
nous lirions.	lisons.	*que nous* lisions.	*que nous* lussions.
vous liriez.	lisez.	*que vous* lisiez.	*que vous* lussiez.
ils liraient.	*qu'ils* lisent.	*qu'ils* lisent.	*qu'ils* lussent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

*J'*ai lu, &c. *Que j'*aie lu, &c.

127. MOURIR, *to die.*

STEMS : **MOUR—** (or **MEUR—**), **MOURU—.**

Mourir—mourant—mort (morte)—je meurs—je mourus.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je meurs.	*Je* mourais.	*Je* mourus.	*Je* mourrai.
tu meurs.	*tu* mourais.	*tu* mourus.	*tu* mourras.
il meurt.	*il* mourait.	*il* mourut.	*il* mourra.
nous mourons.	*nous* mourions.	*nous* mourûmes.	*nous* mourrons.
vous mourez.	*vous* mouriez.	*vous* mourûtes.	*vous* mourrez.
ils meurent.	*ils* mouraient.	*ils* moururent.	*ils* mourront.

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
Je mourrais.		*Que je* meure.	*Que je* mourusse.
tu mourrais.	Meurs.	*que tu* meures.	*que tu* mourusses.
il mourrait.	*qu'il* meure.	*qu'il* meure.	*qu'il* mourût.
nous mourrions.	mourons.	*que nous* mourions.	*que nous* mourussions.
vous mourriez.	mourez.	*que vous* mouriez.	*que vous* mourussiez.
ils mourraient.	*qu'ils* meurent.	*qu'ils* meurent.	*qu'ils* mourussent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Je suis mort (-e), &c. *Que je* sois mort (-e), &c.

Note that **mourir** is conjugated with **être** like **devenir.**

128. POUVOIR, *to be able.*

STEMS: POUV— (or PUISS—), PU—.

Pouvoir—pouvant—pu—je peux (puis)—je pus.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je peux (puis) [1]	*Je* pouvais.	*Je* pus.	*Je* pourrai.
tu peux.	*tu* pouvais.	*tu* pus.	*tu* pourras.
il peut.	*il* pouvait.	*il* put.	*il* pourra.
nous pouvons.	*nous* pouvions.	*nous* pûmes.	*nous* pourrons.
vous pouvez.	*vous* pouviez.	*vous* pûtes.	*vous* pourrez.
ils peuvent.	*ils* pouvaient.	*ils* purent.	*ils* pourront.

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
Je pourrais.		*Que je* puisse.	*Que je* pusse.
tu pourrais.		*que tu* puisses.	*que tu* pusses.
il pourrait.	Wanting.	*qu'il* puisse.	*qu'il* pût.
nous pourrions.		*que nous* puissions.	*que nous* pussions.
vous pourriez.		*que vous* puissiez.	*que vous* pussiez.
ils pourraient.		*qu'ils* puissent.	*qu'ils* pussent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

*J'*ai pu, &c. *Que j'*aie pu, &c.

---

129. PRENDRE, *to take.*

STEMS: PREN— (or PRENN—), PRI—.

Prendre—prenant—pris (prise)—je prends—je pris.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je prends.	*Je* prenais.	*Je* pris.	*Je* prendrai.
tu prends.	*tu* prenais.	*tu* pris.	*tu* prendras.
il prend.	*il* prenait.	*il* prit.	*il* prendra.
nous prenons.	*nous* prenions.	*nous* prîmes.	*nous* prendrons.
vous prenez.	*vous* preniez.	*vous* prîtes.	*vous* prendrez.
ils prennent.	*ils* prenaient.	*ils* prirent.	*ils* prendront.

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
Je prendrais.		*Que je* prenne.	*Que je* prisse.
tu prendrais.	Prends.	*que tu* prennes.	*que tu* prisses.
il prendrait.	*qu'il* prenne.	*qu'il* prenne.	*qu'il* prît.
nous prendrions.	prenons.	*que nous* prenions.	*que nous* prissions.
vous prendriez.	prenez.	*que vous* preniez.	*que vous* prissiez.
ils prendraient.	*qu'ils* prennent.	*qu'ils* prennent.	*qu'ils* prissent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

*J'*ai pris, &c. *Que j'*aie pris, &c.

[1] The form **puis** is the only one used in the inverted interrogative conjugation

130. RIRE, *to laugh.*

STEMS: **RI—, RI—**

Rire—riant—ri—je ris—je ris.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je **ris.**	*Je* **riais.**	*Je* **ris.**	*Je* **rirai.**
tu **ris.**	*tu* **riais.**	*tu* **ris.**	*tu* **riras.**
il **rit.**	*il* **riait.**	*il* **rit.**	*il* **rira.**
nous **rions.**	*nous* **riions.**	*nous* **rîmes.**	*nous* **rirons.**
vous **riez.**	*vous* **riiez.**	*vous* **rîtes.**	*vous* **rirez.**
ils **rient.**	*ils* **riaient.**	*ils* **rirent.**	*ils* **riront.**

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
Je **rirais.**		*Que je* **rie.**	*Que je* **risse.**
tu **rirais.**	**Ris.**	*qu tu* **ries.**	*que tu* **risses.**
il **rirait.**	*qu'il* **rie.**	*qu'il* **rie.**	*qu'il* **rît.**
nous **ririons.**	**rions.**	*que nous* **riions.**	*que nous* **rissions.**
vous **ririez.**	**riez.**	*que vous* **riiez.**	*que vous* **rissiez.**
ils **riraient.**	*qu'ils* **rient.**	*qu'ils* **rient.**	*qu'ils* **rissent.**

COMPOUND TENSES.

*J'*ai ri, &c. *Que j'*aie ri, &c.

---

131. SAVOIR, *to know.*

STEMS: **SAV—** (or **SACH—**), **SU—.**

Savoir—sachant—su (sue)—je sais—je sus.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je **sais.**	*Je* **savais.**	*Je* **sus.**	*Je* **saurai.**
tu **sais.**	*tu* **savais.**	*tu* **sus.**	*tu* **sauras.**
il **sait.**	*il* **savait.**	*il* **sut.**	*il* **saura.**
nous **savons.**	*nous* **savions.**	*nous* **sûmes.**	*nous* **saurons.**
vous **savez.**	*vous* **saviez.**	*vous* **sûtes.**	*vous* **saurez.**
ils **savent.**	*ils* **savaient.**	*ils* **surent.**	*ils* **sauront.**

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
Je **saurais.**		*Que je* **sache.**	*Que je* **susse.**
tu **saurais.**	**Sache.**	*que tu* **saches.**	*que tu* **susses.**
il **saurait.**	*qu'il* **sache.**	*qu'il* **sache.**	*qu'il* **sût.**
nous **saurions.**	**sachons.**	*que nous* **sachions.**	*que nous* **sussions.**
vous **sauriez.**	**sachez.**	*que vous* **sachiez.**	*que vous* **sussiez.**
ils **sauraient.**	*qu'ils* **sachent.**	*qu'ils* **sachent.**	*qu'ils* **sussent.**

COMPOUND TENSES.

*J'*ai su, &c. *Que j'*aie su, &c.

132. VENIR *to come.*

STEMS: VEN— (or VIEN—), VIN—.

Venir—venant—venu (venue)—je viens—je vins.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je viens.	*Je* venais.	*Je* vins.	*Je* viendrai.
tu viens.	*tu* venais.	*tu* vins.	*tu* viendras.
il vient.	*il* venait.	*il* vint.	*il* viendra.
nous venons.	*nous* venions.	*nous* vînmes.	*nous* viendrons.
vous venez.	*vous* veniez.	*vous* vîntes.	*vous* viendrez.
ils viennent.	*ils* venaient.	*ils* vinrent.	*ils* viendront.

Conditional. Present.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.* Present.	Imperfect.
Je viendrais.		*Que je* vienne.	*Que je* vinsse.
tu viendrais.	Viens.	*que tu* viennes.	*que tu* vinsses.
il viendrait.	*qu'il* vienne.	*qu'il* vienne.	*qu'il* vînt.
nous viendrions.	venons.	*que nous* venions.	*que nous* vinssions.
vous viendriez.	venez.	*que vous* veniez.	*que vous* vinssiez.
ils viendraient.	*qu'ils* viennent.	*qu'ils* viennent.	*qu'ils* vinssent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.	Perfect.
Je suis venu(e), &c.	*Que je* sois venu(e), &c.

So conjugate **tenir**, except in the compound tenses, which take **avoir.**

---

133. VALOIR, *to be worth.*

STEMS: VAL— (or VAILL—), VALU—.

Valoir—valant—valu (value)—je vaux—je valus.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je vaux.	*Je* valais.	*Je* valus.	*Je* vaudrai.
tu vaux.	*tu* valais.	*tu* valus.	*tu* vaudras.
il vaut.	*il* valait.	*il* valut.	*il* vaudra.
nous valons.	*nous* valions.	*nous* valûmes.	*nous* vaudrons.
vous valez.	*vous* valiez.	*vous* valûtes.	*vous* vaudrez.
ils valent.	*ils* valaient.	*ils* valurent.	*ils* vaudront.

Conditional. Present.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.* Present.	Imperfect.
Je vaudrais.		*Que je* vaille.	*Que je* valusse.
tu vaudrais.	Vaux.	*que tu* vailles.	*que tu* valusses.
il vaudrait.	*qu'il* vaille.	*qu'il* vaille.	*qu'il* valût.
nous vaudrions.	valons.	*que nous* valions.	*que nous* valussions.
vous vaudriez.	valez.	*que vous* valiez.	*que vous* valussiez.
ils vaudraient.	*qu'ils* vaillent.	*qu'ils* vaillent.	*qu'ils* valussent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

*J'*ai valu, &c. *Que j'*aie valu, &c.

134. VOIR, *to see*.

STEMS: **VOY** — or **VOI—, VI—.**

Voir—voyant—vu (vue)—je vois—je vis.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je vois.	*Je* voyais.	*Je* vis.	*Je* verrai.
tu vois.	*tu* voyais.	*tu* vis.	*tu* verras.
il voit.	*il* voyait.	*il* vit.	*il* verra.
nous voyons.	*nous* voyions.	*nous* vîmes.	*nous* verrons.
vous voyez.	*vous* voyiez.	*vous* vîtes.	*vous* verrez.
ils voient.	*ils* voyaient.	*ils* virent.	*ils* verront.

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
Je verrais.		*Que je* voie.	*Que je* visse.
tu verrais.	Vois.	*que tu* voies.	*que tu* visses.
il verrait.	*qu'il* voie.	*qu'il* voie.	*qu'il* vît.
nous verrions.	voyons.	*que nous* voyions.	*que nous* vissions.
vous verriez.	voyez.	*que vous* voyiez.	*que vous* vissiez.
ils verraient.	*qu'ils* voient.	*qu'ils* voient.	*qu'ils* vissent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

*J'*ai vu, &c. *Que j'*aie vu, &c.

---

135. VOULOIR, *to be willing* (*I will*).

STEMS: **VOUL**— (**VEUL**— or **VEUILL**—), **VOULU**—.

Vouloir—voulant—voulu (voulue)—je veux—je voulus.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.	Past Def.	Future.
Je veux.	*Je* voulais.	*Je* voulus.	*Je* voudrai.
tu veux.	*tu* voulais.	*tu* voulus.	*tu* voudras.
il veut.	*il* voulait.	*il* voulut.	*il* voudra.
nous voulons.	*nous* voulions.	*nous* voulûmes.	*nous* voudrons.
vous voulez.	*vous* vouliez.	*vous* voulûtes.	*vous* voudrez.
ils veulent.	*ils* voulaient.	*ils* voulurent.	*ils* voudront.

Conditional.	*Imperative.*	*Subjunctive.*	
Present.		Present.	Imperfect.
Je voudrais.		*Que je* veuille.	*Que je* voulusse.
tu voudrais.	veuille.[1]	*que tu* veuilles.	*que tu* voulusses.
il voudrait.	*qu'il* veuille.	*qu'il* veuille.	*qu'il* voulût.
nous voudrions		*que nous* voulions.	*que nous* voulussions.
vous voudriez.	veuillez.[1]	*que vous* vouliez.	*que vous* voulussiez.
ils voudraient.	*qu'ils* veuillent.	*qu'ils* veuillent.	*qu'ils* voulussent.

COMPOUND TENSES.

*J'*ai voulu, &c. *Que j'*aie voulu, &c.

---

[1] *Veux ! voulons ! voulez !* are rare. One says, however: *Ne lui en veux pas.*

XIII.—Formation of Tenses.

136. **GENERAL PRINCIPLES.** The present participle, the present and imperfect indicative, the imperative and the present subjunctive are formed from the imperfect stem. The past definite and the imperfect subjunctive are formed from the perfect stem, and the past participle from the Latin supine stem. The changes in passing from Latin to French are discussed in Chapter XVI. From the infinitive, itself formed from the imperfect stem, the future and conditional are formed in a way which differs from Latin.

137. **TENSES FORMED FROM THE IMPERFECT STEM.** From the **imperfect stem** are formed, without modifications of any kind, the **present participle** and the **imperfect indicative**; the **first** and **second** persons **plural present indicative**; the **first** and **second** persons **plural present subjunctive.** Also, but with more numerous variations, the *third plural present indicative*, and the *three persons of the singular* and the *third* person *plural* of the *present subjunctive.*

The rules and exceptions are as follow :—

The present participle is formed from the imperfect stem by adding **ant,** the imperfect indicative by adding **ais** :—

PARL-,	**parl-ant,**	*je* **parl-ais.**
DORM-,	**dorm-ant,**	*je* **dorm-ais.**

The only cases in which the imperfect and the present participle are formed from different stems are *avoir*, to have ; *savoir*, to know.

ayant, j'avais ; sachant, je savais ;

but in *savoir* the other form of the participle exists in the adjective *savant*, learned.

The first and second plural present indicative are formed from the imperfect stem, by adding **ons, ez,** as—

FINISS-,	*nous* **finiss-ons,**	*vous* **finiss-ez.**
JOIGN-,	*nous* **joign-ons,**	*vous* **joign-ez.**

except *dites, faites.*

The first and second plural present subjunctive are formed from the imperfect stem, by adding **ions, iez,** as—

CROY-,	*que nous* **croy-ions,**	*que vous* **croy-iez ;**
VEN-,	*que nous* **ven-ions,**	*que vous* **ven-iez ;**

except—

avoir,	*ayant,*	*que nous ayons,*	*que vous ayez,*
être,	*étant,*	*que nous soyons,*	*que vous soyez,*[1]
pouvoir,	*pouvant,*	*que nous puissions,*	*que vous puissiez,*
faire,	*faisant,*	*que nous fassions,*	*que vous fassiez,*

formed from the roots of *puisse, fasse,* the first singular of the tense. The adjective *puissant* is another form of the present participle.

The third plural present indicative is formed from the imperfect stem by adding **ent**; the singular and the third plural of the present subjunctive by adding **e, es, e, ent,** respectively, as—

DORM-,	*que je* **dorm-e,**	*que tu* **dorm-es,**	*qu'il* **dorm-e.**
	ils **dorm-ent,**	*qu'ils* **dorm-ent.**	
NAISS-,	*que je* **naiss-e,**	*que tu* **naiss-es,**	*qu'il* **naiss-e.**
	ils **naiss-ent,**	*qu'ils* **naiss-ent.**	

If the imperfect stem ends in **y** it is changed into **i ;** in the third conjugation **ev** becomes **oiv.**

VOY-,	*que je* **voi-e,**	*que tu* **voi-es,**	*qu'il* **voi-e.**
	ils **voi-ent,**	*qu'ils* **voi-ent,**	
RECEV-,	*que je* **reçoiv-e,**	*que tu* **reçoiv-es,**	*qu'il* **reçoiv-e.**
	ils **reçoiv-ent,**	*qu'ils* **reçoiv-ent,**	

The other exceptions, in nearly all of which it is easy to trace the imperfect stem with a slight modification, are—

avoir,	*ayant,*	*ils ont,*	*que j'aie.*
acquérir,	*acquérant,*	*ils acquièrent,*	*que j'acquière.*
aller,	*allant,*	*ils vont,*	*que j'aille.*
boire,	*buvant,*	*ils boivent,*	*que je boive.*
déchoir,	*déchéant,*	*ils déchoient,*	*que je déchoie.*
être,	*étant,*	*ils sont,*	*que je sois.*

[1] The verb *to be* in French, as in most languages, borrows from several roots, viz , (1) **fu-**, whence *fus, fusse,* (2) **sta-**, which becomes *esta-, éta-,* whence *étant, été,* &c., (3) **es-**, whence *es, est, suis* (the Latin being really *esum*), *sois,* &c. **Être** is from *essere.*

faire,	*faisant,*	*ils font,*	*que je fasse.*
falloir,			*qu'il faille.*
mourir,	*mourant,*	*ils meurent,*	*que je meure.*
mouvoir,	*mouvant,*	*ils meuvent,*	*que je meuve.*
pouvoir,	*pouvant,*	*ils peuvent,*	*que je puisse.*
prendre,	*prenant,*	*ils prennent,*	*que je prenne.*
savoir,	*sachant,*		*que je sache.*
tenir,	*tenant,*	*ils tiennent,*	*que je tienne.*
valoir,	*valant,*		*que je vaille.*
venir,	*venant,*	*ils viennent,*	*que je vienne.*
vouloir,	*voulant,*	*ils veulent,*	*que je veuille.*

138. **PRESENT INDICATIVE.** The singular of the present indicative is generally formed, like the plural, from the imperfect stem, but the contractions and modifications are more numerous. The final **s** of the first person in all conjugations but the first is not found before the thirteenth century, and therefore its origin must not be sought in Latin. In the seventeenth century, and even in modern poetry, we still find *je croi, je sui,* &c.

The **second singular imperative** is the same as the second singular present indicative except that in the first conjugation **s** is dropt and the **first** and **second plural imperative** are the same as the first and second plural present indicative—

tu **parles,**	**parle!**	*tu* **dors,**	**dors!**
nous **parlons,**	**parlons!**	*nous* **dormons,**	**dormons!**
vous **parlez,**	**parlez!**	*vous* **dormez,**	**dormez!**
tu **dis,**	**dis!**	*tu* **fais,**	**fais!**
nous **disons,**	**disons!**	*nous* **faisons,**	**faisons!**
vous **dites,**	**dites!**	*vous* **faites,**	**faites!**

The only exceptions besides *avoir* and *être* are *aller, savoir, vouloir; aller* makes *va*[1] in the second singular, and follows the rule in the plural; *vouloir* has the second plural *veuillez,* as well as *voulez; savoir* makes *sache, sachons, sachez.*

[1] Also *vas* in *vas-y.*

The other persons of the imperative, the third singular and plural, are always the same as the third singular and plural of the present subjunctive.

139. **THE PAST DEFINITE.** The stem of the past (or preterite) definite, except in the verbs *tenir*, *venir*, and their compounds, ends in a vowel; the several persons of the tense are formed by terminations involving in the plural a contraction denoted by the circumflex accent.

The imperfect subjunctive (really the Latin pluperfect) is also formed from this stem by adding **sse**, &c. In the third person a great contraction takes place, including the omission of **ss**, eventually represented by the circumflex, so that this person is practically formed from the stem by adding *t* and circumflexing the vowel, thus—

AIMA-,	**aima-i,**	**aima-sse,**	**aimât** (*amasset*).
FINI-,	**fini-s,**	**fini-sse,**	**finît** (*finisset*).
FI-,	**fi-s,**	**fi-sse,**	**fît.**
TIN-,	**tin-s,**	**tin-sse,**	**tînt.**

140. **THE INFINITIVE AND ITS DERIVED TENSES.** The infinitive, though often for convenience called one of the *temps primitifs*, is really the Latin infinitive, formed from the imperfect stem. In all but the fourth conjugation the final *e* is dropt. In most cases some lesser changes take place, which are noticed below. The most obvious anomaly is that of the third conjugation in which the *ē* of *valēre* and the *ĕ* of *recipĕre* (*recevere*) become *oir*.

The **future** and **conditional** are formed from the infinitive by adding *ai*, *ais*, representing the present and imperfect of **avoir**,[1] and eliding the final **e** where there is one. This process is peculiar to French.

parler,	**parler-ai,**	**parler-ais.**
dormir,	**dormir-ai,**	**dormir-ais.**
vendre,	**vendr-ai,**	**vendr-ais.**

[1] So that *j'aimerai* is *I have to love*, ich ſoll lieben, i.e., *I shall love*.

The **oi** of *recevoir*, &c., when it ceases to be accented, is treated like what it really is, an equivalent of the *e* of the other conjugations, and is dropt.

recevoir, recevr-ai, recevr-ais.

The following verbs, of which the future only is given, appear to deviate from the rule (generally because of some vowel changes explained in Chapter XVI., or of the insertion of *d* before *r* to facilitate pronunciation). The conditional is, of course, formed by adding **s** to the future.

acquérir,	*j'acquerrai.*	*falloir* (imp.),	*il faudra.*
aller,	*j'irai.*	*mourir,*	*je mourrai.*
avoir,	*j'aurai.*	*pouvoir,*	*je pourrai.*
s'asseoir,	*je m'assiérai.*	*savoir,*	*je saurai.*
courir,	*je courrai.*	*seoir* (imp.),	*il siéra.*
cueillir,	*je cueillerai.*	*tenir,*	*je tiendrai.*
déchoir,	*je décherrai.*	*valoir,*	*je vaudrai.*
échoir (imp.),[1]	*il écherra.*	*venir,*	*je viendrai.*
être,	*je serai.*	*voir,*	*je verrai.*
envoyer,	*j'enverrai.*	*vouloir,*	*je voudrai.*
faire,	*je ferai.*	and their compounds.	

[1] The verbs with (imp.) are impersonal, and therefore the third person of the future is given.

XIV.—Various Forms of Conjugation.

141. CONJUGATION OF A VERB WITH *ÊTRE*. Most verbs of motion, and certain other intransitive verbs, conjugate the compound tenses with **être** instead of with **avoir.**

DEVENIR, *to become* (compound tenses only).

Indicative Mood.

Past Indefinite.		Pluperfect.	
Je suis *tu* es *il* or *elle* est	devenu, or devenue.	*J'*étais *tu* étais *il* or *elle* était	devenu, or devenue.
nous sommes *vous* êtes *ils* or *elles* sont	devenus, or devenues.	*nous* étions *vous* étiez *ils* or *elles* étaient	devenus, or devenues.
Past Anterior.		**Future Perfect.**	
Je fus *tu* fus *il* or *elle* fut	devenu, or devenue.	*Je* serai *tu* seras *il* or *elle* sera	devenu, or devenue.
nous fûmes *vous* fûtes *ils* or *elles* furent	devenus, or devenues.	*nous* serons *vous* serez *ils* or *elles* seront	devenus, or devenues.

Conditional Mood.

Past.			
Je serais [1] *tu* serais *il* or *elle* serait	devenu, or devenue.	*nous* serions *vous* seriez *ils* or *elles* seraient	devenus, or devenues.

Subjunctive Mood.

Perfect.		Pluperfect.	
Que je sois *que tu* sois *qu'il* or *qu'elle* soit	devenu, or devenue.	*Que je* fusse *qu tu* fusses *qu'il* or *qu'elle* fût	devenu, or devenue.
que nous soyons *que vous* soyez *qu'ils* or *qu'elles* soient	devenus, or devenues.	*que nous* fussions *que vous* fussiez *qu'ils* or *qu'elles* fussent	devenus, or devenues.

Infinitive Mood.

Past, **être devenu, -ue,** &c., to have become.

Participles.

Past (**étant**) **devenu, ue,** &c., having become.

The participle in these tenses agrees in gender and number with the nominative, but remains singular when *vous* means one person. So conjugate **venir, arriver, partir, sortir,** &c.

[1] Or je fusse devenu, &c.

142. CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB.

ÊTRE AIMÉ, *to be loved.*

Indicative Mood.

Present.		Past Definite.	
Je suis *tu* es *il* or *elle* est	aimé, or aimée.	*Je* fus *tu* fus *il* or *elle* fut	aimé, or aimée.
nous sommes *vous* êtes *ils* or *elles* sont	aimés, or aimées.	*nous* fûmes *vous* fûtes *ils* or *elles* furent	aimés, or aimées.
Imperfect.		Future.	
*J'*étais *tu* étais *il* or *elle* était	aimé, or aimée.	*Je* serai *tu* seras *il* or *elle* sera	aimé, or aimée.
nous étions *vous* étiez *ils* or *elles* étaient	aimés, or aimées.	*nous* serons *vous* serez *ils* or *elles* seront	aimés, or aimées.
Past Indefinite.		Past Anterior.	
*J'*ai été *tu* as été *il* or *elle* a été	aimé, or aimée.	*J'*eus été *tu* eus été *il* or *elle* eut été	aimé, or aimée.
nous avons été *vous* avez été *ils* or *elles* ont été	aimés, or aimées.	*nous* eûmes été *vous* eûtes été *ils* or *elles* eurent été	aimés, or aimées.
Pluperfect.		Future Perfect.	
*J'*avais été *tu* avais été *il* or *elle* avait été	aimé, or aimée.	*J'*aurai été *tu* auras été *il* or *elle* aura été	aimé, or aimée.
nous avions été *vous* aviez été *ils* or *elles* avaient été	aimés, or aimées.	*nous* aurons été *vous* aurez été *ils* or *elles* auront été	aimés, or aimées.

Conditional Mood.

Present.		Past.	
Je serais *tu* serais *il* or *elle* serait	aimé, or aimée.	*J'* aurais été [1] *tu* aurais été *il* or *elle* aurait été	aimé, or aimée.
nous serions *vous* seriez *ils* or *elles* seraient	aimés or aimées.	*nous* aurions été *vous* auriez été *ils* or *elles* auraient été	aimés, or aimées.

[1] Or j'eusse été aimé, &c.

Imperative Mood.

Sois *qu'il* or *qu'elle* **soit**	**aimé**, or **aimée**.
soyons **soyez** *qu'ils* or *qu'elles* **soient**	**aimés**, or **aimées**.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.		Imperfect.	
Que je **sois** *que tu* **sois** *qu'il* or *qu'elle* **soit**	**aimé**, or **aimée**.	*Que je* **fusse** *que tu* **fusses** *qu'il* or *qu'elle* **fût**	**aimé**, or **aimée**.
que nous **soyons** *que vous* **soyez** *qu'ils* or *qu'elles* **soient**	**aimés**, or **aimées**.	*que nous* **fussions** *que vous* **fussiez** *qu'ils* or *qu'elles* **fussent**	**aimés**, or **aimées**.
Perfect.		**Pluperfect.**	
*Que j'***aie été** *que tu* **aies été** *qu'il* or *qu'elle* **ait été**	**aimé**, or **aimée**.	*Que j'***eusse été** *que tu* **eusses été** *qu'il* or *qu'elle* **eût été**	**aimé**, or **aimée**.
que nous **ayons été** *que vous* **ayez été** *qu'ils* or *qu'elles* **aient été**	**aimés**, or **aimées**.	*que nous* **eussions été** *que vous* **eussiez été** *qu'ils* or *qu'elles* **eussent été**	**aimés**, or **aimées**.

Infinitive Mood.

Present.	Past.
être aimé, aimée, &c.	**avoir été aimé, aimée**, &c.

Participles.

Present.	Past.
étant aimé, aimée, &c.	**ayant été aimé, aimée**, &c.

The following are the translations of some of the tenses :–

je suis devenu,	I became, I have become, I am become.
j'étais devenu,	I had become, I was become.
je serai devenu,	I shall have become.
tu seras devenu,	Thou wilt have become.
je serais devenu,	I should have become,
&c.	&c.
je suis aimé,	I am loved.
j'étais aimé,	I was loved, I was being loved.
je fus aimé,	I was loved.
j'ai été aimé,	I was loved, I have been loved,
&c.	&c.

143. CONJUGATION OF REFLEXIVE OR PRONOMINAL VERBS.

FIRST CLASS.—PRONOUN IN ACCUSATIVE.

SE LAVER, *to wash oneself.*

Se laver, se lavant, lavé, je me lave, je me lavai.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.
Je me lave.	*Je* me lavais.
tu te laves.	*tu* te lavais.
il se lave.	*il* se lavait.
nous nous lavons.	*nous* nous lavions.
vous vous lavez.	*vous* vous laviez.
ils se lavent.	*ils* se lavaient.
Past Definite.	Future.
Je me lavai.	*Je* me laverai.
tu te lavas.	*tu* te laveras.
il se lava.	*il* se lavera.
nous nous lavâmes.	*nous* nous laverons.
vous vous lavâtes.	*vous* vous laverez.
ils se lavèrent.	*ils* se laveront.

COMPOUND TENSES.

Past Indefinite.		Pluperfect.	
Je me suis *tu* t'es *il* or *elle* s'est	lavé, or lavée.	*Je* m'étais *tu* t'étais *il* or *elle* s'était	lavé, or lavée.
nous nous sommes *vous* vous êtes *ils* or *elles* se sont	lavés, or lavees.	*nous* nous étions *vous* vous étiez *ils* or *elles* s'étaient	lavés, or lavées.
Past Anterior.		**Future Perfect.**	
Je me fus *tu* te fus *il* or *elle* se fut	lavé, or lavée.	*Je* me serai *tu* te seras *il* or *elle* se sera	lavé, or lavée.
nous nous fûmes *vous* vous fûtes *ils* or *elles* se furent	lavés, or lavées.	*nous* nous serons *vous* vous serez *ils* or *elles* se seront	lavés, or lavées.

Conditional Mood.

Present.	Past.
Je me laverais.	*Je* me serais [1] } lavé,
tu te laverais.	*tu* te serais } or
il se laverait.	*il* or *elle* se serait } lavée.
nous nous laverions.	*nous* nous serions } lavés,
vous vous laveriez.	*vous* vous seriez } or
ils se laveraient	*ils* or *elles* se seraient } lavées.

Imperative Mood.

Lave-toi.
qu'il se lave.
lavons-nous.
lavez-vous.
qu'ils se lavent.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	Imperfect.
Que je me lave.	*Que je* me lavasse.
que tu te laves.	*que tu* te lavasses.
qu'il se lave.	*qu'il* se lavât.
que nous nous lavions.	*que nous* nous lavassions.
que vous vous laviez.	*que vous* vous lavassiez.
qu'ils se lavent.	*qu'ils* se lavassent.

Perfect.	Pluperfect.
Que *je* me sois } lavé,	*Que je* me fusse } lavé.
que tu te sois } or	*ue tu* te fusses } or
qu'il or *elle* se soit } lavée.	*qu'il* or *elle* se fût } lavée,
que nous nous soyons } lavés,	*que nous* nous fussions } lavés,
que vous vous soyez } or	*que vous* vous fussiez } or
qu'ils or *elles* se soient } lavées.	*qu'ils* or *elles* se fussent } lavées.

Infinitive Mood.

Present—se laver, to wash oneself.
Past—s'être lavé, lavée, &c., to have washed oneself.

Participles.

Present—se lavant.
Past—s'étant lavé, lavée, &c.

144. SECOND CLASS.—**PRONOUN IN DATIVE.**

Verbs of the second class differ from those of the first only in the fact that their past participle is unaltered. Thus the future perfect of **se nuire** is conjugated—

Je me serai nui, *nous* nous serons nui,
tu te seras nui, *vous* vous serez nui,
il or *elle* se sera nui, *ils* or *elles* se seront nui;

[1] Or je me fusse lavé, &c.

145. **TRANSLATION OF TENSES OF PRONOMINAL VERBS.** (1.) Ordinary reflexive—pronoun in accusative.

je **me lave,** I wash myself *or* I wash (intransitive).
I am washing myself *or* I am washing.
je **me lavais,** I was washing myself *or* I was washing.
je **me suis lavé,** I washed myself *or* I washed.
I have washed myself *or* I have washed.
je **me serai lavé,** I shall have washed myself *or* I shall have washed, &c., &c.

often rendered by an English neuter verb—

ils **se promènent,** they walk *or* are walking;
ils **se sont promenés,** they walked *or* have walked;

or by an English passive verb,

le coton **se vend** *en balles,* is sold in bales.

(2.) Ordinary reflexive—pronoun in dative—

elle **se blesse** *le pied,* she hurts *or* is hurting her foot.
elle **s'est blessé** *le pied,* she hurt *or* has hurt her foot
elle **se sera blessé** *le pied,* she will have hurt her foot.

(3.) Reflexive used as reciprocal—pronoun in accusative—

ils **se haïssent,** they hate each other.
ils **se sont haïs,** they hated *or* have hated each other.
ils **s'étaient haïs,** they had hated each other.

(4.) Reflexive used as reciprocal—pronoun in dative—

ils **se donnent** *un coup de main,* they give each other a helping hand.
ils **se sont donné** *un coup de main,* they gave each other a helping hand.

146. **IMPERSONAL VERBS.** Impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular, as **neiger,** *to snow*, **pleuvoir,** *to rain*. They follow, of course, the conjugations to which they belong, as **il neigea,** *it snowed*, **il pleut,** *it rains*, **il pleuvra**, *it will rain*.

There are two impersonal verbs presenting some difficulty, **falloir,** *to be necessary, to be obliged*, generally rendered by *must, have to*, &c., and **il y a** (**y avoir**), *there is* or *there are*.

FALLOIR—*must, have to.*

Pres.	il faut *aller*,	you (one) must go, has to go.[1]	
Imp.	il fallait *aller*,	you (one) had to go.	
Past Def.	il fallut *aller*,	you (one) had to go.	
Future.	il faudra *aller*,	you (one) will have to go.	
Past Indef.	il a fallu *aller*,	you (one) had to go.	
Pluperf.	il avait fallu *aller*,	you (one) had had to go.	
Past Ant.	il eut fallu.	Fut. Perf.	il aura fallu.
Cond. Pres.	il faudrait.	Past.	il aurait fallu.[2]
Subj. Pres.	qu'il faille.	Imperf.	qu'il fallût.
Subj. Past.	qu'il ait fallu.	Pluperf.	qu'il eût fallu.

Y AVOIR—(*there is* or *are*).

Pres.	il y a,	there is *or* there are.	
Imp.	il y avait,	there was *or* there were.	
Past Def.	il y eut,	there was *or* there were.	
Future.	il y aura,	there will be.	
Past Indef.	il y a eu,	there has *or* have been.	
Pluperf.	il y avait eu,	there had been.	
Past Ant.	il y eut eu,	there had been.	
Fut. Perf.	il y aura eu,	there will have been.	
Cond. Pres.	il y aurait.	Past.	il y aurait eu.[2]
Subj. Pres.	qu'il y ait.	Imperf.	qu'il y eût.
Subj. Perf.	qu'il y ait eu.	Pluperf.	qu'il y eût eu.

147. **VERBS CONJUGATED NEGATIVELY.** The negative in French is nearly always made up of two parts, (1) the negative particle **ne**, (2) a word like **pas, rien,** &c.

Ne stands between the nominative and the verb in a simple tense, between the nominative and the auxiliary in a compound tense.

Pas stands after the verb in a simple tense, between the auxiliary and the participle in a compound tense; other negative words, like **jamais, rien,** &c., generally stand in the same place.

In the subjunctive mood, the insertion or omission of **pas** is a question of syntax.

---

[1] Also I, he, she, &c., must go; *moi, lui*, are often inserted; so also are *te, vous*, sometimes. [2] Or *il* eût fallu, *il y* eût eu.

Indicative Mood

Present.

Je **ne** *parle* **pas,**	I do not speak.
tu **ne** *parles* **pas,**	thou dost not speak.
il **ne** *parle* **pas,**	he does not speak.
nous **ne** *parlons* **jamais,**	we never speak.
vous **ne** *parlez* **guère,**	you scarcely speak.
ils **ne** *parlent* **à personne,**	they do not speak to any one

Imperfect, *je* **ne** *parlais* **pas,** I was not speaking

and so on for other simple tenses.

Future Perfect.

Je **n'***aurai* **pas** *parlé,*	I shall not have spoken
tu **n'***auras* **pas** *parlé,*	thou wilt not have spoken.
il **n'***aura parlé* **à personne,**	he will not have spoken to any one, &c., &c.

Imperative Mood.

Ne *parle* **pas,**	Do not speak.
qu'il **ne** *parle* **pas,**	let him not speak.
ne *parlons* **plus,**	let us not speak any more.
ne *parlez* **plus,**	do not speak any more.
qu'ils **ne** *parlent* **pas,**	let them not speak.

Subjunctive Mood.

Je le garderai à vue afin qu'il **ne sorte pas,**	I will watch him that he may not go out.
Je crains qu'il **ne vienne,**	I fear he will come.
Croyez-vous qu'il **n'ait pas parlé,**	Do you think he did not speak?
Je partirai quoiqu'il **ne soit pas venu,**	I will start, though he is not come, &c., &c.

Infinitive Mood.

Present—**ne pas** *parler*,[1] not to speak.

Past— **n'***avoir* **pas** *parlé,* not to have spoken.

148. **INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION.** To conjugate a simple verb *interrogatively*, the pronoun is put after the verb or its auxiliary.

---

[1] Or *ne parler pas*, less frequently.

Present Indicative.

Donné-je?[1]	Do I give?	**Reçois-je?**	Do I receive?
donnes-tu?	dost thou give?	**reçois-tu?**	dost thou receive?
donne-t-il?	does he give?	**reçoit-il?**	does he receive?
donnons-nous?	do we give?	**recevons-nous?**	do we receive?
donnez-vous?	do you give?	**recevez-vous?**	do you receive?
donnent-ils?	do they give?	**reçoivent-ils?**	do they receive?

Past Definite.		Future.	
Donnai-je?	Did I give?[2]	**Donnerai-je?**	Shall I give?
donnas-tu?	didst thou give?	**donneras-tu?**	wilt thou give?
donna-t-il?	did he give?	**donnera-t-il?**	will he give?
donnâmes-nous?	did we give?	**donnerons-nous?**	shall we give?
donnâtes-vous?	did you give?	**donnerez-vous?**	will you give?
donnèrent-ils?	did they give?	**donneront-ils?**	will they give?

Preterite Indefinite.

Ai-je fini?	Have I finished? *or* did I finish?
as-tu fini?	hast thou finished? *or* didst thou finish?
a-t-il fini?	has he finished? *or* did he finish?
avons-nous fini?	have we finished? *or* did we finish?
avez-vous fini?	have you finished? *or* did you finish?
ont-ils fini?	have they finished? *or* did they finish?

Obs. 1. Remember to insert a hyphen (*trait-d'union*) between the verb and the pronoun, in conjugating interrogatively. **(App. VI.)**

Obs. 2. In the first conjugation, the **e** mute of the first person present takes the acute accent; in the third person **t** is inserted before the pronoun.

Obs. 3. In the future of all conjugations, in the present of **avoir**, and in the preterite of the first conjugation, **t** is inserted between **a** final and **il** or **elle**, as **a-t-il, recevra-t-elle, donna-t-il?**[3]

---

[1] With the first person pres. ind. of verbs of the first conjugation it is better to use *est-ce que*, e.g. *est-ce que je donne;* see Obs. 4.

[2] *Ai-je donné* is a more common way of asking the question.

[3] This *t*, sometimes called *euphonic t*, is nothing but the final *t* of the third person in Latin and Old French; it has been retained in

Obs. 4. In the first sing. pres. ind. it is essential to use the form with **est-ce que**: (1) with monosyllables, **est-ce que je dors, est-ce que je crains**; (2) with the verbs ending in **ger, est-ce que je mange, nage**, &c. But *ai-je, dois-je, finis-je, puis-je, sais-je, suis-je, vais-je, vois-je*, are admissible.

Obs. 5. The pluperfect subjunctive is often used in the interrogative form in conditional sentences, and is then conjugated thus—

eussé-je parlé, eusses-tu parlé, eût-il parlé, &c.

So **puissé-je** ! *may I be able!* **dussé-je**, *suppose I must.*

Obs. 6. If the nominative to a verb, conjugated interrogatively, be a noun in English, the noun is put first and then the verb, with the corresponding pronoun.

Le roi parle-t-il?	does the king speak?
Le roi ne parle-t-il pas?	does not the king speak?

Or we may say, instead of the first—

Est-ce que le roi parle?

and instead of the second—

Le roi parle, n'est-ce pas?

which, indeed, is the more usual form.

149. **NEGATIVE INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION.** The *negative interrogative* conjugation follows the same principles as the affirmative, as—

SIMPLE TENSES.

Ne craindrais-je pas?	should I not fear?
ne craindrais-tu pas?	wouldst thou not fear?
ne craindrait-il pas?	would he not fear?
ne craindrions-nous pas?	should we not fear?
ne craindriez-vous pas?	would you not fear?
ne craindraient-ils pas?	would they not fear?

COMPOUND TENSES.

N'avais-je pas craint?	had I not feared?
n'avais-tu pas craint?	hadst thou not feared?
n'avait-il pas craint?	had he not feared?

these forms, where the following pronoun prevented its becoming mute.

[1] Also **est-ce que le roi ne parle pas?** in a slightly different sense.

150. **PASSIVE VERBS VARIOUSLY CONJUGATED.** Passive verbs may be conjugated in any of the above ways; thus:—

Negatively—

Je ne suis pas aimé,	I am not loved.
elle n'a pas été aimée,	she was not loved.

Interrogatively—

était-il aimé?	was he loved?
avons-nous été aimés?	were we loved?

Negatively-interrogatively—

ne serons-nous pas aimés?	shall we not be loved?
n'auraient-elles pas été aimées?	would they not have been loved?

But it is often possible to use **est-ce que? n'est-ce pas?** and avoid these forms.

151. **REFLEXIVE VERBS VARIOUSLY CONJUGATED.** Reflexive verbs are also conjugated in these three ways—

Negatively—

elle ne se lavera pas,	she will not wash herself.
elle ne s'était pas lavée,	she had not washed herself.

Interrogatively—

te laves-tu?	dost thou wash thyself?
nous serions-nous promenés?	should we have walked?

Negatively-interrogatively—

ne me lavais-je pas?	was I not washing myself?
ne se sera-t-elle pas lavée?	will she not have washed herself?

Notice especially the imperative negative:—

ne te lave pas,
qu'il ne se lave pas,
ne nous lavons pas,
ne vous lavez pas,
qu'ils ne se lavent pas.

152. **POSITION OF PRONOUNS.** If personal pronouns be governed by a verb, they are inserted before it or its auxiliary. Complete rules are given in the Syntax; but an example or two will be useful here.

SIMPLE TENSES.

je le loue,	I praise him.	je ne le loue pas.
tu le loues,	thou praisest him.	tu ne le loues pas.
il le loue,	he praises him.	il ne le loue pas.
le loué-je?	do I praise him?	ne le loué je pas?
le loues-tu?	dost thou praise him?	ne le loues-tu pas?
le loue-t-elle?	does she praise him?	ne le loue-t-elle pas?

COMPOUND TENSES.

je l'ai connu,	I have not known him,	je ne l'ai pas connu.
tu l'as connu,	thou hast not known him,	tu ne l'as pas connu.
il l'a connu,	he has not known him,	il ne l'a pas connu?
l'ai-je connu?		ne l'ai-je pas connu?
l'as-tu connu?		ne l'as-tu pas connu?
l'a-t-il connu?		ne l'a-t-il pas connu?

153. **PRONOUNS WITH IMPERATIVE.**[1] With the first and second persons of the imperative affirmative, the pronouns are put after the verb, and moi, toi, are used instead of me, te.

Imperative Affirmative.

crains-la,	fear her.
qu'il la craigne,	let him fear her.
craignons-la,	let us fear her.
craignez-la,	fear her.
qu'ils la craignent,	let them fear her.
conduis-moi,	guide me.
qu'il me conduise,	let him guide me.
conduisons-le,	let us guide him.
conduisez-la,	guide her.
qu'ils te conduisent.	let them guide you.

[1] See Minor Syntax.

Imperative Negative.

ne la crains pas,	do not fear her.
qu'il ne la craigne pas,	let him not fear her.
ne la craignons pas,	let us not fear her.
ne la craignez pas,	do not fear her.
qu'ils ne la craignent pas,	let them not fear her.

XV.—Notes on the First Conjugation.

154. **GENERAL REMARKS.** There are peculiarities in the conjugation of verbs ending in **ger, cer, ter, ler, yer,** which are mentioned here, though they can scarcely be called irregularities ; it will be understood that the tenses not given are quite regular.

155. **VERBS IN** *GER.* Verbs in **ger** insert **e** before **a** and **o**, in order to preserve the palatal or soft sound of the **g**, opposed to the guttural or hard sound in *good*, &c.

MANGER, *to eat.*

Indicative Mood.

Present.

je mange,	*tu manges,*	*il mange.*
nous **mangeons,**	*vous mangez,*	*ils mangent.*

Imperfect.

je **mangeais,**	*tu* **mangeais,**	*il* **mangeait.**
nous mangions,	*vous mangiez,*	*ils* **mangeaient.**

Past Definite.

je **mangeai,**	*tu* **mangeas,**	*il* **mangea.**
nous **mangeâmes,**	*vous* **mangeâtes,**	*ils mangèrent.*

Imperative Mood.

	mange,	*qu'il mange.*
mangeons,	*mangez,*	*qu'ils mangent.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Imperfect.

que je **mangeasse,** *tu* **mangeasses,** *il* **mangeât.**

que nous **mangeassions,** *vous* **mangeassiez,** *ils* **mangeassent.**

Present Part.—**mangeant.**

156. **VERBS IN** *CER.* Verbs in cer take a cedilla under the ç before a and o, to preserve its sibilant sound.

AVANCER, *to advance.*

Indicative Mood.

Present.

j'avance,	*tu avances,*	*il avance.*
nous avançons,	*vous avancez,*	*ils avancent.*

Imperfect.

*j'*avançais,	*tu* avançais,	*il* avançait.
nous avancions,	*vous avanciez,*	*ils* avançaient.

Preterite Definite.

*j'*avançai.	*tu* avanças,	*il* avança.
nous avançâmes,	*vous* avançâtes,	*ils avancèrent.*

Imperative Mood.

	avance.	*qu'il avance.*
avançons,	*avancez.*	*qu'ils avancent.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Imperfect.

*que j'*avançasse,	*tu* avançasses,	*il* avançât.
que nous avançassions,	*vous* avançassiez,	*ils* avançassent.

Present Part.—avançant.

157. *ETER, ELER.* Most verbs in eter, eler, as cacheter, appeler, amonceler, double t and l before e mute

JETER, *to throw.*

Indicative Mood.

Present.

je jette,	*tu* jettes.	*il* jette.
nous jetons,	*vous jetez,*	*ils* jettent.

Future.

je jetterai,	*tu* jetteras,	*il* jettera,
nous jetterons,	*vous* jetterez,	*ils* jetteront.

Conditional Mood.

je jetterais,	*tu* jetterais,	*il* jetterait.
nous jetterions,	*vous* jetteriez,	*ils* jetteraient.

	Imperative Mood.	
	jette,	*qu'il* **jette.**
jetons,	*jetez,*	*qu'ils* **jettent**
	Subjunctive Mood.	
	Present.	
que je **jette,**	*tu* **jettes,**	*il* **jette.**
que nous jetions,	*vous jetiez,*	*ils* **jettent.**

158. *ACHETER*, &c. But a few verbs, of which **acheter, racheter, celer, geler,** and their compounds are the most common, do not double the consonant, but follow the example of *mener*. Thus—

acheter, j'achète, j'achèterai, &c.

So also the following less common verbs, *harceler, bourreler, peler, becqueter, décolleter, écarteler, modeler, marteler, épousseter, étiqueter, trompeter.*[1]

159. *MENER*, &c. Other verbs having e mute in the penultimate, change e into è whenever there is e mute in the following syllable.

M E N E R, *to lead.*

	Indicative Mood.	
	Present.	
je **mène,**	*tu* **mènes,**	*il* **mène.**
nous menons,	*vous menez,*	*ils* **mènent.**
	Future.	
je **mènerai,**	*tu* **mèneras,**	*il* **mènera,**
nous **mènerons,**	*vous* **mènerez,**	*ils* **mèneront.**
	Conditional Mood.	
je **mènerais,**	*tu* **mènerais,**	*il* **mènerait,**
nous **mènerions,**	*vous* **mèneriez,**	*ils* **mèneraient.**
	Imperative Mood.	
	mène,	*qu'il* **mène,**
menons,	*menez,*	*qu'ils* **mènent.**

[1] It should be added that there are a good many verbs of this class of which the conjugation is not fixed; *épeler* is one.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

que je mène,	*tu* mènes,	*il* mène,
que nous menions,	*vous meniez,*	*ils* mènent.

160. *É* **IN PENULTIMATE.** Verbs with é in the penultimate retain it in the future and conditional, but change it into è in all the other parts in which e mute follows.

PRÉFÉRER, *to prefer.*

Indicative Mood.

Present.

je préfère,	*tu* préfères,	*il* préfère,
nous préférons,	*vous préférez,*	*ils* préfèrent.

Future.

je préférerai,	*tu préféreras,*	&c.

Conditional Mood.

je préférerais,	&c.

Imperative Mood.

	préfère,	*qu'il* préfère,
préférons,	*préférez,*	*qu'ils* préfèrent.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.

que je préfère,	*que tu* préfères,	*qu'il* préfère,
que nous préférions,	*que vous préfériez,*	*qu'ils* préfèrent.

But verbs ending in éer suffer no alteration, as créer, je crée, je créerai.

Verbs in éger are now treated like préférer, as assiéger, j'assiège, j'assiégerai.

161. **VERBS IN** *YER* change y into i before e mute.

EMPLOYER, *to employ.*

Indicative Mood.

Present.

*j'*emploie,	*tu* emploies,	*il* emploie.
nous employons,	*vous employez,*	*ils* emploient.

Future.

*j'*emploierai,	*tu* emploieras,	*il* emploiera,
nous emploierons.	*vous* emploierez,	*ils* emploieront.

	Conditional Mood.	
*j'*emploierais,	*tu* emploierais,	*il* emploierait.
nous emploierions,	*vous* emploieriez,	*ils* emploieraient.
	Imperative Mood.	
	emploie,	*qu'il* emploie.
employons,	*employez,*	*qu'ils* emploient.
	Subjunctive Mood.	
*que j'*emploie,	*tu* emploies,	*il* emploie.
que nous employions,	*vous employiez,*	*ils* emploient.

With verbs in **ayer**, the **y** is often retained,[1] and sometimes **aie** in the future and conditional is contracted into **aî**, as **paierai, païrai.**

XVI.—Connection of French and Latin Verbs.

162. **GENERAL REMARKS.** A full discussion of the connection between French and Latin is beyond the scope of an elementary work, but some of the chief principles of change are so distinctly brought out in connection with the verbs, and are so useful in explaining their irregularities, that it seems worth while to devote a chapter to them. It must always be borne in mind that French is formed, not from classical Latin, but from spoken Latin, and that of a late period. In spoken language there is a tendency to slur over unaccented syllables, leading to a gradual loss of letters, both at the end and in the middle of words; just as with us *per-*

[1] *Paierai, païrai* are also found in the future, *paie* in the present. In *tuer, louer, jouer, distribuer*, &c., the first and second plural impf. ind, and pres. subj. are written with the tréma, *jouïons, jouïez, tuïons*, &c. This does not apply to verbs ending in *guer, quer*, as *prodiguer, indiquer*, where the *u* is closely connected with the consonant. They make *prodiguions, indiquiez*, &c. But in *arguer*, to argue, where the *u* is sounded, *j'arguë, nous arguïons, j'arguërai.*

ambulator becomes *pram*, and *bicycle*, *bike*. This tendency is very conspicuous in French. Side by side with it is to be remarked the tendency to strengthen weak vowels, converting them into sounds like *ie*, *ou*, *eu*, especially when the accent falls on them. Both tendencies are illustrated by the formation of *douté* from *dubitatum*, the latter part of the word and letters from the middle being dropped, and its first syllable altered from *u* into *ou*. Lastly, spoken language is apt to play fast and loose with Grammar, and in particular to substitute regular inflections for those of which the origin is forgotten; thus we prefer *swelled* to *swollen*, *strewed* to *strewn*.

163. **PRINCIPLES OF CHANGE.** The following principles cover most of what are known as the irregularities of French verbs, as well as their regular forms:—

1. The loss of letters or syllables either at the end, as *amer* from *amar(um)*, *venin* from *venen(um)*, or in the middle, as *désirer* from *desi(de)rare*, *semaine* from *se(pti)manam*, *naif* from *na(t)iv(um)*.

2 Vowel changes, especially of single vowels into **ie**, **eu**, **ou**, &c., as *heure* from *horam*, *vierge* from *virginem*. The most important influence is that of accent. Thus in *tenir* (from Latin *tenere*), *tenons*, *tenant*, the accent is on the last syllable, and the unaccented *e* is unchanged; in *tiens*, *tienne*, *tiennent*, the accent falls on the root syllable, and the stronger *ie* takes the place of *e*. The same process explains *reçois*, *reçoivent*, compared with *recevant*, *recevez*, &c. Nor is this all; a vowel may be either free, that is, followed by a single consonant (or the combinations *tr*, *dr*, *fr*, *br*, *ns*), or blocked (*entravée*), that is, followed by two consonants. This also influences vowel changes according to fixed laws, blocked vowels, as a rule, changing less than free vowels. Lastly, an *i* is often added to the Latin vowel, either because of an *i* or *e* in the following syllable,[1] or from the influence of a palatal consonant as in *fait* from *factum*.

[1] Analogous to the German Umlaut.

3. Consonant-changes, of which the commonest are from Latin *b* or *p* into *v*, and from Latin *x* into *s*. To these may be added the change of Latin *ol* into *ou*, *al* into *au*.

4. The unconscious insertion of *b* and *d* after the cognate letters *m* and *n*, as in *nombre* from *numerum*, *tendre* from *tenerum*, niemand from nie-mann in German.

5. Grammatical confusions. For example, conjugations are changed, as in the case of *tenir* from *tenere*, *cueillir* from *colligere*. Sometimes tenses are derived from an obsolete form, as *courrai*, not from *courir*, but from the obsolete *courre*. Again, tenses of *vouloir*, *pouvoir* are formed from *volere*, *potere*, not from *velle*, *posse*. Deponents have quite disappeared, so that the tenses of *mourir*, *suivre* come from *morire*, *sequere*.

6. The addition of the so-called *inorganic* s (§137), in the first person singular of several tenses.

164. **THE TENSES IN FRENCH AND LATIN.**— Except the future and conditional, the tenses of a French verb are contractions of corresponding Latin tenses. The present indicative and subjunctive of many, but not all verbs, retain the Latin root-consonants, and the changes are chiefly in person-endings. In the imperfect indicative, *b* became *v*, and was then dropt, and other contractions took place. The past definite is formed from the Latin perfect in various ways; the commonest is the excision of letters, as in *dormit* from *dormi(vi)t*, *perdit* from *perdi(di)t*.[1] In *voulut* from *voluit*, *moulut* from *moluit*, there is still less contraction, and this form is adopted by many verbs with a different perfect in Latin. *Conduisit* from *conduxit* is an instance of a very obvious consonant change. In *prit*, *tint*, *connut*, &c., the process is more complicated. The imperfect subjunctive represents the Latin pluperfect subjunctive (§ 140). The past participle in the first three conjugations drops the final *tum* of the Latin participle, and in many cases *u*, as if from *-utum* or *-uitum*, appears instead of *i*. Other

[1] The third person is generally used in this chapter to avoid the complication of *inorganic* s in the first person (§ 165).

participles end in *t*, as *fait* from *factum*, or *s*, as *mis* from *missum*. The present participle shows less change from the Latin than any other part; the final letters are dropt, and *a* takes the place of *e*. For the future, see § 140.

165. **PERSON-ENDINGS.** The Latin person-endings are themselves shortened from the pronouns originally appended to the stems of the several tenses. They have been still further cut down in French.

In the *first singular*, *m*, already lost in many Latin tenses, is always dropt, and the preceding vowel has often followed it. In the imperfect, the diphthong *ai* has come to represent the vowels of the two final syllables, the intervening *b* having been first altered into *v*, and then lost. In the past definite, *i* often remains. To set against these losses, the first person has had in many cases the letter **s** (known as the inorganic **s**) added. Even in the 17th century we find *je croi*, *je voi*, &c., and at an earlier date neither the imperfect nor the conditional ended in *s*. The final *e* of *chante*, &c., inserted to "support" the consonants, is not found in old French.

In the *second* and *third singular*, the Latin vowels are treated as in the first person; the final *s* of the second person is always, and the final *t* of the third person in many cases, retained.[1] In the present subjunctive *t* is always dropt. In the past def. second singular *ti* has disappeared.

The *first* and *second plural* of the past definite are nearer to the Latin than those of any other tenses. The final syllables are retained with the vowel softened. The *s* of the second person is now represented by the circumflex, while in the first person an *s* (now a circumflex) has crept in in imitation of the second. In other tenses, *ns* comes from *nus*, *n* replacing *m* before *s*; the preceding vowels become *o*, in imitation, it is said, of *somes* from *sumus*. The ending *ez* is an abbreviation of *a(ti)s*, *e(ti)s*, &c., the change of final *s* into *z* being very common (*nasum*, *nez*; *casam*, *chez*).

[1] The *t* of *aime-t-il*, *aimera-t-il* is now considered not to be a survival, but due to analogy.

In the *third plural*, the Latin *nt* is retained, the preceding vowel generally becoming *e* mute. But *habent* becomes *ont*, which is therefore the ending of all futures. Similarly *font*, *sont*, *vont*.

166. **FIRST CONJUGATION.** The first conjugation contains more than 3,600[1] verbs, *i.e.*, nine-tenths of the whole list. Besides words belonging to the first Latin conjugation, it includes a great number of verbs, some of them introduced into the language by the learned, and many of them taken from other Latin conjugations. It thus corresponds to the regular conjugation in English, or the weak conjugation in German.

Examples of change into this conjugation are *céder* from *cedĕre*, *persuader* from *persuadēre*, *tousser* from *tussire*. Sometimes two forms exist, side by side, as the earlier *empreindre* and the later *imprimer*, both from *imprimere*.

166A. **TENSES OF FIRST CONJUGATION.** The contractions are enumerated in § 164. In the imperfect, the *b* of *amabam* first changed into *v*, and then disappeared ; the *s* is a later addition. A separate chapter (XV.) is devoted to the variations of spelling of several groups of verbs of this conjugation.

166B. **IRREGULARITIES.** There are two irregular verbs **envoyer** and **aller.**

Envoyer (from *viam*, which became **voie**) has an old form *enveer*, from which the future **enverrai** is formed. **Renvoyer** is conjugated like *envoyer*, but *fourvoyer*, *convoyer*, *dévoyer* (all likewise from **voie**) are regular.

Aller (the derivation, possibly *adnare*, of which is not yet settled) borrows **vais, vas, va, vont,** from *vadere*, dropping the *d*, and forms future and conditional from the obsolete *ir* (Latin *ire*), which survives in **issir** (*exire*) and in *réussir*. In the subjunctive *a* becomes *ai* in the accented syllables.

167. **SECOND CONJUGATION.** The second conjugation contains about 350 verbs, which fall into two distinct classes. The first, or so-called regular verbs, form the

[1] In 1835 ; the number is now much larger.

present participle, &c., from Latin inceptive forms. Thus *gémir* (from *gemere*) borrows from *gemiscere*, *fleurir* from *florescere*, *punir*, *finir*, from forms *puniscere*, *finiscere*. The second class, containing *dormir*, *sentir*, &c., is the true representative of the Latin fourth conjugation.

Among the verbs that have changed into this conjugation are *agir* from *agĕre*, *régir* from *regĕre*, *fuir* from *fugĕre*, *fleurir* from *florĕre*, &c.

167A. **TENSES OF SECOND CONJUGATION.** The present of the first form is abbreviated from the Latin, as *gémit* from *gemi(sci)t*, *gémissons* from *gemiscimus*, *sc* becoming *ss*. The *s* of the first person is therefore not inorganic (§ 165). Verbs like *dormir*, *sentir*, drop two letters, as *dort* from *dor(mi)t*; another group end in *e* to support the final letters *vr*, *ll*, &c., as *ouvre*, *assaille*. The past definite and past participle of both groups are abridged from the regular forms of the fourth conjugation, as *dormi(vi)t*, *dormi(tum)*.

Derivatives both of irregular verbs of the conjugation, as *sentir* from *sentire*, and of verbs that have passed into it, as *agir*, *régir* from *agere*, *regere*, conform to its usual inflections, as if the Latin had made *sentivi*, *agivi*, *regivi* instead of *sensi*, *egi*, *rexi*.

167B. **IRREGULARITIES OF PRESENT.**

Several verbs change the root vowel into **ie**, **eu**, etc., before an unaccented syllable. Thus the compounds of **querir** make **-quiers**, **-quière**[1], &c. (but *-quérons*, *quérez*); **tenir**, **venir** make **tiens**, **tienne**[1], &c.; **mourir** makes **meurs**, **meurent**, &c.[2]

Bouillir (from *bullire*) differs from *assaillir*, &c., and makes **bous**, **bout**. It should be remembered that *ol* easily passes into *ou*.

Haïr contracts *haïs*, *haït* into **hais**, **hait**. **Fuir** takes *y* (= *ii*) instead of *i* before *a*, *i*, *o*; unlike most verbs of this conjugation, it drops the Latin root-consonant *fu(g)it*.

[1] Notice the grave accent and the doubled consonant, exactly as in forming the feminine of adjectives.

[2] It should be noticed that *o* unaccented, except before a nasal, generally becomes *ou*, *o* accented becomes *eu*.

167c. IRREGULARITIES OF FUTURE.

Courir and the compounds of **querir** form their future from *courre, querre,* obsolete forms which are really nearer to the Latin *currere, quærere.*

Cueillir from *colligĕre* forms the futures from the older infinitive in *er*, **cueillerai**. **Mourrai** is contracted from *mourirai.*

Tenir and **venir** with their compounds, form the future as if from *tiendre, viendre,* forms which probably grew up in order to avoid confusion with *tendre, vendre.* For the insertion of *d* see § 163, 4.

167d. IRREGULARITIES OF PAST DEFINITE AND PAST PARTICIPLE.

Several verbs form one or both of these parts as if the corresponding Latin verbs had formed them in *ui, utum* or *uitum.* Thus **courir** makes **courut, couru,** as if from the Latin *corŭit,*[1] *corutum.* So **mourir** makes **mourut,** but retains **mort** from *mortuum.* **Vêtir, venir, tenir** (and **issir, férir**) have *u* in the past participle; **vint, tint** were in old French *venit, tenit.*

Ouvrir, couvrir have past participle *ouvert, couvert* from Latin *opertum, coopertum;* **offrir, souffrir,** both compounds of *fero,* have *offert, souffert,* as if from a Latin form *fertum.*

The compounds of *querir* make *quit, quis,* a considerable abbreviation from *quaesi(v)it, quaesitum.*[2]

Bénir from *benedicere*[3] has two forms of the past participle; **béni** is the ordinary form, but **bénit** (only used as an adjective) is specially applied to consecrated things, as bread, water, &c.

167e. DEFECTIVES, &c.

Fleurir, used metaphorically, borrows the imperfect and past participle of **florir,** another form of the same word.

Gésir, *to lie,* is used chiefly in the third sing. pres. ind. **gît** (*gist*) in the phrase **ci-gît,** *here lies*; also in the present participle

---

[1] In old French, the perfects are *corui, morui.*

[2] Compare *quise* (fem.) with *quête* (English *quest*)), both from *quaesita.*

[3] The connection with *dicere* was forgotten, and the verb passed into the second conjugation; **maudire** has only partially done so.

gisant, the imperfect ind. and the plural pres. ind., from a collateral form *gire*, which like *gésir* comes from *jacēre*.

Ouïr from *audire* through *oïr* (*au* = *o* and *d* dropt) is used only in the past participle, **ouï**; it is from this verb (imp. *oyez*) that the English "O yes!" before a public announcement, comes.

Faillir (from *fallere* with *a* altered to *ai* and a change of conjugation) is at present used almost exclusively in the infinitive and past participle, in the third singular present *faut*, and in the third sing. pret. def. But in the meaning *to become bankrupt* it is treated as a regular verb like *finir*.

Férir (from *ferire*) is used only in the infinitive (*sans coup férir*) and in the past participle **féru** (*féru d'amour*) in which it follows *courir*, &c. **Issir** (obsolete from *exire*) has similarly a participle **issu**. **Querir** is used in infinitive only.

168. **THIRD CONJUGATION.** This conjugation contains but few verbs, among which **avoir, devoir, mouvoir, seoir, valoir, voir** are the only representatives of the Latin second conjugation. The remaining verbs of the conjugation including the compounds of *capere* like **recevoir**, usually taken as the type, have passed into it from other conjugations.

168A. **TENSES OF THIRD CONJUGATION.** The formation is best seen in a verb like **valoir**. In Latin we have *valere*, *valet*, *valuit*, and we must suppose the proper supine superseded by *valutum*. In the infinitive *e* is dropt, and the accented *e* changed into *oi* (as *regem* becomes *roi*, &c.); in the present indicative *val(e)t* becomes **vaut** (§ 163, 3); in the perfect *valuit* becomes **valut**, and in the participle the last syllable is dropt, leaving **valu**. **Recevoir, mouvoir**, &c., drop a syllable, making **reçut, reçu**. The first singular present indicative takes the inorganic *s*, becoming **vaux**, just as *à les* becomes *aux*. In the future we have **vaudrai**, from *val're*, *valdre*, *vaudre*, § 163 (4). In **recevoir**, &c., the future is from *recevre*, **recevrai**. The present subjunctive singular shows the usual change of *a* into *ai*, &c. (due to the following *e*), at least in the accented syllables.

168B. IRREGULARITIES OF PRESENT.

In **recevoir** and **devoir**, a syllable of *reci(pi)t*, *de(be)t*, is dropt and the accented vowel becomes *oi*, **reçoit, doit,** while in the subjunctive, the Latin *p*, *b* change into the cognate *v*, the vowel becoming *oi* before *e* mute, **reçoive,** but not in **recevions, receviez.**

Falloir (from *fallere*), **chaloir** (from *calēre*), follow the example of **valoir** so far as their tenses exist, but one compound of **valoir**, viz., **prévaloir,** makes **prévale** in the subjunctive.

Similarly with **mouvoir** (from *movēre*), **meut, meuvent ; vouloir** (from *volĕre* for *velle*), **veut, veulent,** *o* becoming *eu* exactly as in *mourir ;* in the present subjunctive, **vouloir** makes **veuille,** not *veule*, influenced by the vowel of *voleat* or *voliat*.

Pouvoir (from *potere* for *posse*, through *pooir*) has two present participles, **pouvant** and **puissant**, the latter used as an adjective. **Puissant** is from the unclassical Latin *possentem*, as *nuit* from *noctem*, &c. With it are associated **puis** and **puisse** ; for **peut**, &c., compare *meut* from *mouvoir*.

Savoir (from *sapĕre*) has also two forms of the present participle ; **savant**, now only used as an adjective, and **sachant.** The consonant-change in **sachant** is illustrated by *proche* for *propius*. The plural indicative follows one participle, the subjunctive the other. In the 16th century the verb was written *sçavoir* on the false assumption that it came from *scire*.

Voir (through *veoir* from *vidēre*) drops *d* and strengthens the vowel. Before *a*, *o*, *i*, the letter *y* is preferred to *i*.

Seoir (from *sedēre*) is itself defective, but its compounds **asseoir, rasseoir,** are complete and **surseoir** nearly so. The present participle, having dropt *d*, alters the vowel in three different ways, **séant, seyant, soyant.**[1] Both **seyant** and **soyant** have corresponding forms in the indicative and subjunctive **asseye, assoie,** &c., and to **séant** answers **siéent,** limited to **seoir.** The singular present indicative **sied** is **siet** in old French, from *se(de)t* ; the *d* has nothing to do with the *d* of *sedet*.

[1] Compare *reine* and the old *roine* or *royne* from *regina*, side by side with *réal* (*royal*) from *regalis*.

Choir (from *cadĕre*) is obsolete, but parts of **échoir**, **déchoir** are used. Of these **échoir** has **échéant** like *séant*; **déchoir** forms other parts as if from **déchoyant**, like *soyant*, *voyant*. In the third person **échet**, **déchet** are found as well as *échoit*, *déchoit*.

The impersonal **pleuvoir** (from *pluĕre* or rather *pluvere*) presents no difficulty.

The auxiliary **avoir** is from *habēre*, which becomes *aver* (§ 163 [3]). But in the present participle **ayant** has superseded *avant*. The third plural present indicative is **ont**, perhaps influenced by **sont**. The *i* (*y*) of the subjunctive is due to the *e* of *habeam*, &c.

168C. **IRREGULARITIES OF FUTURE.**

Nearly all the futures that seem irregular are formed on the same principles as **vaudrai** or **recevrai**. In **avoir**, **savoir**, *v* becomes *u*, giving (through *averai*, *saverai*) **aurai**, **saurai**; **voir**, **choir** make **verrai**, **cherrai**, as if from *ver*, *cher*, doubling the *r*; **seoir** has the three forms **siérai**, as if from a strengthened *ser*, **soirai**, as if from **soir**, and **seoirai**; **pouvoir** makes **pourrai** from *pod'rai*. Two compounds of **voir**, **prévoir** and **pourvoir**, have a future, *prévoirai*, *pourvoirai*, unlike the simple verb.

168D. **IRREGULARITIES OF PAST DEFINITE, &c.**

The only apparent deviations are in **voir**, which makes **vit** in past definite *vi(di)t*, and **seoir**, which makes **-sit**, **-sis**. **Pourvoir** makes **pourvut** unlike *voir*. **Eu**, **eut** (from *avoir*) for *au*, *aut*, are like *queue* from *caudam*, *peu* from *paucum*.

168E. **DEFECTIVES OF THIRD CONJUGATION.**

Ravoir, *recover*, **choir**, *fall*, are used in the infinitive only—**chaloir** (whence *nonchalant*) in the pres. indic. third sing., as **peu m'en chaut**, *it matters little to me*.

Seoir, meaning *to sit*, is used only in the participles: **séant**, *sitting* (of a court, &c.), **sis**, *situated* (legal); in the sense of *fit*, *suit*, it is employed in the third persons of several tenses.

Apparoir, used in third singular present indicative, **il appert**, *it appears* (legal).

169. **FOURTH CONJUGATION.** The fourth conjugation contains 60 verbs, a good many of which are irregular. A few come from verbs of the Latin second conjugation;

most of them from the strong verbs of the third, of which it is the representative :—

(1.) Verbs in **endre, andre, ondre** are mostly from the Latin verbs ending in *dere* (*pandere*, *scandere*, *tendere*, *fendere* [obsolete], &c.) and their compounds ; those from *rumpere*, *vincere* and their compounds deviate very little from *vendre*.

(2.) Verbs in **aindre, eindre, oindre** are derived from Latin verbs in *ngere*, *nguere* ; as *peindre*, *éteindre* from *pingere*, *extinguere*. Hence the *g* that appears in several of their tenses. **Craindre** is from *tremere*, through *criembre*. The *d* of the infinitive is developed as explained in § 163 (4).

(3.) Verbs in **aître, oître** are, as far as their imperfect tenses are concerned, from Latin inceptives in *ascere*, *escere*, *oscere*. The double *s* which characterises them, as it does one group of the second conjugation, is thus accounted for.

(4.) Verbs in **uire** are, with the exception of *nuire*, *luire*, *cuire*, from the compounds of *struere* and *ducere*. The *x* of the perfect of those verbs appears as *s* in French.

169A. **TENSES OF FOURTH CONJUGATION**. The present indicative follows the Latin very closely ; *t*, however, is naturally dropt after *d*, *t*, and in **vaincre**. As in other conjugations there is a strong tendency to make a regular perfect in *it* or *ut*, and a past participle in *u*.

169B. **IRREGULARITIES OF PRESENT, &c.** **Vaincre** has *qu* before all vowels, *vainquant*, &c. ; **coudre** (from *consuere* through *cousdre*), keeps the inserted *d* in the singular present indicative, but in other respects is conjugated as if from *cousre*. **Suivre** (from *sequere* for *sequi*) changes *u* into *v*, and drops *q* ; in the present indicative singular *v* disappears as in *servir*. **Moudre** (from **molere**) has inserted *d* in the infinitive and singular present indicative, and is in other respects conjugated like **valoir**.

Faire (from *facere*, *a* becoming *ai* under the influence of *c*), **dire**, have **faites, dites** in the second plural, thus

keeping close to the Latin. The compounds of **faire** do the same, but *confire*, *suffire* (from *conficere*, *sufficere*) are regular in that person. So are all compounds of *dire* except **redire** ; **maudire** has **ss** in the present participle, **maudissant**, and derived tenses, as if from a Latin inceptive (page 110, note 3). The third plural of **faire** is **font** contracted from *faciunt*, its future is *ferai*.

Boire (from *bibere* through *bevere*, cf. English "beverage") has *u* in unaccented, *oi* in accented syllables, and changes *b* into *v*. **Croire** (from *credĕre*) drops *d* and strengthens *e* into *oi*. **Clore** and **clure** are both from *claudere* (*cludere*), but **clore** imitates many other verbs, making **closant** ; **clure** drops *d* and makes **cluant**. **Rire** simply drops *d*, **riant**, &c.

Prendre (from *prehendere*) is conjugated in the present participle, etc., as if from *prenre*, making **prenant**, etc. Before *e* mute the *n* is doubled.

Soudre (from *solvere*) changes *ol* into *ou* in the singular present indicative only.

169c. **IRREGULARITIES OF PAST DEFINITE**, &c. The derivation from Latin is obvious in many cases ; for example, in the many strong past participles like **-cis** from *cæsum*, **-duit** from *ductum* (where the *i* is due to the following *c*), **écrit**, from *scriptum*, &c. The following points are interesting, but by no means exhaust the subject :—

The reduplication of the perfects *momordi*, *pependi*, *dedi* (in *vendidi*, &c.) has quite disappeared.

Several verbs of different formation have passed into the class, making **ui**, **utum**. Such are **lire**, **boire**, **croire**, **croître**, and the group like **connaître**. Thus **boire** forms its parts as if from *bibuit*, *bibutum*, and then contracts them, just as happens with *recevoir* (§ 168c).

Again, the perfect in *si* is retained in a contracted form in **mettre**, **rire**, &c., making **mit** (*misit*), **rit** (*risit*), and in the group ending in **uire** as **conduisit** (*conduxit*). In old French

écrire and the verbs in **-aindre, -eindre, -oindre** followed this form of conjugation, but they now have the consonant of the imperfect stem. **Prendre** and **faire**, on the other hand, have passed into this form of conjugation, and make **prit, fit.**

Naître makes **naquit** as if from *nascuit*, but retains **né** from *natum;* **vivre** has borrowed from an inceptive form and makes **vécut, vécu**, as if from *viscuit, viscutum*. For **Être**, see p. 84.

169D. DEFECTIVES OF FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Accroire is used in infinitive only, **faire accroire**, *make one believe.*

Braire, *bray*, is used only in the infinitive and in the third persons of the present, *brait, braient;* future *braira, brairont*, and conditional *brairai, brairaient.*

Bruire, *make a noise*, only in the third sing. present and third sing. and plural imperfect *bruit, bruissait, bruissaient.* The participle *bruyant* is now used only as an adjective. *Bruyait, -aient* also exist.

Frire, has the past part. *frit, frite.* The singular present indicative, the future, conditional, and second sing. imperative exist; the missing forms are supplied by *faire frire.*

Clore, *close*, has the past participle, singular present ind., future, conditional and present subj.

Sourdre, *spring forth, gush*, from *surgere*, is not much used except in the infinitive, and *sourd, sourdent. Source* is derived from it.

Tistre, from *texere* (p.p. *tissu*) is obsolete, but it is interesting to compare it with the modern form *tisser.*

XVII—Adverbs.

170. **FORMATION**. Adverbs are formed from adjectives by the termination **ment** (*fortement* = *forti mente*, with a strong mind). The rules are as follows :—

I. If the adjective end in a vowel the adverb is formed by adding **ment.**

Except (1) *impuni*, **impunément** ; *traître*, **traîtreusement** ; *prodigue*, **prodigalement.**

(2) *aveugle, commode, énorme, conforme, opiniâtre, incommode, immense, uniforme,*

which change *e* mute into *é*, as **aveuglément** (really from *aveuglé* &c.)

(3) *nouveau, mou, fou,* which have another form for the masculine, follow Rule III., and make **nouvellement,** etc.

(4) *crûment, continûment, assidûment,* take a circumflex (as of course do *dûment, indûment*). Both *gaiement* and *gaîment, nuement* and *nûment* exist. *Gaîment* is now preferred to *gaiement.*

II. Adjectives in **ant, ent** change **nt** into **mment,** as **instant, instamment ; prudent, prudemment.**

Except *lent*, **lentement** ; *présent*, **présentement** ; *véhément*, **véhémentement.**[1]

III. Other adjectives ending in a consonant add **ment** to the feminine, as **doux, doucement ; long, longuement.**

Except *gentil*, **gentiment**, and

commun, exprès, profond, confus, importun, obscur, précis, diffus, profus,

which change *e* mute of the feminine into *é*, as **confusément, expressément, précisément.**

Remember that **bien** corresponds to *bon* (**bonnement,** naïvely, **tout bonnement,** simply, merely), **mal** to *mauvais*, **mieux,** to *meilleur*, **moins** to *moindre*, **pis** to *pire.*

171. **ADJECTIVES AS ADVERBS.** The following

[1] Adjectives in **ant, ent** used to have no feminine form ; **présentement, véhémentement** are recent formations. In *lent, ent* belongs to the stem.

are the adjectives most commonly used as adverbs, and that generally with particular verbs :—

bas, with *jeter*, throw down, *parler*, speak low.
bon, with *sentir* (smell), *tenir*, stand fast.
cher, with *acheter*, &c.
court, with *couper*, ***s'arrêter.***
double, with *voir.*
droit, with *marcher.*
dru, with *tomber*, fall thick.
exprès, with *faire, venir*, on purpose.
faux, with *chanter, sonner.*
haut, with *lire, parler, placer.*
juste, with *tirer, raisonner, voir*, &c.
long, with *en savoir*, know all about it.
net, with *refuser*, point-blank.
ras, with *tondre*, shave close.
serré, with *jouer*, &c., cautiously.

Vite has superseded *vitement* : **soudain** is used as freely as ***soudainement.***

172. **NEGATIVE ADVERBS.** The *negative* adverbs are—

ne—jamais (*jam magis*), *never.*
ne—pas (*ne passum*, not a step), *not.*
ne—point (*ne punctum*, not a point), *not*, ***not at all.***
ne—guère, *hardly* (O. F. ***guaires***, much, from German.)
ne—plus, *no longer, henceforth not.*

The **ne** of these adverbs is put before the verb of the sentence.

173. **ADVERBS OF QUANTITY**, followed by a genitive, take the place of adjectives of quantity in English, as **peu de pain**, *not much bread;* **un peu de pain**, *a little bread;* **combien d'enfants**, *how many children?* They are—

assez,[1] enough,
autant,[1] as much, as many.
beaucoup,[1] } much,
bien, } many.
combien, how much, how many.
davantage, more.
moins, less.
peu, little, not much, few.
plus, more.
tant, so much, as much.
trop, too much.
un peu, a little, a few.

[1] Notice the derivations : *ad-satis; aliud-tantum ; coup* = *colaphus.*

Obs. 1. **Infiniment, énormément, &c.**, are used as adverbs of quantity. *Very much* must never be translated by *très beaucoup*, but by **beaucoup** or **infiniment.**

Obs. 2. *As much, so much*, followed by *as*, are translated by **autant** in affirmative sentences, and sometimes in negative sentences; by **tant** *in negative sentences only*. But when there is no *as* following, so that the sentence is elliptical, *tant* is used.

Obs. 3. **Davantage,** *more*, can never be put before **que, plus** may stand alone or with **que.**

174. **ADVERBS OF TIME.** Note the following :—

à la fois, at the same time.
alors, then (*ad illam horam*).
après-demain, the day after to-morrow.
à présent, now.
aujourd'hui, to-day (*ad illum diurnum hodie*).
auparavant, previously.
aussitôt, immediately.
autrefois, formerly.
avant-hier, the day before yesterday.
bientôt, soon.
cependant, meanwhile.
d'abord, first, at first.
de bonne heure, betimes.
déjà, already (*de ex jam*).
demain, to-morrow.
depuis, since then (*de posteis*).
depuis quand, how long ?
dès lors, from that time forward.
désormais, henceforth (*de ex horam magis*).
de temps à autre, de temps en temps, from time to time.
dorénavant, henceforth (*de horam in ab ante*).
encore, still, again (*in hanc horam?*).
enfin, at last.
ensuite, next.
hier, yesterday (*heri*).
jadis, formerly (*jamdiu* with *s*).
jamais (*jam magis*), ever (with **ne**), never.
longtemps, for a long time.
maintenant, now.
naguère, lately (*il n'a guère*).
onques (old), ever (*unquam* with *s*).
parfois, now and then.
plus (with **ne**), not henceforth, no longer.
plus tard, later, subsequently.
plus tôt, sooner.
puis, then, next (*posteis* = *postea*).
quand, when (*quando*).
quelquefois, sometimes.
souvent, often (*subinde*).
sur-le-champ, at once.
tantôt, by and by, just now.
tantôt . . . . tantôt, at one time, at another.
toujours, always.
tout à coup, suddenly.
tout à l'heure, presently.
tout de suite, directly.

Obs. 1. *Then* may be translated by four different adverbs—

alors (*ad illam horam*), *at that time.*
donc,[1] *therefore, accordingly.*
ensuite, *in succession.*
puis, *next after that.*

Obs. 2. **Or**, *now*, is not an adverb of time. It is used in reasoning, for example, in Euclid.

175. **ADVERBS OF PLACE.**

ailleurs, elsewhere (*aliorsum*).
alentour, autour, around.
autre part, elsewhere.
céans (old), within (*ecce hăc intus*).
çà et là, here and there.
dedans, within (*de de intus*).
dehors, outside (*de foris*).
derrière, behind (*de retro*).
dessus, above (*de sursum*).
dessous, below (*de subtus*).
d'où, whence, whence ?
en arrière, behind.
ici, here (*ecce hic*).
là, there (*illac*).
loin, far (*longe*).
nulle part, nowhere.
où, where, where ? (*ubi*).
partout, everywhere.
par où, by what road ?
près, near (*pressum*).
quelque part, somewhere.
y, there (*ibi*).

176. **ADVERBS OF DEGREE, MANNER, &c.** Many of these are identical with adverbs of quantity in § 160. The following are the chief, excluding for the most part, words like **infiniment**, formed from adjectives :—

ainsi, so.
à peine, hardly.
assez, sufficiently (*ad satis*).
aussi,[2] (also), as — (*aliud sic*).
autant, as—, as much (*aliud tantum*).
beaucoup, much (*bellum colaphum*).
bien, much, very (*bene*).
combien, how much ? how ?
comme, how ! as, as it were (*quomodo*).
comment, how ? (*quomodo mente*).
davantage, more.
de même, likewise.
encore, still (with comparative).
ensemble, together (*in simul*).
fort, very.
guère (with **ne**), hardly.
mal, *mis—, in—, un—*.[3]
même, even (*metipsimum*).
moins, less (*minus*).
nullement (ne), in no way.
on ne peut plus, extremely.
peu, not very, in—, un—[3]
plus, more. (*paucum*).
plutôt, rather.
pourquoi, why, why ?
presque, almost.

[1] Also like Latin *tandem*, pray !

[2] And at beginning of sentence, *so accordingly.*

[3] *e. g.*, *mal à l'aise*, uneasy ; *peu capable*, incapable.

quelque, about.
quelque peu, somewhat.
quelque . . . . que, however.
si, so, as.
surtout, above all, especially.
tant, so, so much.
tellement, so.
tout, quite, however (**que**).
très, very (*trans*).
trop, too, **too much.**
un peu, somewhat.
trop peu, too little.

Obs. 1. In a *direct* question *how* is translated by **comment**; in an exclamation generally by **comme** :—

comment *vous portez-vous ?*
comme *on voit tous ses vœux l'un l'autre se détruire !*

In dependent sentences the same distinction is observed :—

Vous voyez **comme** *il travaille* (how hard !).
Vous voyez **comment** *je l'ai obtenu* (by what means).

Obs. 2. *How*, qualifying an adjective or adverb, is rendered by **combien, que, à quel point,** which do not, however, immediately precede the adjective or adverb, as—

Qu'il est doux de revoir les murs de la patrie ! (how sweet it is).
Vous savez à quel point il est orgueilleux (how proud he is).
Combien ce qu'on dit est loin de ce qu'on pense (how far).

Obs. 3. *So* is translated by—

si before adjectives and adverbs (also **tellement**).
ainsi with verbs meaning *in such a way.*
aussi (or **ainsi**) at beginning of a sentence (*accordingly*).
de même, *in the same way.*

Obs. 4. In the phrase *as great as*, the first *as* is an adverb, and is translated by **aussi** in affirmative, generally by **si** in negative sentence ; the second is a conjunction, and is translated by **que.**

177. **ADVERBS CONNECTING SENTENCES.** Coordinate sentences are often joined by adverbs like *for*, *therefore.* The following are the chief of these adverbs, often looked upon as conjunctions.

ainsi, } so, accordingly.
aussi, }
car, for (*quare*).
cependant, nevertheless.
d'ailleurs,[1] besides.
donc, then, therefore.
du reste,[2] at the same time.
mais, but (*magis*).
néanmoins, nevertheless.
nonobstant, nevertheless.
or, now (as in Euclid).
par conséquent, consequently
partant, therefore.
pourtant, nevertheless.
toutefois, all the same.
toujours, still.

178. **RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS.** In most languages adverbs are formed from the root of the relative and interrogative pronouns, such as *whence*, wodurch, ὅθεν, ποῦ? In French **que** in some meanings, **dont, où, quand,** and the compound **pourquoi,** are the only words that fall under this head.

179. **COMPARISON OF ADVERBS. A few adverbs have different forms for the comparative and superlative—**

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bien	**mieux**	**le mieux,**
beaucoup	**plus**	**le plus,**
mal	**pis**	**le pis**
peu	**moins**	**le moins.**

Other adverbs are compared by prefixing **plus, le plus :— doucement, plus doucement, le plus doucement. Mal** is compared in this way as well as in the way given above.

180. **POSITION OF ADVERBS.** Adverbs qualifying a verb generally stand after the verb they qualify, or at least after its auxiliary :—

je réussirai facilement.	I shall easily succeed.
avez-vous bien dormi?	did you sleep well?

But they may, as in English, stand at the beginning of the sentence; they very rarely come between the nominative and the verb, they never do so when the nominative is a personal pronoun. With the infinitive mood the adverb very frequently precedes the verb.

---

[1] Not to be confused with **ailleurs,** elsewhere.

[2] See Syntax for distinction of **du reste, au reste.**

XVIII.—Prepositions and Conjunctions.

181. **PREPOSITIONS.** The following are the French prepositions properly so called, several of them being, as in other languages, used as adverbs also. For details, see Syntax.

à, to, at (*ad*).
après, after (*ad pressum*).
avant, before (time, order) (*ab ante*).
avec, with (*apud hoc*).
chez, at the house of (*casam*).
contre, against (*contra*).
dans, in, into (*de intus*).
de, of, from.
depuis, since, from (*de posteis*).
derrière, behind (*de retro*).
dès, from (time) (*de ex*).
devant, before (place).
en, in, into (*in*).
entre, between, among (*inter*).
envers, towards (*in versum*).
hors, except (*foris*).
malgré, in spite of.
outre, besides (*ultra*).
par, by, through.
parmi, among (*per medium*).
pour, for.
sans, without (*sine*).
selon, according to (*sublongum*)
sous, under (*subtus*).
sur, upon (*super*).
vers, towards[2] (*versum*).

182. **WORDS AND PHRASES USED AS PREPOSITIONS.** The following are the chief, and include especially participles, as **excepté**, **durant**, and nouns, with or without a preposition preceding, followed by de :

à bas de, down from.
à cause de, because of.
à côté de, beside.
à (au) défaut de, failing.
à force de, by dint of.
à moins de, without.
à travers, } through,
au travers de, } across.
au-delà de, beyond.
au-devant de, to meet.
au-dehors de, outside.
au-dessous de, below.
au-dessus de,[1] above.
au lieu de, instead of.
au prix de, compared to.
auprès de, near, compared to.
autour de, round.
d'après, according to.
d'avec, from among.
durant, during.

[1] *par-dessus le marché*, into the bargain ; *par-dessous les bras*, under the arms.

[2] Also *lez* or *lès* (*latus*), at the side of, in *Plessis-lez-Tours*.

en arrière de, behind.
en avant de, in front of.
en bas de, at the bottom of.
en dépit de, in spite of.
en raison de, in proportion to
excepté, except.
faute de, for want of.
hormis, except.
hors de, out of.
jusqu'à, **jusque dans**, } up to.
le long de, along.
lors de, dating from.
moyennant, in consideration of.
pendant, during.
près de, near.
quant à, as to.
sauf, except.
suivant, according to.
touchant, concerning.

183. **CONJUNCTIONS** are divided into two classes :— 1. Co-ordinative conjunctions, that is conjunctions which connect sentences, without making one subordinate to the other. 2. Subordinative conjunctions, which make the sentence they introduce subordinate to some other sentence.

Several conjunctions belonging to the first class, and *que*, which belongs to the second, are also said to connect *words*. Grammarians consider that in such case ellipsis or omission takes place. For instance : they consider the sentence *you and I are happy* to be abbreviated from *you are happy and I am happy*.

184. **CO-ORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.**

et, *and ;* **et—et**, *both—and ;*
ou, *or :* **ou—ou**, *either—or ;*
ni, *nor ;* **ni—ni**, *neither—nor* (requires *ne* with the verb) ;
mais, *but ;* **que**, *than, as*, and many of the adverbs given in § 164.

185. **SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.** There are only four true subordinative conjunctions in French, **que, si, comme, quand.** The rest are compounds of **que.**

The conjunctions with an asterisk (*) always take the subjunctive, those with (†) an indicative or subjunctive, according to rules to be given later on ; the remainder always take an indicative (or conditional).

TEMPORAL (of time).

quand, lorsque, } when.
après que, after.
* **avant que,** before.
aussitôt que, as soon as.
dès que, { from the moment when, as soon as.
depuis que, since.
à peine—que, scarcely when.
tandis que, pendant que, } while.[1]
tant que, as long as.
* **en attendant que,** † **jusqu'à ce que,** } until.

FINAL (denoting a purpose).

* **afin que,** in order that.
* **de crainte que,** lest.
* **de peur que,** lest.
* **pour que,** in order that.

CONSECUTIVE (denoting a consequence).

† **de manière que,** so that.
† **de sorte que,** so that.
† **de façon que,** so that.
* **sans que,** without.

CONDITIONAL.

si, if **(takes plup. subj.)**
* **pourvu que,** provided.
* **supposé que, posé que,** } supposing.
* **à moins que,** unless.
* **pour peu que,** if at all.
* **en cas que, au cas que,** } in case.

CONCESSIVE.

* **quoique, bien que,** } though.
* **encore que,** even though.
* **malgré que, nonobstant que,** } even though.
* **soit que—soit que,** whether —or.

quand, quand même (with conditional), even though.

CAUSAL.

comme, as, inasmuch as.
parce que, because.
puisque, since
attendu que, vu que, } seeing that.

COMPARATIVE.

à mesure que, à proportion que, ainsi que, } in proportion as.
comme, as.
* **loin que,** far from.
selon que, suivant que, } according as.
de même que, just as.

---

[1] **Tandis que** is not used of time only, but contains the notion of *whereas*.

186. **TRANSLATION OF** *AS, BEFORE, AFTER.* *As*, when a conjunction, is translated by—

Comme, meaning *since, inasmuch as.*
Comme, in a comparative sentence "Do as I do."
Que, when it is the second *as* in expressions like *as great as.*

In English the words *before* and *after* are used as adverbs, as prepositions, and as conjunctions; *until* is used both as a preposition and as a conjunction. In French they are differently rendered for each meaning.

Thus—

	Adverb.	Preposition.	Conjunction.
before,	**auparavant**,	**avant**, **devant**,	**avant que.**
after,	**après**, **plus tard**,	**après**,	**après que.**
until,		**jusqu'à**,	**jusqu'à ce que.**

XIX.—Calendar.

187. **DAYS OF THE WEEK.** **Dimanche** (*Dominica*, Lord's Day), **lundi** (*Lunæ dies*), **mardi** (*Martis dies*), **mercredi** (*Mercurii dies*), **jeudi** (*Jovis dies*), **vendredi** (*Veneris dies*), **samedi** (*Sabbati dies*).

Notice **vendredi saint**, *Good Friday*, **mardi gras**, *Shrove Tuesday*, **mercredi des cendres**, *Ash Wednesday.*

188. **MONTHS, &c.** **Janvier**, **février**, **mars** (*s* pronounced), **avril** (*l* generally *mouillé*), (**poisson d'avril**, April fool), **mai**, **juin**, **juillet**, **août** (pronounced *ou*) **septembre**, **octobre**, **novembre**, **décembre.**

Notice **le jour de l'an**, New Year's day; **le jour des rois**, Twelfth Night; **la Saint-Jean**, Midsummer day; **la Saint-Michel**, Michaelmas day; **la Toussaint**, All Saints' day (Nov. 1); **la Saint-Sylvestre** (Dec. 31); **le carême**, Lent; **Pâques**, Easter; **Noël**, Christmas.

The months of the Republican Calendar (1792 to 1806) are—Autumn, **vendémiaire** (begins about Sept. 22), **brumaire** (Oct. 22), **frimaire** (Nov. 21); Winter, **nivôse** (Dec. 21), **pluviôse** (Jan. 20), **ventôse** (Feb. 19); Spring, **germinal** (Mar. 21), **floréal** (Apr. 20), **prairial** (May 20); Summer, **messidor** (June 19), **thermidor** (July 19), **fructidor** (Aug. 18, ending Sept. 16 or 17). From Sept. 17 to 21, or 18 to 22 come the complementary days, **les sansculottides.**

Notice the familiar dates **9 thermidor** (July 27, 1794) fall of Robespierre, **13 vendémiaire** (Oct. 4, 1795) end of the Revolution; **18 brumaire** (Nov. 9, 1799) end of the Directory.

189. **ABBREVIATIONS.** The following are useful: **M.**, *monsieur;* **MM.**, *messieurs;* **Mme**, *madame;* **M^es^**, *mesdames;* **Mlle** (**Mlles**), *mademoiselle;* **M^e^**, *maître;* **Mgr**, *monseigneur;* **S. M.**, *Sa Majesté;* **S. A. R.**, *Son Altesse Royale;* **N.**, *nord;* **S.**, *sud;* **E.**, *est;* **O.**, *ouest;* **V^e^**, *veuve;* **Cie**, *compagnie;* 5 %, *cinq pour cent;* **N°**, *numéro;* c.-à-d., *c'est-à-dire;* **s.v.p.**, *s'il vous plaît;* **kil.**, *kilomètre;* **kilo.**, **kilog.**, *kilogramme;* **7bre**, *septembre;* **8bre**, *octobre;* **1er**, *premier;* **2e**, *deuxième;* **3e**, *troisième*, &c.

Infinitive.	Present Stems.	Participles.	Present Indicative.	Past Def. and Imp. Subj.
parler, speak,	PARL-	parlant, parlé, -ée,	parle, parles, parle, parlons, parlez, parlent,	parlai, parlasse,
finir, finish,	FINISS-	finissant, fini, -ie,	finis, -is, -it, finissons, -ez, -ent,	finis, finisse,
dormir, sleep,	DORM-	dormant, dormi, -ie,	**dors, dors, dort,** dormons, -ez, dorment,	dormis, dormisse,
sentir, feel,	SENT-	sentant, senti, -ie,	**sens, sens, sent,** sentons, -ez, sentent,	sentis, sentisse,
servir, serve,	SERV-	servant, servi, -ie,	**sers, sers, sert,** servons, -ez, servent,	servis, servisse,
recevoir, receive	RECEV- *or* REÇOIV-	recevant, reçu, -ue,	**reçois, -ois, -oit,** recevons, -ez, **reçoivent,**	reçus, reçusse,
vendre, sell,	VEND-	vendant, vendu, -ue,	vends, vends, vend, vendons, -ez, vendent,	vendis, vendisse,
craindre, fear,	CRAIGN-	**craignant, craint,** -te,	**crains, crains, craint,** craignons, -ez, craignent,	**craignis, craignisse,**
joindre, join,	JOIGN-	**joignant, joint,**	**joins, joins, joint,** joignons, -ez, -ent,	**joignis, joignisse,**
connaître know,	CONNAISS-	connaissant, connu, -ue,	connais, -ais, **-aît,** connaissons, -ez, -ent,	**connus, connusse,**
instruire instruct,	INSTRUIS-	instruisant, instruit, -te,	instruis, -uis, -uit, instruisons, -ez, instruisent,	instruisis, instruisisse,
manger, eat,	MANGE-	**mangeant.** mangé, -ée,	mange, -es, -e, **mangeons,** mangez, -ent,	**mangeai, mangeasse,**
avancer, advance,	AVANÇ-	**avançant,** avancé, -ée,	avance, -es, -e, **avançons,** avancez, avancent,	**avançai, avançasse,**
jeter, throw,	JET- *or* JETT-	jetant, jeté, -ée,	**jette, jettes, jette,** jetons, jetez, **jettent,**	jetai, jetasse,
mener, lead,	MEN- *or* MÈN	menant, mené, -ée,	**mène, mènes, mène,** menons, menez, **mènent,**	menai, menasse,
préférer, prefer,	PRÉFÉR- *or* PRÉFÈR-	préférant, préféré, -ée,	**préfère,** -es, -e, préférons, -ez, **-fèrent,**	préférai, préférasse,
employer, employ,	EMPLOI- *or* EMPLOY-	employant, employé, -ée,	**emploie, -es, -e,** employons, -ez, **emploient,**	employai, employasse,

[1]Also *épeler, chanceler, dételer, ruisseler, cacheter, souffleter, caqueter, feuilleter, coqueter.*

FUTURE AND IMP. IND.	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	SO CONJUGATE.
parlerai, parlais,	parle, -es, -e, parlions, -iez, -ent,	parle, parlons, -ez,	verbs in *-er.*
finirai, finissais,	finisse, -es, -e, finissions, -iez, -ent,	finis, finissons, -ez,	most verbs in *-ir.*
dormirai, dormais,	dorme, -es, -e, dormions, -iez, -ent,	**dors,** dormons, -ez,	endormir, &c.
sentirai, sentais,	sente, sentes, sente, sentions. -iez, sentent,	**sens,** sentons, -ez,	mentir, partir, sortir, se repentir.
servirai, servais,	serve, serves, serve, servions, -iez, servent,	**sers,** servons, -ez,	desservir, &c.
recevrai, recevais,	**reçoive, -es, -e,** recevions, -iez, **reçoivent,**	**reçois,** recevons, -ez,	compounds of *-cevoir,* devoir.
vendrai, vendais,	vende, -es, -e, vendions, -iez, -ent,	vends, vendons, -ez,	rendre, perdre, &c.
craindrai, craignais,	craigne. -es, -e, craignions, -iez, -ent,	**crains,** craignons, -ez,	verbs in *aindre, eindre, oindre.*
joindrai, joignais,	joigne, -es, -e, joignions, -iez, -ent,	**joins,** joignons, -ez,	ditto.
connaîtrai, connaissais,	connaisse, -es, -e, connaissions, -iez, -ent,	connais, connaissons, -ez,	paraître, &c.
instruirai, instruisais,	instruise, -es, -e, instruisions, -iez, -ent,	instruis, instruisons, -ez,	cuire and compounds of -duire, -struire.
mangerai, **mangeais,**	mange, -es, -e, mangions, -iez, mangent,	mange, **mangeons,** -ez,	verbs in *ger.*
avancerai, **avançais,**	avance, -es, -e, avancions, -iez, -ent,	avance, **avançons,** -ez,	verbs in *cer.*
jetterai, jetais,	**jette, jettes, jette,** jetions, -iez, jettent,	**jette,** jetons, jetez,	many in *ler, ter,* as appeler, atteler, &c.[1]
mènerai, menais,	**mène, mènes, mène,** menions, meniez, mènent,	**mène,** menons, -ez,	acheter, geler, lever, peser.[2]
préférerai, préférais,	**préfère, -es, -e,** préférions, -iez, **-fèrent,**	**préfère,** préférons, -ez,	régner, célèbrer, répéter, sécher, &c.
emploierai, employais.	**emploie, -es, -e,** employions, -iez, **-ploient,**	**emploie,** employons, -ez,	verbs in *ayer, oyer, uyer.*

[2] Also *semer, celer, bourreler, écarteler, harceler, modeler, peler, becqueter, décolleter.*

Infinitive.	Present Stems.	Participles.	Present Indicative	Preterite and Imp. Subj.
absoudre, absolve,	ABSOLV-	absolvant, absous,[1]-oute,	absous, -ous, -out, absolvons, ez, ent.	wanting,[2]
acquérir,[3] acquire,	ACQUÉR- *or* ACQUIER-	acquérant, acquis,-quise,	acquiers,[4]-iers,[4]-iert,[4] acquérons, -érez, -ièrent,	acquis, acquisse,
aller, go,	ALL- *or* VA-	allant, allé, allée,	vais, vas, va, allons, allez, vont,	allai, allasse,
assaillir, assail,	ASSAILL-	assaillant, assailli, ie,	assaille, -es, -e, assaillons, -ez, ent,	assaillis, assaillisse,
asseoir,[6] seat,	ASSEY-	asseyant, assis, -ise,	assieds, -ieds, -ied, asseyons, -ez, ent,	assis, assisse,
avoir, have,	AY- *or* AV-	ayant, eu, eue,	ai, as, a, avons, avez, ont,	eus, eusse, eût,
battre, beat,	BAT(T-)	battant, battu, -ue,	bats, bats, bat, battons, battez, battent.	battis, battisse,
boire, drink,	BUV-*or*BOIV-	buvant, bu, -bue,	bois, bois, boit, buvons, -ez, -boivent,	bus, busse,
bouillir, boil (intr.)	BOUILL-	bouillant, bouilli, -ie,	bous, bous, bout, bouillons, -ez, -ent.	bouillis, bouillisse,
circoncire, circumcise,	CIRCONCIS-	circoncisant. circoncis,-ise,	circoncis, -cis, -cit, circoncisons, -ez, -ent,	circoncis, circoncisse,
clore, close,	CLOS-	wanting, clos, close,	clos, clos, clôt,	wanting,
conclure, conclude,	CONCLU-	concluant, conclu -ue,	conclus, conclus, conclut, concluons, -ez, -ent,	conclus, conclusse,
confire, preserve,	CONFIS-	confisant, confit, -te,	confis, confis, confit, confisons, -ez, -ent,	confis, confisse,
coudre, sew,	COUS-	cousant, cousu -ue,	couds, couds, coud, cousons, -ez, -ent,	cousis, cousisse,
couvrir, cover,	COUVR-	couvrant, couvert, -te,	couvre, -vres, -vre, couvrons, -ez, -ent,	couvris, couvrisse,
courir, run,	COUR-	courant, couru, -ue,	cours, cours, court, courons, -ez, -ent,	courus, courusse,
croire, believe,	CROY-*or*CROI-	croyant, cru, -ue,	crois, crois, croit, croyons, -ez, -croient,	crus, crusse,

[1] *Absolu* (absolute), *dissolu* (dissolute), are used only as adjectives; *résoudre* makes past part. *résous* in the sense of breaking up, *résolu* in other senses.

[2] *Résoudre* has pret. def. and imp. subj. *résolus*, *résolusse*.

[3] *Quérir*, used in infinitive only; *querre* found in Lafontaine.

Future and Imp. Ind.	Present Subjunctive.	Imperative.	So Conjugate.
absoudrai, absolvais,	absolve, absolves, absolve, absolvions, -iez, -ent,	absous, absolvons, -ez,	résoudre, dissoudre.
acquerrai, acquérais,	acquière, -ières, -ière, acquérions, -iez, acquièrent,	acquiers, acquérons, -ez,	conquérir, requérir, s'enquérir.
irai,[4] allais,	aille, ailles, aille, allions, alliez, aillent,	va,[5] allons, allez,	
assaillirai, assaillais,	assaille, assailles, assaille, assaillions, assailliez, assaillent,	assaille, assaillons, -ez,	tressaillir,
assiérai, asseyais,	asseye, asseyes, asseye, asseyions, -eyiez, -eyent,	assieds, asseyons, -ez,	rasseoir.
aurai, avais,	aie, aies, ait, ayons, ayez, aient,	aie, ayons, -ez,	
battrai, battais,	batte, battes, batte, battions, battiez, battent,	bats, battons, -ez,	combattre, &c., &c.
boirai, buvais,	boive, boives, boive, buvions, buviez, boivent,	bois, buvons, -ez,	
bouillirai, bouillais,	bouille, bouilles, bouille, bouillions, bouilliez, bouillent,	bous, bouillons, -ez,	ébouillir, débouillir, &c.
circoncirai, circoncisais,	circoncise, -cises, cise, circoncisions, -ciziez, -cisent,	circoncis, circoncisons, -ez,	
clorai, wanting,	close, closes, close, closions, closiez, closent,	clos,	
conclurai, concluais,	conclue, conclues, conclue, concluions, -uïez, -uent,	conclus, concluons, -ez,	exclure.
confirai, confisais,	confise, confises, confise, confisions, confisiez, confisent,	confis, confisons, -ez,	
coudrai, cousais,	couse, couses, couse, cousions, cousiez, cousent,	couds, cousons, -ez,	découdre, &c.
couvrirai, couvrais,	couvre, couvres, couvre, couvrions, couvriez, couvrent,	couvre, couvrons, -ez,	offrir, ouvrir, souffrir.
courrai, courais,	coure, coures, coure, courions, couriez, courent,	cours, courons, -ez,	encourir, &c.
croirai, croyais,	croie, croies, croie, croyions, croyiez, croient,	crois, croyons, -ez,	

[4] Pronounced *a-ki-èrr*, not *akis*. [5] Notice *vas-y* (but *va y donner*), *vas-en*.

[6] There are also forms in *oi*, viz., *assoyant*, *assois*, &c., *assoyons*, &c., *assoie*, &c., *assoirai*.

Infinitive.	Present Stems.	Participles	Present Indicative.	Preterite and Imp. Subj.
croître, grow,	CROISS-	croissant, crû,[2] crue,	croîs, croîs, croît, croissons, ez, ent,	crûs, crusse,
cueillir, gather,	CUEILL-	cueillant, cueilli, -ie,	cueille, -es, -e, cueillons, -ez, -ent,	cueillis, cueillisse,
déchoir, decay,	DÉCHOY- (I-)	wanting, déchu, -ue,	déchois, -ois, -oit, (*or* déchet), déchoyons, -oyez, -oient,	déchus, déchusse,
devoir, owe,	DEV-	devant, dû, due,	dois, dois, doit, devons, devez, doivent,	dus, dusse,
dire, say,	DIS-	disant, dit, dite,	dis, dis, dit, disons, dites,[1] disent,	dis, disse,
échoir, lapse,	ÉCHÉ- *or* ÉCHOI-	échéant, échu, -ue,	échoit, *or* échet, échoient, *or* échéent,	échut, -urent, échût,
éclore, be hatched,	ÉCLOS-	wanting, éclos, éclose,	éclôt, éclosent,	wanting,
écrire, write,	ÉCRIV-	écrivant, écrit, écrite,	écris, écris, écrit, écrivons, -ez, -ent,	écrivis, écrivisse,
envoyer, send,	ENVOY- (I-)	envoyant, envoyé, -ée,	envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyons, -voyez, -voient,	envoyai, envoyasse,
être, be,	ÉT- and SOY-	étant, été,	suis, es, est, sommes, êtes, sont,	fus, fusse,
faillir, fail,	FAILL-	faillant, failli,	(faux, faux,) faut,[2] (faillons, faillez,) faillent,	faillis, faillisse,
faire, make,	FAIS- *or* FASS-	faisant,[3] fait, faite,	fais, fais, fait, faisons, faites, font,	fis, fisse,
falloir, must,	FALL- *or* FAILL-	wanting, fallu,	il faut,	fallut, fallût,
frire,[4] fry,	FRI-	wanting, frit, frite,	fris, fris, frit, Plural wanting,	wanting,
fuir, flee,	FUY- (I-)	fuyant, fui,	fuis, fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient,	fuis, fuisse,
gésir, lie,	GIS-	gisant,	gît, gisons, gisez, gisent,	wanting,
haïr, hate,	HAÏSS-	haïssant, haï, haïe,	hais, hais, hait, haïssons, -ez, -ent,	haïs,[5] haïsse.

[1] *Contredire*, *dédire*, *interdire*, *médire*, *prédire*, make **disez** in 2nd plural pres. ind. and imp.; *redire* makes *redites*. Of compounds of *croître*, only *recroître* has *û* in p.p.

[2] In the sense *to become bankrupt* the conjugation like *finir* is common in the pres. and fut. ind., but *faire faillite* is the usual expression. The future is either *faudrai* or *faillirai*.

Future and Imp. Ind.	Present Subjunctive.	Imperative.	So Conjugate.
croîtrai, croissais,	croisse, croisses, croisse, croissions, croissiez, croissent,	croîs, croissons, croissez,	accroître, &c. p. p. accru.[1]
cueillerai, cueillais,	cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent,	**cueille,** cueillons, cueilliez,	recueillir, accueillir.
décherrai, *or* déchoirai,	**déchoie, déchoies, déchoie,** **déchoyions, -oyiez, -oient,**	déchois, **déchoyons, -ez,**	
devrai, devais,	doive, doives, doive, devions, deviez, doivent,	dois, devons, devez.	
dirai, disais,	dise, dises, dise, disions, disiez, disent,	dis, disons, **dites,**	redire[1], &c.
écherra, *or* **échoira,**	qu'il **échoie,**	wanting,	
éclorai, éclosait,	éclose, éclosent,	wanting,	
écrirai, **écrivais,**	**écrive, écrives, écrive,** **écrivions, -viez, écrivent,**	écris, **écrivons, ez,**	souscrire, décrire, &c.
enverrai, envoyais,	envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyions, envoyiez, envoient,	envoie, envoyons, envoyez,	renvoyer.
serai, **étais,**	**sois, sois, soit,** **soyons, soyez, soient,**	**sois,** **soyons, soyez,**	
faudrai,[2] faillais,	wanting,	wanting,	défaillir.
ferai, faisais,	**fasse, fasses, fasse,** **fassions, fassiez, fassent,**	fais, faisons, **faites,**	refaire, **&c.**
faudra, fallait,	qu'il **faille,**		
frirai, wanting,	wanting,	**fris,**	
fuirai, **fuyais,**	**fuie, fuies, fuie,** **fuyions, fuyiez, fuient,**	fuis, **fuyons, fuyez,**	s'en**fuir.**
gisais,	wanting,	wanting,	
haïrai, haïssais,	haïsse, haïsses, haïsse, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent.	**hais,** haïssons, haïssez,	

[3] Pronounce *faisant* and its derivatives *faisons*, &c., as if spelt *fesant*, *fesons*, **&c.**

[4] Missing parts supplied by the use of *faire frire.*

[5] The plural is written without the circumflex, *haïmes*, *haïtes.*

Infinitive.	Present Stems.	Participles.	Present Indicative.	Preterite & Imp. Subj.
luire, shine,	LUIS-	luisant, lui,	luis, luis, luit, luisons, -ez, -ent,	wanting.[2]
lire, read,	LIS-	lisant, lu, lue,	lis, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent,	lus, lusse,
maudire, curse,	MAUDISS-	-dissant, maudit, dite,	maudis, maudis, maudit, maudissons, ez, ent,	maudis, maudisse,
mettre, put,	METT-	mettant, mis, mise,	mets, mets, met, mettons, -ez, -ent,	mis, misse,
moudre, grind,	MOUL-	moulant, moulu, -ue,	mouds, mouds, moud, moulons, -ez, -ent,	moulus, moulusse,
mourir, die,	MOUR- *or* MEUR-	mourant, mort, -te	meurs, meurs, meurt, mourons, -ez, meurent,	mourus, mourusse,
mouvoir, move,	MOUV- *or* MEUV-	mouvant, mû, -mue,	meus, meus, meut, mouvons, -ez, meuvent,	mus, musse,
naître, be born,	NAISS-	naissant, né, née,	nais, nais, naît, naissons, -ez, -ent,	naquis, naquisse,
nuire, hurt,	NUIS-	nuisant, nui,	nuis, nuis, nuit, nuisons, -ez, -ent,	nuisis, nuisisse,
offrir, offer,	OFFR-	offrant, offert, -te,	offre, offres, offre, offrons, offrez, offrent,	offris, offrisse,
ouvrir, open,	OUVR-	ouvrant, ouvert, -te,	ouvre, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrons, -ez, -ent,	ouvris, ouvrisse,
plaire, please,	PLAIS-	plaisant, plu,	plais, plais, plaît, plaisons, -ez, -ent,	plus, plusse,
pleuvoir, rain,	PLEUV-	pleuvant, plu,	il pleut,	plut, plût,
pourvoir, provide,	POUR- VOY- (I-)	-voyant, pourvu, ue,	pourvois, -vois, -voit, pourvoyons, ez, voient,	pourvus, pourvusse,
pouvoir, can,	POUV- *or* PEUV-	pouvant, pu,	peux *or* puis, peux, peut, pouvons, -ez, peuvent,	pus, pusse,
prendre, take,	PREN- *or* PRENN-	prenant, pris, prise,	prends, prends, prend, prenons, -ez, prennent,	pris, prisse,
prévaloir, prevail,	PRÉVAL-	prévalant, prévalu,	prévaux, vaux, vaut, prévalons, -ez, -ent,[1]	prévalus, prévalusse
rire, laugh,	RI-	riant, ri,	ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient,	ris, risse,
rompre, break,	ROMP-	rompant, rompu, -ue,	romps, romps, rompt, rompons, -ez, -ent,	rompis, rompisse,

[1] Differs from *valoir* in singular and 3rd plural pres. subj.

Future and Imp. Ind.	Present Subjunctive.	Imperative.	So Conjugate.
luirai, luisais,	luise, luises, luise, luisions, luisiez, luisent,	wanting.	
lirai, lisais,	lise, lises, lise, lisions, lisiez, lisent,	lis, lisons, lisez,	relire, élire, &c.
maudirai, maudissais,	maudisse, -disses, -disse, maudissions, -iez, -ent,	maudis, maudissons, -ez,	
mettrai, mettais,	mette, mettes, mette, mettions, mettiez, mettent,	mets, mettons, mettez.	remettre, &c.
moudrai, moulais,	moule, moules, moule, moulions, -iez, moulent,	mouds, moulons, -ez,	remoudre, &c.
mourrai, mourais,	meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent,	meurs, mourons, mourez.	
mouvrai, mouvais,	meuve, meuves, meuve, mouvions, mouviez, meuvent,	meus, mouvons, mouvez,	émouvoir, p. p. ému.
naîtrai, naissais,	naisse, naisses, naisse, naissions, naissiez, naissent,	nais, naissons, naissez.	renaître, &c.
nuirai, nuisais,	nuise, nuises, nuise, nuisions, nuisiez, nuisent,	nuis, nuisons, nuisez.	
offrirai, offrais,	offre, offres, offre, offrions, offriez, offrent,	offre, offrons, offrez.	couvrir, &c.
ouvrirai, ouvrais,	ouvre, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrions, ouvriez, ouvrent,	ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez.	couvrir, &c.
plairai, plaisais,	plaise, plaises, plaise. plaisions, plaisiez, plaisent,	plais, plaisons, plaisez.	déplaire, &c.
pleuvra, pleuvait.	qu'il pleuve.		
pourvoirai, pourvoyais,	pourvoie, -oies, pourvoie. pourvoyions, -iez, -oient,	pourvois. pourvoyons, -ez.	
pourrai, pouvais,	puisse, puisses, puisse, puissions, -iez, puissent,	wanting.	
prendrai, prenais,	prenne, prennes, prenne, prenions, -iez, prennent,	prends, prenons, -ez.	comprendre, &c.
prévaudrai, prévalais,	prévale, prévales, prévale, prévalions, -iez, prévalent,[1]	prévaux, prévalons, -ez.	
rirai, riais,	rie, ries, rie, riions, riiez, rient,	ris, rions, riez.	sourire.
romprai, rompais,	rompe, rompes, rompe, rompions, rompiez, rompent,	romps, rompons, rompez.	corrompre, interrompre.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT STEMS.	PARTICIPLES.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	PRETERITE AND IMP. SUBJ.
savoir, know,	SACH- *or* SAV-	sachant, su,	sais, sais, sait, savons, -ez, -ent,	sus, susse,
seoir,[1] sit, suit,	SEY- *or* SIÉ-	seyant, séant sis, sise,	sied, siéent,	wanting,
souffrir, suffer,	SOUFFR-	souffrant, souffert, -te,	souffre, souffres, souffre souffrons, -ez, -ent,	souffris, souffrisse,
suffire, suffice,	SUFFIS-	suffisant, suffi,	suffis, suffis, suffit, suffisons, -ez, -ent,	suffis, suffisse,
suivre, follow,	SUIV-	suivant, suivi, -ie,	suis, suis, suit, suivons, -ez, -ent,	suivis, suivisse,
surseoir, postpone,	SURSOY-(I-)	sursoyant, sursis, -sise,	sursois, sursois, sursoit sursoyons, -ez, soient,	sursis, sursisse,
taire, keep silent,	TAIS-	taisant, tu, tue,	tais, tais, tait, taisons, -ez, -ent,	tus, tusse,
tenir,[2] hold,	TEN- *or* TIEN-	tenant, tenu, -ue,	tiens, tiens, tient, tenons, -ez, tiennent,	tins, tinsse,
traire, milk,	TRAY- (I-)	trayant, trait, traite,	trais, trais, trait, trayons, -ez, traient,	wanting,
vaincre, conquer,	VAINQU-	vainquant, vaincu, -ue,	vaincs,[3] vaincs,[3] vainc,[3] vainquons, -ez, -ent,	vainquis, vainquisse,
valoir, be worth,	VAL- *or* VAILL-	valant, valu, -ue,	vaux, vaux, vaut, valons, -ez, -ent,	valus, valusse,
venir, come,	VEN- *or* VIEN-	venant, venu, venue,	viens, viens, vient, venons, -ez, viennent,	vins,[3] vinsse,
vêtir,[4] clothe,	VÊT-	vêtant, vêtu, vêtue,	vêts, vêts, vêt, vêtons, -ez, -ent,	vêtis, vêtisse,
vivre, to live,	VIV-	vivant, vécu,	vis, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent,	vécus, vécusse-
voir, see,	VOY- (I-)	voyant, vu, vue,	vois, vois, voit, voyons, -ez, voient,	vis, visse,
vouloir, wish,	VOUL-	voulant, voulu, -ue,	veux, veux, veut, voulons, -ez, veulent,	voulus, voulusse,

[1] *seoir* in the sense *to seat* is used only in *séant* (of a court of justice), and *sis*, *sise*, situated. *Sieds-toi* is sometimes used for *assieds-toi*.

[2] Conjugate the pret. def. *tins*, *tins*, *tint*, *tinmes*, *tintes*, *tinrent*, the imp. subj. *tinsse*, *tinsses*, *tînt*, &c.

[3] pronounced *vain*.

Future and Imp. Ind.	Present Subjunctive.	Imperative.	So Conjugate.
saurai, **savais,**	**sache, saches, sache,** **sachions, -iez, sachent,**	**sache,** **sachons, -ez,**	
siéra, -ont, **seyait, -ent,**	**siée, siéent,**	wanting,	
souffrirai, souffrais,	souffre, souffres, souffre, souffrions, souffriez, souffrent,	**souffre,** souffrons, -ez.	**ouvrir,** &c.
suffirai, suffisais,	suffise, suffises, suffise, suffisions, suffisiez, suffisent,	suffis, suffisons, -ez,	
suivrai, suivais,	suive, suives, suive, suivions, suiviez, suivent,	**suis,** suivons, -ez,	poursuivre, s'ensuivre.
surseoirai, **sursoyais,**	**sursoie, sursoies, sursoie,** **sursoyions, -iez, -oient,**	**sursois,** **sursoyons, -ez,**	
tairai, taisais,	taise, taises, taise, taisions, taisiez, taisent,	tais, taisons, -ez,	
tiendrai, tenais,	**tienne, tiennes, tienne,** tenions, teniez, **tiennent,**	**tiens,** tenons, -ez,	**venir** and compounds.
trairai,	**traie, traies, traie,** **trayions, trayiez, traient,**	trais, **trayons, -ez**	abstraire, soustraire, &c.
vaincrai, vainquais,	**vainque, -es, vainque,** **vainquions, -iez, -ent,**	vaincs, **vainquons, -ez,**	convaincre.
vaudrai, valais,	vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, **vaillent,**	**vaux,** valons, -ez,	équivaloir.
viendrai, venais,	**vienne, viennes, vienne,** venions, veniez, **viennent,**	**viens,** venons, -ez,	**tenir,** &c.
vêtirai, vêtais,	vête, vêtes, vête, vêtions, vêtiez, vêtent,	vêts, vêtons, -ez,	revêtir.[4]
vivrai, vivais,	vive, vives, vive, vivions, viviez, vivent,	**vis,** vivons, -ez,	
verrai,[5] **voyais,**	voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient,	vois, voyons, -ez,	entrevoir, prévoir, (fut.) prévoirai.
voudrai, voulais,	**veuille, veuilles, veuille,** voulions, vouliez, **veuillent,**	**veuille,**[6] **veuillez,**	

[4] *dévêtir* is like *finir* except in past part. *dévêtu*. So also is *vêtir* itself in some modern writers, but Littré disapproves.

[5] pronounced *vè-rai*.

[6] Or in the sense of exercising will, resolving, *veux, voulons, voulez.*

SYNTAX.

SYNTAX.

I.—First Concord.—Place of the Nominative.

1. **FIRST CONCORD.** A verb agrees with its nominative case or subject in number and person :—

je parlerai ; mon frère parlera.

2. **SUBJECTS COUPLED BY** *ET.* Verb generally in the plural (App. VI.):—

La muse et la bergère ont *le même langage.*
Saint-Lambert.

If the nominative consists of a noun and a pronoun, or of two pronouns, the verb is put in the worthier person :—

Vous et votre ouvrage méritez *d'être parfaits.*
Voltaire.

But the verb is in the singular :—

(1.) When the two nouns denote the same person or thing.

Quand le prince des pasteurs et le pontife éternel apparaîtra.

(2.) When the verb precedes its nominatives and the first is more important.

Que peut *servir ici l'Egypte et ses faux dieux?*
Boileau.

(3.) When the writer wishes the two words to form one idea.

Le bonheur et le malheur *des hommes ne* dépend *pas moins de leur humeur que de leur fortune.*
La Rochefoucauld.

Obs. With l'un et l'autre the usage varies.[1]

---

[1] The following story will remind the reader of Mr. Browning's "Grammarian's Funeral":—"Le grammairien Beauzée était à son lit de mort ; un de ses amis, grammairien comme lui, vint le voir.

L'un et l'autre *à ces mots* **ont** *levé le poignard.*
Voltaire.

Émilie et César, **l'un et l'autre** *me* **gêne.**
Corneille.

3. **SUBJECTS COUPLED BY** *OU* **OR** *NI . . . NI.*

(1.) If by **ou**, the verb is generally, but not necessarily, singular :—

Le bien ou le mal se moissonne,
Selon qu'on sème ou le mal ou le bien. Lamotte.

La peur ou le besoin *font tous les mouvements de la souris.* Buffon.

(2.) If by **ni . . . ni**, singular or plural, according to the author's point of view.

Ni l'or ni la grandeur *ne nous* **rendent** *heureux*—*i.e.* both fail to make us happy. La Fontaine.

Ni mon ami ni moi *n'***avons** *connu aucun des Mauprat.*
G. Sand.

Ni son cœur ni le mien *ne* **peut** *être perfide.*
Voltaire.

4. **NOUNS COUPLED BY** *COMME*, &c. If two nouns be connected by **comme, de même que, ainsi que, aussi bien que**, &c., the verb should, strictly speaking, agree with the former, but usage varies.**(App. VI.)**

Rome, aussi bien que moi, *vous* **donna** *son suffrage.*
Corneille.

La santé, comme la fortune, *retirent leurs faveurs à ceux qui en abusent.* Saint-Evremont.

5. *CE* **AS NOMINATIVE. ATTRACTION.** Often **ce** is the grammatical nominative to a verb, the real subject

---

'Comment allez-vous?' lui dit-il. 'Mon ami,' répondit Beauzée, 'je m'en vais . . . ou je m'en vas; l'un et l'autre se dit.' Et ne voulant pas, même en mourant, avoir une faute, un simple oubli de syntaxe à se reprocher, il ajouta 'ou se disent' et il expira."—Quoted by BENEKE.

coming afterwards. In such cases the verb generally, but not always, agrees with the real subject if a plural noun or pronoun of the third person (cf. § 68 and App. VI.)

Ce que nous aimons le mieux des grands écrivains **ce** *ne* **sont** *pas* **leurs ouvrages, c'est eux-mêmes.**
Lamartine.

Ce sera nos descendants *qui nous jugeront.*—Planche.

Obs. 1. Notice **c'est nous, c'est vous,** and generally, but not always, **ce sont eux.**

Obs. 2. **Si ce n'est, fût-ce, sera-ce, ç'a été, c'eût été** are not made plural if a plural follows.

6. **COLLECTIVE NOUNS AND NOUNS OF MULTITUDE.** A noun denoting a number of persons or things may lead us to think of them as combined in one body, and acting as a single individual; it is then called a Collective Noun (*collectif général*). Or it may denote a number of persons or things without any such idea of collective action; it may, in fact, merely take the place of a numeral, or of a word like *some, many;* it is then called a noun of multitude (*collectif partitif*). The same word may, according to the context, be either.

7. **NUMBER OF VERB WITH THE ABOVE.** Nouns of multitude, followed by a genitive plural, or after which a genitive plural may easily be supplied, require a plural verb :—

Un groupe *de ces vieillards se* **consolaient** *entre eux* (each acting separately).

Une troupe *de nymphes couronnées de fleurs* **nageaient** *en foule derrière le char* (*i.e.*, many nymphs). Fénelon.

Un petit nombre se sauvèrent *dans les marais* (where *of them* can be easily supplied). J.-J. Rousseau.

Notice especially words without article, like **quantité, bon nombre.** The phrases **cette espèce de, toute sorte de** followed by a plural are similarly treated.

Collective nouns take a singular verb —

Une société *d'hommes bienfaisants* a *établi cette caisse d'épargne* (acting as a body).

La moitié, *half*, followed by a genitive plural, may take either a singular or a plural verb; other fractions, le tiers, le quart, &c., take a singular verb. (App. VI.)

8. **ADVERBS OF QUANTITY.** La plupart, and adverbs of quantity, as beaucoup, un peu, tant, combien (which are really nouns), que, followed by a genitive plural, *must* have a plural verb :—

O combien d'actions, combien d'exploits *célèbres* Sont demeurés *sans gloire au milieu des ténèbres!*

Corneille.

Tout ce *qu'il y a* d'hommes sont *presque toujours emportés à croire non par la preuve, mais par l'agrément.*

Pascal.

9. **LE PEU DE**, followed by a genitive plural, takes a singular or plural verb, according as the stress is laid on *peu* or on the noun after it :—

Le peu de difficultés *qu'il a eu à surmonter* l'a *rendu trop* ſlardi (the fewness, the comparative absence of difficulties).

Le peu de leçons *que j'ai prises* ont *suffi* (the lessons though few). (App. VI.)

10. **IMPERSONAL VERBS** to which the neuter pronoun il is the nominative are used in French much as in English, as il gèle, it freezes, il fait chaud, it is warm, &c.

The most common impersonal is il y a, *there is* or *there are.* Remember that it is never made plural.

Il y aura des vices *tant qu'*il y aura des hommes (as long as).

10*a*. **ORDINARY VERBS USED IMPERSONALLY.** The real subject is put after the verb, and il before the verb. Whether the real subject be singular or plural, *the verb, being impersonal, remains in the third singular.*

Il se trouve *là* **de belles choses** (there are to be found there . . . . .). Acad.

Rarement **il arrive des révolutions** *chez les peuples heureux* (revolutions rarely happen . . . . .). Boiste.

Vous ne craignez pas
Que du fond de l'abîme, entr'ouvert sous vos pas,
Il *ne* **sorte** *à l'instant* **des feux** *qui vous embrasent* (that fires may issue). Racine.

Obs. This usage is commoner than the corresponding English with *there*.

11. **INVERSION IN INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.** The simplest way of expressing interrogation is to put the nominative after the verb. When the subject is a noun this cannot always be done, and the order then is: (1) subject, (2) verb, (3) pronoun repeating the subject, *e.g.*, **Mon père vient-il?**—when **mon père** is the subject, **vient** the verb, and **il** repeats **mon père.**

We have the following cases:—

(1.) The subject is a personal pronoun or **ce.** In this case the subject always follows the verb.

Plaît-il?—Que faites-vous?
Sont-ce *vos enfants?—Ne l'***avez-vous** *pas vu?*

(2.) The subject is a noun (or a pronoun like *quelqu'un, personne*, &c.), and the question is asked *without* an interrogative pronoun or adverb. The second method must then be adopted.

La mort est-elle *un mal?* **La vie est-elle** *un bien?* Crébillon.

(3.) The subject is a noun (or a pronoun like *quelqu'un, personne*) and the question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb.[1] If the verb has no object (except a simple pronoun) or other words depending on it, either construction is admissible:—

A quelle heure **doit partir le train?**
A quelle heure **le train doit-il** *partir?*
Quelles **peuvent être** *maintenant vos occupations dans une solitude aussi profonde?* De Maistre.

[1] After *pourquoi* the second construction only can be used.

À quoi la force doit-elle *servir qu'à défendre la raison?* Bossuet.

If the verb has an object or other words depending on it, we must generally use the second construction :—

Combien un avocat *bien payé par avance* **trouve-t-il** *plus juste la cause dont il est chargé.* Pascal.

(4.) The subject of the verb may be an interrogative pronoun or a noun qualified by an interrogative adjective. There is then no inversion.

Qui peut *répondre de son courage physique, s'il n'a essuyé le feu des balles?* Ste-Beuve.

(5.) Besides these two forms of interrogation we find very frequently periphrases with **est-ce que** (especially with the first singular) and **n'est-ce pas.**

(6.) A question is often asked, especially in conversation, without any inversion, being merely indicated by the tone of the voice. Perhaps this is the commonest way :—

Tu ne m'avais pas entendu *entrer? C'est un peu fort de lire le journal à ce point-là.* Augier.

Est-ce que is rather an emphatic way of asking a question.

11*a*. **INVERSION AFTER** *PEUT-ÊTRE, AUSSI*, &c. Sentences beginning with **aussi** (so), **à peine, peut-être, en vain, du moins, au moins, non-seulement, encore, toujours** (at all events, after all), **à plus forte raison** (*à fortiori*) are generally, but not always, treated exactly like interrogative sentences.

À peine avait-il été conclu, *qu'une grande question s'était élevée.* (*Il* refers to *le traité.*) Rémusat.

Du moins ces libertés trouvent-elles *leurs principes écrits dans ses délibérations.*

Aussi rencontre-t-on, *à chaque pas, des traits qui ne sont pas du Nord.*[1] Ampère.

12. **INVERSION IN DEPENDENT SENTENCES.**

(1.) In relative sentences, of which the relative is not the subject, especially if the subject is long or has words depending upon it.

---

[1] But **aussi l'on peut** *imaginer quel triomphe ce fut que sa rentrée dans Orléans.* Barante.

Ce n'était pas le bruit de bombe et de mitraille,
Que *vingt ans sous ses pieds* avait fait la bataille.
V. Hugo.

Quelques grands arbres, que faisaient *abattre et brûler* des marchands, *profitant du trouble.* De Vigny.

(2.) In indirect questions, beginning with quel (pronoun[1]) or ce que. Also sometimes when they begin with qui, que :

Qu'on se figure ce qu'eût été, *dans l'Angleterre à demi-conquise,* la situation *d'une armée française victorieuse, mais coupée de son empire par une mer et par une flotte maîtresse des mers.* Ste-Beuve.

Voyez quelle peut *être* la situation *d'un citoyen dans ces républiques.* Montesquieu.

(3.) In conditional or concessive sentences beginning with quelque . . . que, tout . . . que, or in which si or quoique is omitted.

Quelque *mince* que soit un cheveu, *il fait de l'ombre.*

Dussé-je, *après dix ans, voir mon palais en cendres,*
Je ne balance point. Racine.

(4.) After c'est....que, followed by an intransitive verb, the nominative to which is a noun.

C'est *des contraires* que résulte l'harmonie *du monde.*
B. de Saint-Pierre.

12*a.* **MISCELLANEOUS INVERSIONS.** Inversion also takes place :—

(1.) In phrases like dit-il, répondit-on, &c., inserted parenthetically.

(2.) In sentences expressing a wish.

Périssent les beautés *aux empires fatales.* Poinsinet.

(3.) In sentences beginning with *ainsi, ici, là, déjà,* &c., the nominative being a noun, is sometimes, as in English, put after the verb.

De là sont venues les guerres civiles.

A la tête de l'échelle de notre globe est placé l'homme, *chef-d'œuvre de la création terrestre.* Buffon.

---

[1] *Quel* is a *pronoun,* when it does not qualify a noun.

(4.) In a few phrases like **viennent ensuite, survint alors, reste donc.**

Sont masculins: *les noms des métaux, des arbres,* &c.
Martin se hasarda le premier; puis **vinrent** Clémence, **la veuve,** &c. Souvestre.

13. **ELLIPSIS OF NOMINATIVE.** The nominative of the neuter pronoun is omitted in certain phrases.

*Que m'***importe?**—**Reste** *à savoir.*
Je m'en irai, messieurs, quand bon me **semblera.** Courier.
Suffit *qu'entre mes mains vos affaires soient mises.* Molière.

In the seventeenth century the other personal pronouns are occasionally omitted, as they constantly were in older French.[1]

Non **ferai,** *de par tous les diables.* Molière.

13*a*. **PLEONASM.** Phrases like **s'écria-t-il, répondit-il,** are often inserted when there is already a nominative in the sentence unsupplied with a verb.

Alors **le sublime orateur,** *élevant cette voix qui faisait trembler les rois de Macédoine: Dieux protecteurs d'Athènes,* **s'écria t-il,** *voyez-vous,* &c.?

Obs. The insertion of **s'écria-t-il, dit-il,** &c., after the first few words of a speech in direct oration, is very common in French, as is the corresponding use of *inquit* in Latin.

II.—Articles and Nouns.

14. **DEFINITE ARTICLE IN FRENCH, NOT IN ENGLISH.** The definite article is used in French before certain nouns that do not require it in English, provided they

[1] It should be remembered that the person-endings really represent personal pronouns, though in a mutilated form. The absence of a personal pronoun before the verb is therefore, strictly speaking, the normal usage, its insertion a modern innovation. Except in a few survivals the innovation has gained the day.

are used in the most general way. If used in a less general way they often take the partitive article.

(1.) Abstract nouns, used in the most general way—

La honte *suit toujours un lâche désespoir.* Crébillon.

J'apprends **la chimie, la pharmacie, la chirurgie.** Beaumarchais.

But, *Ils sont peu capables de réussir dans tout ce qui demande* **de l'adresse** *et* **de l'habileté.** De Staël.

(2.) Collective nouns like **la société, la postérité.**

(3.) Names of substances, as *iron*, meaning iron in general, not merely some iron—

Le fer *est plus utile que* **l'or.**

But, *On prend plus de mouches avec* **du miel** *qu'avec* **du vinaigre.**

(4.) Nouns denoting classes, used in the plural—

Les hommes (*i.e.*, mankind) *sont plutôt faibles que méchants.*

Je ne crois pas **aux revenants** (in ghosts). Sandeau.

Obs. 1. The two languages agree in using the definite article with a *singular* noun denoting a class.

Le cheval *est le meilleur ami* **du laboureur.**

L'homme furieux *n'entend pas raison.*

(In English either *the* or *a* madman).

Obs. 2. For the omission of the definite article where nouns of the above classes form the complement see § 19, *Obs.* 3.

14*a*. **ARTICLE OMITTED AFTER** *DE, AVEC, SANS.* *Abstract* nouns following **de, avec, sans,** mostly lose their general character, and take no article:—

Elle est accablée **de douleur.**—*Il étudie* **avec zèle.**

Benjamin est **sans force,** *et Juda* **sans vertu.** Racine.

But the sense *may* require an article.

Sans la crainte *et* **sans la pitié,** *point de tragédie.* De Staël.

Avec de la bonne foi, *on va le plus loin.*

15. **IDIOMS WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.**

(1.) In distributive expressions, where we use *a* or *an*, as *deux francs* **la bouteille.**

(2.) In speaking of parts of the body, where we use a possessive adjective, as *elle leva* les **mains** (her hands) ; *elle avait des larmes* **aux yeux** (in her eyes).

(3.) After the verb *avoir*, in describing essential parts of a person or thing, especially parts of the human body, as *il a* la **barbe blanche**, **l'esprit pénétrant**, **le nez retroussé**, *cet arbre a* **l'écorce tendre**, where we should say *a* white beard, *a* keen intellect.[1] In speaking of *possessions*, the French do as we do, and say *il a un petit chien*.

(4.) Before titles, as le *Maréchal Vaillant*, le *Docteur Nélaton*; notice also *Monsieur* le *Comte*, &c., in addressing a nobleman.[2]

(5.) Occasionally to form a vocative—

La vieille, *où peut-on se cacher ici !* V. Hugo.

(6.) In certain exclamations—

Oh ! **l'heureuse pensée** *qu'eut le grand Napoléon d'enrégimenter les beaux-arts !* Courier.

(7.) In one or two phrases the definite article is practically a demonstrative ; *de* la **sorte**, in that way ; *pour* le **coup**, this time.

16. **DEFINITE ARTICLE WITH GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES.** Names of *continents*, *countries*, *provinces*, *mountains* and certain *islands*,[3] mostly take the definite article, except after the preposition **en**, and in certain cases after **de**. Names of *rivers* and *mountains* always take the definite article —**l'Asie**, **dans la Bretagne**, **vers la Sardaigne**, **la Sicile**,

---

[1] The rule is not universal : *il a de beaux yeux*, *un menton pointu*, is correct. Nor does it apply if a relative pronoun follows.

[2] But **Maître**, addressed to lawyers, has no article, and **Sœur**, **Père**, &c., often omit it.

[3] *Grenade*, *Bade*, *Nassau*, *Mayence*, *Naples*, *Berne* (the canton), &c., where the name of the province or country is the same as that of its capital, have no article. But *le Hanovre*, *le Luxembourg*. One often says *le duché de Nassau*, *le canton de Berne*, &c. Groups of islands, as *les Antilles*, *les Açores*, of course take the article, and so do the following names of single islands :—*la Corse*, *la Sicile*, *l'Irlande*, *l'Islande*, &c., also some of the West India islands, not all large, *la Jamaïque*, *la Barbade*, *la Dominique*, &c.

la Jamaïque, la Saxe, la Tamise, les Cévennes, le Jura, le Righi, le Liban, le Vésuve, le fleuve du Rhône.

Obs. 1. But, of course, when the name of a mountain stands in apposition to **mont**, the article is not repeated, as **le mont Olympe**. Nor is the article used in compounds like **Châlons-sur-Marne, Bar-sur-Aube**. We have, however, *Francfort-sur-le-Mein, sur l'Oder*.

Obs. 2. The names of *towns* and most *islands* stand, as in English, without the article, as **Corfou, Malte, Rhodes, Ste-Hélène, Chypre, Londres**, except, of course, in phrases like **l'Athènes** *de l'Allemagne*, and when an adjective precedes, as **le vieux Paris**. In such cases, the proper name has become a common noun.

Obs. 3. It should be remembered that the article is an essential part :—

(1.) Of a few names of towns, **la Rochelle** (the rock), **la Haye** (the enclosure), **l'Ecluse** (the sluice, Sluys), **le Bourget, le Mans**,[1] **le Caire, la Mecque, la Havane**.

(2.) Of such names as **la Grande-Bretagne, les Etats-Unis**.

(3.) Of names of countries of the masculine gender or of the plural number, as **le Japon**,[2] **les Indes, au Chili, au Pérou**, especially names of distant countries.

17. **GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES WITH *DE*.** When the names of *continents, countries*, &c., are preceded by **de**, the following are the rules:—

(1.) If the name be masculine singular, or plural of either gender, the article is generally used, whatever be the meaning of **de**, whether *from*, or simply a sign of the genitive.

(2.) If the name be, as most are, feminine singular, the article is inserted only when **de** is a sign of the *possessive, partitive* or *objective* genitive, as—*la dévastation de l'Amérique, les libertés de l'Angleterre, la première vue de l'Italie, le midi de l'Allemagne*—but *le Royaume-Uni de Grande-Bretagne et d'Irlande*, where the genitive forms an apposition.

---

[1] The genitive is *du Mans*, &c. The rule does not apply to names of persons, as *de Le Nôtre*.

[2] But *des vins de Portugal, le roi de Danemark*.

(3.) The article is omitted with a feminine name of a country, (1) when de means *from*, or (2) when de and the noun following it could be replaced by an adjective without detriment to the sense. The genitive after a noun denoting a title, as *king*, *duke*, &c., falls under this latter head. Thus we have *quelques Etats* d'Amérique, equivalent to *quelques Etats américains ; la Révolution* d'Angleterre, equivalent to *la Révolution anglaise ; du vin* d'Espagne, *au retour* d'Italie, *la Turquie* d'Europe, *l'empereur* d'Allemagne, *le traité* de Westphalie, *la guerre de la succession* d'Autriche.[1]

Notice especially phrases like *l'armée* d'Italie the (French) army serving in Italy, while *l'armée* de l'Italie is used of the army of the Kingdom of Italy.

18. **OMISSION OF THE ARTICLE.** There are a number of cases in which the article, though often used in English, is omitted in French. It will be found that most of these occur when the noun does duty in forming an equivalent for some other part of speech, viz. :—

(1.) A noun in apposition in the predicate, or with de or à, may take the place of an *adjective.*

(2.) A noun with a preposition may serve as an *adverb.*

(3.) A noun with avoir, or some other common verb, may take the place of a *verb.*

19. **INDEFINITE ARTICLE OMITTED IN APPOSITION.** The indefinite article, used in English before a noun in apposition, is generally omitted in French, because then the second noun is really an adjective qualifying the first. This is especially the case after comme.

D'Aubigné, calviniste opiniâtre ; *Montluc,* catholique cruel, *nous peignent les deux camps.* Ste-Beuve.

Je ne leur parle pas comme vrai croyant. Montesquieu.

But the indéfinite article (in the plural the partitive article)

[1] The usage in these matters is very difficult to settle. Thus we say *venir de France*, but *sortir de la France ; Histoire de France*, but *Histoire littéraire de la France.*

is inserted if the second noun is intended to be more important than the first.

En effet, ce n'est plus Romulus qui a frappé Rémus, c'est Céler, **un serviteur,** *j'allais dire* **un courtisan** *trop empressé.* J.-J. Ampère.

Here the name *Céler* is of little importance, the contrast being between *Romulus* and ***un serviteur.***

Obs. 1. The use of a noun with qualifying words in apposition to a sentence, is a characteristic idiom.

Tous les organes du parti clérical célébrèrent à grand bruit le triomphe remporté par les ministres. "L'opinion publique s'est prononcée, la France a fait entendre sa voix!" s'écrièrent-ils. **Tristes mensonges** *que se font à eux-mêmes tous les gouvernements. . . .* Vaulabelle.

Obs. 2. If the noun in apposition *precedes*, as is often the case in French, it has no article.

Moins peintre *que La Bruyère, Vauvenargues a un plus grand dessin.* Ste-Beuve.

Obs. 3. French and English agree pretty well as to the use of the *definite* article in apposition. In cases where its insertion is a matter of indifference in English, it is omitted in French.

Mabille, **dernière héritière** *du nom de Saint-Jean.* De Rémusat.

Valérius Publicola, **le grand Sabin,** *offrit les mêmes sacrifices.* J.-J. Ampère.

19*a*. **INDEFINITE ARTICLE OMITTED WITH THE APPOSITIVE COMPLEMENT.** The complement after **être, devenir, paraître, être censé, être élu,** &c., is generally without the indefinite article in cases where that article would stand in English. This applies especially to names denoting *nationality, profession, rank,* &c.:—

Vous êtes **père,** *monsieur le Marquis.* Sandeau.

Elle est **Espagnole,** *d'ailleurs, elle n'a pas l'accent vénitien.* G. Sand.

Vivent les collèges d'où l'on **sort si habile homme.** Molière

L'aîné devint marchand mercier. Le Sage.
But *On m'a dit que sa mère était* une Bohémienne. G. Sand.

In fact, the substantive *without* article standing in the predicate denotes, as a true adjective, a quality of the subject; the substantive *with* article the class to which it belongs.[1] Notice that (1) after c'est, when *ce* is unemphatic, the complement generally has an article; (2) the complement mostly takes an article when qualified by an adjective or a genitive.

Obs. 1. After soit...soit, rendered *whether...or*, the complement has no article.

Soit raison, soit caprice,
Rome ne l'attend pas pour son impératrice. Racine.

Obs. 2. As in the case of apposition, English and French agree pretty closely in the use of the *definite* article with the complement.

Obs. 3. The second accusative after verbs of *calling*, *thinking*, *making* (but see § 117*a*), is often without article where there would be an indefinite article in English.[2]

La fortune, en le faisant citoyen *d'Athènes et* consul *de Rome*..... Chateaubriand.

20. **GENITIVE OR DATIVE USED AS AN ADJECTIVE.** French does not possess, like English and German, the power of forming compound nouns by the juxtaposition of two simple nouns, as *gunpowder*, *teapot*, Buchhändler. Nor has it the useful English idiom which uses a noun as an adjective, as in a *church tower*, *oatmeal cakes*.[3] The French equivalents for such expressions are formed by the free use of de and à; de being used when material or quality is in question, à when the relation between the

---

[1] See *Brinkmann's Syntax des Französischen und Englischen*, vol. i., p. 170, to which we are indebted for several examples in this chapter. He ascribes the difference between the two languages to a difference of national character. The Englishman, he says, tries to fit every one into some group or other, and looks upon him as a member of it; the Frenchman thinks of a man as a man first of all, his profession, nationality, &c., being mere accidents.

[2] It does, however, form compounds of a verb and a noun, as *essuie-mains*, *abat-jour*. See Accidence, § 52.

[3] Notice *armer chevalier*, *être reçu docteur*.

two nouns is less definite. In these combinations the article is omitted. Thus the French for oatmeal cakes is **des gâteaux de farine d'avoine**; gunpowder, **la poudre à canon**; a windmill, **un moulin à vent**; a long-bearded, bare-footed monk, **un moine à pieds nus et à longue barbe**; a penny loaf, **un pain à deux sous**; a church tower, **une tour d'église**; a vacuum brake. **un frein à vide**, &c. The use of **de** without the article in many such adjectival expressions calls for special notice, as—

Ses grandes qualités **de capitaine** (talents for command, qualities characteristic of a general).

La réputation **d'orateur** *que Bolingbroke a laissée.*

Ch. de Rémusat.

Diderot dans ses pièces mettait l'affectation du naturel à la place de l'affectation **de convention** (the affectation of naturalness in the place of conventional affectation).

Mme de Stael.

Again, in translating a passage like "Elizabeth was afraid of forgetting the dignity of the Queen, while she indulged the affection of the woman," one would say *sa dignité de reine*, her dignity as a queen.

Obs. If, however, the second noun denotes something definite or well known, the article is inserted, as *Argus* **aux cent yeux**. This is especially the case in many names of dishes and household utensils, *des beignets* **aux pommes**, *le pot* **au lait**. (For further details, see on the Dative, § 157.)

21. **NOUNS WITH PREPOSITIONS FORMING ADVERBS.** Many nouns with prepositions are equivalent to adverbs, and then generally stand without the article. Such are:—

sans merci, ruthlessly.
à dessein, on purpose.
de front, side by side.
de retour, home again.
de grâce, pray!
par hasard, accidentally.
à volonté, choose for yourself.
en sens contraire, in an opposite direction.
tout à coup, suddenly.
à force de, by dint of.
de suite, so on.
tout de suite, immediately.
de gré ou de force, willy-nilly.

par cœur, by heart.
en échange, in exchange.
à fond (*couler*), to the bottom.
à genoux, on one's knees.
en route, on the way.
de vive force, by main force.
à table, at dinner.
sous clef, under lock and key.

22. **VERBS AND NOUNS CLOSELY CONNECTED IN SENSE.** There are a number of expressions in which the verb *avoir*, followed by a noun, expresses what might be equally well rendered by a single verb, as: **avoir peur de**, *to fear*, **avoir pitié de**, *to pity*. In such phrases the partitive article, which might have been looked for, is left out.

There are similar phrases with other verbs, where the article is likewise omitted, as: **rendre compte, tirer parti de**, take advantage of, **tenir parole, prendre garde.**[1] On the other hand, the French say, **céder la place, avoir le droit, avoir le temps, garder le silence, prendre le deuil, faire l'aumône, demander l'aumône, souhaiter le bon jour, être le bien-venu**, where we use no article in English; **faire la révérence**, where we use the indefinite article. (*See Appendix for complete lists.*)

23. **THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE.** The partitive genitive (see chapter on Genitive), depending on a noun, or an adverb of quantity, never takes an article.

D'énormes **paquets de linge.** B. de St-Pierre.
L'ambition, seigneur, n'a **guère de limites.** Boursault.
Combien de fautes *dans votre thème?*

Obs. 1. This rule does not apply to the genitive depending on a superlative or on an ordinal numeral, which imply selection from among a definite number of persons or things.

Le meilleur des Romains—Le premier des Césars.

Obs. 2. There is an apparent exception to this rule in the case of the adverb **bien**, meaning *many*:—

Un repentir efface souvent **bien des péchés.** Bossuet.

[1] Hence there are cases in which the insertion or omission of the article makes a difference in the sense, as *entendre raillerie*, to take banter well; *entendre la raillerie*, to understand the art of banter, to be able to banter others.

But this, though translated *many sins*, meant originally *sins indeed, sins enough*, **des** being the partitive article. But **bien d'autres** is always written. Before an adjective preceding its noun either **de** or **des** is admissible, **bien de** (or **des**) **belles prairies**, **de** being more usual.

Obs. 3. After **pas**, **point**, an article *may* occur, if there be no idea of quantity, and **pas** or **point** simply negatives the whole sentence:

Il ne se sont pas parlé, ils ne se sont pas fait **des signes**? Dumas.

where the point is that they abstained from signalling as well as from speaking.

N'avez-vous pas **de la santé, de la fortune, des amis**? *que vous faut-il de plus?* Acad.

where **de santé** would have quite another meaning.

Obs. 4. After **sans** and an infinitive, the partitive article is *generally* used if the phrase be negative, **de** if it is affirmative.[1]

Il ne peut parler sans faire des fautes. Acad.
Tout, sans faire d'apprêts, s'y prépare aisément. Boileau.

Obs. 5. **Force**, properly a partitive noun, has come to be used even without **de**, and of course without an article, to mean *many*.

J'ai dévoré **force moutons** (many sheep). La Fontaine.

Obs. 6. In a question expecting the answer *no* without any partitive word expressed, the article is often omitted.

Est-il *pour nous, ma sœur,* **de plus rude** *disgrâce?* Molière.

23*a*. **THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.** The partitive article is used in French where no article is used in English, but where the words *some* or *any* could be easily supplied or are actually expressed.

If a noun preceded by the partitive article has also an adjective before it, **de** is used for **du, de la**, or **des**:—

Voilà **de** *bonne eau*—**de** *braves soldats.*
but— **de l'***eau bonne à boire*—**des** *soldats braves.*

[1] To reconcile this with § 125 (2) remember that the first example is virtually affirmative (he always makes mistakes), the latter virtually negative (making no preparation).

In the apparent exceptions to this rule, **des bons mots, des jeunes gens, des faux monnayeurs, des jeunes personnes,** the adjective and noun virtually form a single word. [1]

24. **PROVERBS, &c.** In proverbs and rapid enumerations the article is frequently omitted.

Témérité *n'est pas* **prudence.**

Tombeaux, trônes, palais, *tout périt, tout s'écroule.*
Delille.

Also in short phrases like : *Avis au lecteur ; deuxième édition,* &c.

Défense *était faite aux bagages de suivre les corps.* Thiers.

24*a*. **COUPLED NOUNS.** As in German, and, to a certain extent, in English, certain pairs of nouns have become familiar, as **par sauts et par bonds,** by leaps and bounds, **corps et biens, á son risque et péril, jour et nuit,** *suer* **sang et eau.** Such combinations take no article.

Je suais **sang et eau.** Racine.

Elle appela la métayère, ferma **porte et fenêtres.** Theuriet.

25. **REPETITION OF THE ARTICLE.** The article, definite or indefinite, is repeated before each of several nouns connected by conjunctions, whether repeated or no in English.

C'est un homme ou **une** *femme noyée.*
Le père et **la** *mère de cet enfant.*

Exceptions are :

(1.) Two nouns naturally connected in idea, with **et** between them, as **les ponts et chaussées, les arts et métiers.**

(2) Synonyms joined by **ou,** as **la ville ou bourg** *de Montmédy.*

The article is not repeated with the second of two adjectives qualifying the same noun, as *le bon et pieux Fénelon.*

26. **PROPER NAMES OF PERSONS.** In general, family and other personal names have no plural, as **les deux Corneille, les deux Robespierre.** (App. VI.)

---

[1] Robert (p. 34) quotes many other violations of this rule, as *du vrai moka, des vieux vêtements, des petites portes d'allées.* See App. VI.

Obs. 1. The names of a few well-known or royal families, as **les Guises, les Bourbons, les Gracques, les Curiaces** are made plural.

Obs. 2. Names of typical characters remain invariable, as **des Don Quichotte, des Rosine.** So do **des Corot, des Ruysdaël**, meaning works of those painters. Very common names are sometimes made plural, as **des Raphaëls.**

Obs. 3. Names of books and newspapers, as **deux Journal des Débats, des Nibelungen, des Vie de Jésus** (but **des Iliades**, almost a common noun); of churches, as **les Notre-Dame de Paris et de Reims**, remain invariable. So **des Saint-Barthélemy.** As to names of pictures the usage varies.

26*a*. **LES NEWTON.** The rhetorical use of **les** with proper names in the singular is common; **les Newton**, for example, is equivalent to a singular, and answers to the English phrase *a Newton*, meaning either (1) Newton and men like him; (2) Newton with his characteristic qualities.

Après les penseurs qui avaient illustré sa carrière il voyait déjà apparaître les grands réalisateurs qui devaient compléter son œuvre; après **les Locke, les Montesquieu, les Rousseau,** *s'élevaient* **les Turgot, les Franklin, les Mirabeau, les Washington.** Lanfrey.

Elle estime de beaux hommes, des hommes forts, **des Adolphe, des Auguste, des Alexandre,** *des bateleurs et des paillasses.* Balzac.

Obs. Un is also sometimes used in this way.[1]

*Les guerres avaient produit des généraux illustres tels qu'***un Gustave-Adolphe, un Valstein.** Voltaire.

26*b*. **ARTICLE A PART OF SOME PROPER NAMES.** Of course, as in English, the article is used before proper names qualified by an adjective, **le grand Laplace**, &c. The definite article is a necessary part of some names like **La Harpe, La Fontaine, Le Sage**, &c. With certain names of famous authors and painters, especially Italian names, the singular article is used, **le Tasse,**

[1] *Un Ovide* may mean also a copy of Ovid; *du Cicéron tout pur*, pure Ciceronian (Latin).

l'Arioste, le Corrège,[1] &c. Also with names of opera-singers, &c., **la Patti, la Taglioni, la Porporina.**

27. **SINGULAR OF PARTS OF THE BODY.** In speaking of parts of the body, the singular is generally used in French, though several persons may be alluded to :—[2]

Arrivés devant le roi, ils courbèrent **la tête** (their *heads*).

27*a*. **NO ARTICLE WITH** *JAMAIS*. When the adverb **jamais** precedes the subject of a sentence, and practically qualifies it, so that **jamais homme,** for instance, may be translated *no man ever*, **si jamais homme,** *if any man ever*, the article is omitted :—

Jamais écrivain *ne ressembla mieux à son pays,* never did a writer—*or* no writer ever.

27*b*. **FRENCH AND ENGLISH NOUNS.** French is less rich in nouns than English and German. Hence, in translating English into French, we encounter the same difficulty as in writing Latin prose, and must be prepared sometimes to turn an English noun by a French phrase or clause especially when the English noun denotes something not necessarily realized. Thus—"Modesty is becoming to the young" may be rendered *il sied aux jeunes gens d'être modestes;* "there was no longer any hope of the immediate surrender of Paris"—*on ne pouvait plus espérer que Paris capitulerait sur-le-champ.*

III.—Adjectives.

28. **CONCORD OF ADJECTIVES.** As in Latin, adjectives, whether epithets or in apposition, or appositive complements, agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they refer.

La figure *de Tacite nous paraîtrait trop* **sourcilleuse.**
Taine.

[1] Representing *il Correggio, il Tiziano.* But the article is not unfrequently omitted. **(App. VI.)** [2] **App. VI.**

29. **SYNESIS WITH** *VOUS*. When the pronoun **vous** is used in addressing a single person, the adjectives referring to it are put in the singular; the concord depends, in fact, on the sense, and not on the strict grammar (a construction known as *Synesis*)[1]:—

Madame, que **vous** *êtes* **belle!** (how beautiful you are!).

30. **COMPOUND ADJECTIVES**. If the first part of a compound adjective be an indeclinable word, as **demi**, or an adjective used adverbially, the second part alone takes the sign of the plural and of the feminine, as—

demi-mort,	half-dead,	**demi-morts.**
demi-morte,		**demi-mortes.**
léger-vêtu,	lightly-clad,	**léger-vêtus.**
léger-vêtue,		**léger-vêtues.**
clair-semé,	thinly-sown,	**clair-semés.**
clair-semée,		**clair-semées.**

Under this head fall **nouveau-né, mort-né, court-vêtu, haut placé**, as *des enfants* **nouveau-nés,**[2] *des hommes* **haut placés.** But if, for the compound adjective, it would be possible to substitute two adjectives connected by *and*, without changing the sense, both are inflected, as—

aigre-doux,	bitter-sweet,	**aigres-doux.**
aigre-douce,		**aigres-douces.**
sourd-muet,	deaf mute,	**sourde-muette.**
sourd-muet,		**sourdes-muettes.**

Obs. 1. The adjectives **nouveau, premier, dernier** often qualify participles used as nouns. In such cases (except **nouveau-né**) both are declined. See § 37*a*.

un nouveau marié,	**des nouveaux mariés.**
une nouvelle mariée,	**des nouvelles mariées.**
le premier venu,	**les premiers venus,** &c.

So **le clair-obscur,** chiaro-oscuro, *les* **clairs-obscurs.** But *les enfants* **nouveau-nés, mort-nés.**

Obs. 2. Compounds like **concavo-convexe, gréco-latin, anglo-saxon,** are single words, of which the last part only changes. But notice *les villes* **franc-comtoises** (of *Franche-Comté*).

Under this rule fall **ivre-mort,** *dead drunk*, and compounds of **frais, grand,** in which one would naturally look

[1] Also when a sovereign uses *nous* of himself. See also § 105.

[2] But *des nouveaux nés*, as substantive, occurs. See App. VI.

upon **frais** and **grand** as adverbs. Thus *des fleurs* **fraîches cueillies**, *new-gathered;* **fraîches écloses**, *new-blown; une maison* **fraîche bâtie**, *une porte* **grande ouverte**, *wide open.* For **tout-puissant**, see § 40.

30*a*. **ADJECTIVES UNDECLINED.** Most names of colours, except the simple ones, like **rouge, noir, vert**, &c. (including **rose, pourpre, cramoisi, écarlate**) are really nouns, not adjectives, and therefore undeclined. The undeclinable words of colour may be classified thus :—

(1.) Simple nouns, as **marron**, chestnut, **paille**, straw-coloured, &c., as : **des robes marron.**

(2.) Compound names of colours, such as **gris-blanc, jaune-pâle, châtain-clair**, or again, **gris de perle, bleu de ciel.** Thus : *des cheveux* **châtain-clair**, *un blouse* **bleu de ciel.** But phrases like *la perdrix* **grise-blanche** do occur.

(3.) Occasionally an adjective and noun coupled form such a noun, as *une livrée* **blanc et or.**

Obs. 1. The following example should be noticed :—

Un gilet de velours à raies alternativement **jaunes et puce.**
Balzac.

Obs. 2. The names of points of the compass, **nord, sud, est, ouest**, and their compounds, and words like **impromptu, sterling**, are often used as adjectives, and are then undeclined, as *la pointe* **sud** *de l'entrée dans la baie, une visite impromptu.*

Obs. 3. **Soi-disant** and **bon** in **à quoi bon** are undeclined, as *à quoi* **bon ces questions**, *les* **soi-disant** *docteurs.* See also § 219. For **franc de port, sauf**, see § 38.

Obs. 4. The adjectives **grognon** (*une vieille* **grognon**) and **rosat** (*de l'huile* **rosat**) are undeclined.

31. **TWO ADJECTIVES CONNECTED BY *ET*.** In a few cases the sense requires the two adjectives, connected by **et**, and qualifying a plural noun, should be in the singular :—

Les langues **latine et grecque.**—*Les armées* **anglaise et française.**—*Les* **cinquième et sixième** *siècles.*[1]

Obs. Examples like *le code* **civil et criminel**, *le clergé* **séculier et régulier** explain themselves.

[1] We can also say, *l'armée anglaise et l'armée française, l'armée anglaise et la française, le cinquième et le sixième siècle, le cinquième siècle et le sixième.* See App. VI.

32. **ADJECTIVES WITH NOUNS CONNECTED BY** *ET* are put in the plural. If the genders be different, the adjective is masculine :—

Paul et Virginie étaient **ignorants.** B. de St-Pierre.
L'énergie et la décision **nécessaires.** Lanfrey.

If, however, the two nouns are synonymous, or nearly so, the adjective agrees with the nearest :—

Sa vie n'a été qu'un travail, qu'une occupation **perpétuelle.** Massillon.
. . *l'attention et l'estime* **publique.** Montesquieu.

33. **ADJECTIVE WITH NOUNS CONNECTED BY** *OU.* It generally agrees with the nearest :—

C'est un homme ou une femme **noyée.**

Sometimes, when either **et** or **ou** might be used it is plural :—

Les Samoïèdes se nourrissent de chair ou de poisson **crus.** Buffon.

34. **POSITION OF ADJECTIVES.** In French, as in Latin, the natural position of the adjective is after the noun ; logically we think first of the genus and then of the species, first of *wine* or *men*, next of the wine being red, or the men tall. But as an adjective serves other purposes than simply to distinguish things of the same kind, there are many exceptions to this general rule.

(1.) An adjective, instead of serving to distinguish, may be used simply to remind us of a quality which the noun possesses either in the nature of things, or in virtue of what has been said in a previous sentence. In that case the adjective precedes the noun. Thus *les parents pauvres* lays stress on the relations being poor and not rich ; in *ces pauvres enfants*, coming after the story of their troubles, *pauvres* simply reminds us of what has gone before, and does not distinguish them from other children.

So, after describing the anxiety of a grand lady as to some trifling point of court etiquette :

Ces **importants intérêts** *la troublent ; en effet, c'étaient des* **intérêts importants.** Taine.

The former of the two **importants** is an epithet belonging to

intérêts *because of the context;* the latter is an epithet *distinguishing* those interests from unimportant interests.

(2.) When our language is not simply logical, but is dictated in some degree by emotion, the emotion is often conveyed by the adjective, which thus naturally comes first to our lips :—

> *Ah!* **maudite recherche! sotte délicatesse** *des enfants gâtés de ce monde!* G. Sand.

Hence a number of adjectives implying praise or blame, admiration, &c., frequently precede their nouns. Such are *charmant, cher, heureux, illustre, innocent, abominable, cruel, détestable, insupportable, bizarre, éternel, étonnant, monstrueux, merveilleux, &c.*[1]

> **L'immense empire** *attend un héritier demain.* V. Hugo.
> *Les Anglais purent garder cette* **orgueilleuse conviction** *que, pour se défendre et se venger de la tyrannie, il leur suffisait de se souvenir de leur histoire.* Rémusat.

(3.) Euphony has some influence, especially in placing monosyllabic adjectives before the nouns they qualify (35*a*).

35. ADJECTIVES THAT ALWAYS FOLLOW THEIR NOUNS are as follow :—

(1.) Adjectives denoting nationality, office, &c., or derived from proper names, as **français, catholique, royal, machiavélique, cicéronien**; also those denoting colour, form, &c., as **blanc, rouge, rond, carré, chaud, amer.**

(2.) Nouns used as adjectives, as **trompeur, ami, dominateur** (§ 37);

(3.) Participles,[2] as *un homme* **instruit,** *une étoile* **filante.** In examples like **une criante injustice,** the participle is an adjective, and follows 34 (2).

(4.) Adjectives qualified by words depending on them, or by adverbs other than *plus, moins, très, fort, si, bien:*

> *On est frappé de deux* **faits en apparence contradictoires et cependant incontestables.** Guizot.

---

[1] See, for a long list and numerous examples, *Brinkmann's Syntax des Französischen und Englischen.*

[2] It is not easy to say when a participle becomes an ordinary adjective.

(5.) Two adjectives joined by **et** or **ou** generally follow the noun. But the principles of § 34 often apply to them as to single adjectives. Thus, after a quotation :—

> *Je ne laisse cette* **mesquine et malicieuse insinuation** *que pour montrer que le souvenir est précis.*
>
> Ste-Beuve.

Again, after an allusion to the "Hundred Days," . . . *pendant toute la durée de ce* **rapide et violent orage.**

Ste-Beuve.

(6.) Cardinal numerals used as ordinals, **chapitre deux, numéro trois, Charles deux.**

(7.) An adjective used as an appositive complement of course follows the noun, as, *Il a* **le cœur gros.**

35*a*. **ADJECTIVES PRECEDING THEIR NOUNS** are as follow :—

(1.) **Bon, mauvais, méchant, grand, petit, vaste, haut, long, gros, sot, beau, joli, vilain, jeune, vieux, prétendu, soi-disant, ancien,** generally.

But such adjectives may sometimes follow the noun when used for the purpose of special distinction—

> *Beaucoup* **d'hommes jeunes** *furent atteints de dyssenterie.*
>
> (The object is to distinguish them from old soldiers.)
>
> Thiers.

(2.) Pronominal adjectives as **quel, tout, maint,** and numerals, whether cardinal or ordinal,[1] except cardinals used for ordinals, and *premier*, *second* in the titles of kings (§ 35 (6)).

(3.) Adjectives qualifying proper names, **le vertueux Aristide, la belle France,** mostly precede the noun, except—

(*a*.) Adjectives with the definite article, forming titles, as **Charles le Téméraire.**

(*b*.) Cases like *Un homme* **de la Grèce héroïque** *ou de* **Rome libre,** *i.e.*, Greece in its heroic age, and Rome before it ceased to be free ; **l'Europe féodale,** Europe under the feudal system—where the adjective clearly differentiates.

---

[1] Except **premier** in the sense of *primitive*, as *cause première*, **first cause,** *les matières premières*.

(4.) Adjectives qualifying nouns with several words depending on them generally precede their nouns.

Obs. Occasionally the figure called chiasmus occurs, *i.e.*, when two nouns are contrasted the adjective precedes one and follows the other.

En proie aux geôliers vils *comme* un vil criminel.
V. Hugo.

35*b*. **TWO ADJECTIVES.** In English two or more adjectives may qualify a noun without being coupled by a conjunction. In French this can only happen when one of the adjectives is more closely connected with the noun than the other, so as to form with it, as it were, a single substantive :—

Alors dans Besançon, vieille ville espagnole.
V. Hugo.

Elle a pu écrire cette lettre en simple brave femme *qu'elle était.* Ste-Beuve.

Otherwise two English adjectives qualifying the same noun must be coupled by *et* or other conjunctions ; as, for example, *this artful able monarch* may be rendered by *ce roi habile et astucieux*, or better *ce roi aussi habile qu'astucieux.*

36. **MEANING OF ADJECTIVES VARIES WITH PLACE.** If an adjective can be used both in a literal and a metaphorical sense, it generally precedes the noun in the latter meaning, and follows it in the former :—

Une étroite amitié—un chemin étroit.
Un habit noir—un noir chagrin.[1]
Le bois vert—une verte semonce (a good wigging).

For this and for other reasons many adjectives have different meanings, according as they precede or follow the noun they qualify ; moreover, the use of the adjective before or after certain nouns in certain meanings has become stereotyped.

[1] But, *Une nuit blanche* (sleepless), *des idées noires.*

The following are some of the distinctions *generally* observed :—

	Before Noun.	*After Noun.*
ancien,	former, late,	ancient.
brave,	honest,	brave (mostly).
certain,	a certain (*quidam*),	sure.
cher,	beloved,	expensive.[1]
dernier,	last of a series,[2]	just past.
divers, différent,	various,	unlike.
double,	double (mostly),[3]	double-minded.
faux,[4]	unreal,	deceitful, inexact.
franc,	downright (and in set phrases),[5]	free, frank.
furieux,	excessive, wonderful,	furious, mad.
galant,	(*homme*) gentleman,	a ladies' man.
grand,	{ (*homme*) great, (*dame*) aristocratic, }	tall.
gros,	(*femme*) stout,	pregnant.
honnête,	honest, respectable,	polished in manners.
mauvais,	(*air*) unpleasing,	angry.
nouveau,[6]	fresh, another,	new-fashioned.
pauvre,	worthless, to be pitied,	needy.
petit,	small,	mean, paltry.[7]
plaisant,	silly, strange, odd,	humorous.
propre,[8]	own,	clean, peculiar (to).
pur,	nothing but,[9]	unsullied.
unique,	only,	incomparable.[10]
véritable, vrai,	real,	worthy of credence.

[1] Except in the phrase *une chère année*. Notice *d'une commune voix*, unanimously.

[2] *La dernière année de son règne*, but *l'année dernière*, last year. On the other hand, *ces dernières années*, these last few years.

[3] But *fleur double, sel double ; partie double*, double entry ; *raison double*, duplicate ratio.

[4] *Esprit faux, cœur faux ;* but *faux cheveux, faux nez, ces faux brillants.* Note *fausse clef*, pass-key ; *clef fausse*, wrong key.

[5] *Dormir la franche matinée, ville franche, un franc scélérat, franc fief, franc-maçon.*

[6] *Un nouvel habit*, another coat ; *un habit nouveau*, new-fashioned ; *un habit neuf*, a coat fresh from the tailor.

[7] But *a mean man* is not *un homme petit ;* we must say *un esprit petit.*

[8] But *en main propre.*

[9] *e.g., en pure perte.* Also *un cheval de pur sang.*

[10] But *fils unique,* only son.

Notice *la Sainte Famille, les saints Pères* (Fathers of the Church), *la sainte table, l'Ecriture sainte, le saint siège* (the Holy See), *la sainte Bible, le Vendredi Saint* (Good Friday), *une maligne joie, le nouveau monde, la basse Egypte, les Pays-Bas* (Netherlands), *le Bas-Empire* (the lower Empire at Constantinople), *le haut Rhin* (the Upper Rhine), *la haute marée, la haute mer* (the high seas), *le plein pouvoir* (full powers), *à pleine main, un fou rire, en droite ligne, à angle droit, le libre échange* (free trade), *le moyen âge.*

37. **NOUNS AS ADJECTIVES.** Many nouns denoting an agent or a person possessing certain qualities, are used as adjectives, and then follow the noun they qualify. It is important in translating to remember that the latter of the two is generally the adjective.

Une âme **guerrière** *est maîtresse du corps qu'elle anime.*

Des libéraux **puritains** *tels que Lafayette* (*i.e.*, Liberals of the straitest sect, not Liberal Puritans). Ste-Beuve.

Il verse à mon esprit le souffle **créateur.** V. Hugo.

Le roi **spectre** *tout bas parle au prêtre* **fantôme.** Ibid.

Elle se trouvait en présence d'étrangers **gens du monde.** Mérimée.

Les Romains ou les Grecs de Racine sont bien souvent des marquis **beaux-diseurs** (grandiloquent dandies). Ste-Beuve.

37*a*. **ADJECTIVES AS NOUNS.** In French adjectives are rather more freely used as nouns than in English.

(1.) Of persons. Phrases, like **les pauvres, les mourants, les blessés, les méchants,** are common to both languages, but French has also **les insurgés,** *insurgents,* **les émigrés,** *émigrants,* **les médaillés,** *medallists,* **une mourante,** *a dying woman,* **un ignorant,** *an ignorant person, &c.* Further, one adjective used as a noun may be qualified by another, as **les grands coupables,** *great criminals,* **les nouveaux convertis,** *recent converts,* **d'un ridicule achevé,** *perfectly ridiculous.*

(2.) In the neuter gender. The idiom represented in English by "*The Sublime and Beautiful,*" and in French by "**Le Vrai, le Beau,** *et le Bien,*" is of wider application in French, *e.g.*, **les spiritueux,** *spirituous liquors,* **son possible,** *one's utmost,* **à**

son insu, *unwittingly*, le commun des hommes, *the bulk of mankind*, le vide, *a vacuum*, le faux pathétique, *false pathos*, au plus désert de la contrée, *in the most desolate part of the district.*

See also 41 (3) 129.

The following shows how completely neuter adjectives have become nouns.

*Il est d'*un naturel, *d'*un sincère, *d'une intrépidité sans égale, d'une imprudence à faire peur.* Ste-Beuve.

Il y a des créanciers qui sont d'un grossier. Balzac.

Obs. Notice the neuter adjectives used idiomatically with faire, faire maigre, *to abstain from meat,* il fait clair, *it is light,* il fait bon, *it is good,* il fait chaud, froid, &c.

38. *FEU, DEMI, NU, &c.* There are several peculiarities in the use of these and other words (App. VI.)

(1.) Feu is indeclinable when it is separated from the noun it qualifies by an article or possessive pronoun; but declinable if it immediately precedes the noun—

Feu *la reine—la* feue *reine—ses* feus *cousins.*

(2.) Demi is invariable when it precedes a noun, and is then connected with it by a hyphen (*trait-d'union*)—

Une demi-*heure*, but *dix heures et* demie.

La demie,[1] used as a noun, means *the half-hour*, in speaking of a clock. La moitié is the French for *the half of anything.*

(3.) Nu is indeclinable when it precedes, declinable when it follows the noun.[2]

Elle marche nu-*pieds—elle avait les pieds* nus.

(4.) Sauf (as sauf *correction*) before its noun, franc *de port* (*J'ai reçu* franc de port *une lettre*), and plein before the article, &c., are uninflected.

J'ai de soldats plein *ma ville et* plein *ma seigneurie.*

V. Hugo.

For particulars as to excepté, etc, see § 219.

---

[1] Notice *un réveil qui sonne les heures et les demies.*

[2] There are a few cases in which nu, coming with an article before a noun, is declined, as *la* nue *propriété de ses biens* (a survival).

38*a*. *AVOIR L'AIR.* If there is any stress on **air**, the adjective agrees with it and remains masculine; if, however, **avoir l'air** is simply equivalent to **sembler**, the adjective may be inflected to agree with the subject of the sentence. Thus *elle a l'air campagnard* means that, though she is not necessarily from the country, her manners are countrified; *elle a l'air campagnarde* means, she is clearly just come from the country, she is not used to town. [1]

39. **ADJECTIVE AS ADVERB.** When an adjective is used as an adverb, it is, of course, invariable. (See Acc. 171.)

La chair de ces animaux sent très **mauvais**, not *mauvaise.*

Possible is sometimes an adverb, sometimes an adjective: *tous les monstres* **possibles**, *le plus d'hommes* **possible**, *aux plus longues échéances* **possible.**

40. **EUPHONIC INFLEXION OF** *TOUT.* The adjective **tout**, when used as an adverb, means *quite*, or, at the beginning of a sentence, *however.* In these senses it is declined before a feminine adjective the initial letter of which is a consonant or an aspirated *h.*

L'espérance, **toute trompeuse** *qu'elle est, sert au moins à nous mener à la fin de la vie par un chemin agréable.*

Sa sœur était pour lui **tout aimable, toute gracieuse.**

But *Nos vaisseaux sont* **tout prêts** *et le vent nous appelle.*

Obs. 1. **Toute autre femme**, any other woman; **une tout autre femme**, a totally different woman.

Obs. 2. **Tout-puissant** is therefore inflected, *toute-puissante—tout-puissants—toutes-puissantes.*

41. **REMARKS ON THE SUPERLATIVE:—**

(1.) When the superlative follows a noun in the genitive or dative, the article qualifying it is not altered to correspond in case with that qualifying the noun.

Il est comparable aux hommes **les plus vaillants**, not *aux hommes aux plus vaillants.*

---

[1] When there is any doubt, the difficulty may be avoided by inserting *d'être* after *avoir l'air.* (See App. VI.)

(2.) The English superlative with *a* cannot be rendered literally in French. Thus, "it would be a most extraordinary thing"—

Ce serait une chose **des plus étranges** (or *fort étrange, très étrange*).

Obs. This rule is not always observed in 17th century French.

Elle se prend, d'**un air le plus charmant** *du monde, aux choses qu'elle fait.* Molière.

(3.) After **ce que**, the superlative is often used in the genitive case, and *le, la, les* are omitted.

Nous avons vu **ce qu'***il y a* **de plus terrible** (the most terrible sights).

(4.) Besides the ordinary form of the superlative, there is a mode of expression (sometimes called *the absolute superlative*) made up of the adjective and **le plus** (or **le moins, le mieux**), **le** being invariable. It is used when an object is compared, not with other objects, but with itself at another time or under different circumstances. **(App. VI.)**

Le matin était le temps où nous étions **le plus tranquilles** (*i.e.*, calmer than at other times, not calmer than other people).

Ils sont heureux de contempler de belles choses, et souhaitent seulement qu'elles soient **le plus belles** *possible* (as beautiful as they can be).

Un pays où la science est **le plus cultivée** (cultivated to a greater extent than elsewhere, not a more cultivated kind of science than elsewhere).

C'est ordinairement près de leurs embouchures que les rivières sont **le plus larges**, but

De toutes les rivières, celle-ci est **la plus large**.[1]

(5.) Both the ordinary and the absolute superlative may be formed with **le moins, le mieux**, as well as **le plus**.

41*a*. *SEUL, LE PREMIER.* **Seul** in agreement with a noun is often used where we should have an adverb in

[1] Notice *une lettre on ne peut plus injurieuse* (a most insulting letter).

English. The use of **le premier, le dernier,** is somewhat similar (*primus, solus*).

Un décret que sa timidité **seule** *l'avait empêché de lancer jusque-là.* Lanfrey.

Marmont reconnut **le premier** *le danger de sa situation.*

42. **THE MORE, THE BETTER.** Comparatives are often preceded by *the*, meaning *by so much*, or *by how much*, as,—

The braver a man is, the less he boasts of it.

In French (1), *the* is omitted; (2), the order is changed: the clause begins with **plus** or **moins**; next comes the nominative, then the verb, and last the adjective qualified by **plus** or **moins.**

Plus *un homme est* **courageux, moins** *il s'en vante.*

Plus *la guerre est* **étendue, plus** *elle est* **funeste.**[1]

So with **autant . . . autant.**

Autant *leurs résolutions étaient* **vagues** *et leurs efforts décousus,* **autant** *ses actes étaient* **précis et rapides.** Lanfrey.

IV.—Personal Pronouns.

43. **CONJUNCTIVE OR DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS AS THE NOMINATIVES TO VERBS.** Ordinarily the nominative to a verb, if a pronoun, is one of the conjunctive pronouns **je, tu, il,** &c. But the disjunctive forms (**moi, toi, lui, eux**) are used as the subject or nominative to verbs in the following cases:—

(1.) When the subject consists of a pronoun coupled to a noun, or of two pronouns coupled together.

Albert **et moi sommes** *tombés d'accord.* Molière.

Vous **et lui** *ne valez pas mieux.*

But see § 44.

[1] Sometimes *et* is inserted. **Plus** *librement je parle,* **et moins** *j'ai l'air de feindre.* Ponsard.

(2.) When an adjective, a participle, or a relative clause qualifies the pronoun, and separates it from the verb to which it is the nominative. The same applies if **aussi** or **encore** intervenes.[1]

Eux *seuls seront exempts de la commune loi!* La Fontaine.

Mais **lui**, *voyant en moi la fille de son frère,*
Me tint lieu, chère Elise, et de père et de mère. Racine.

Sometimes, too, when a strong contrast is intended, or when the pronoun is to be made very emphatic (*I, for my part*), the disjunctive pronoun is used as the nominative immediately before the verb.

Quoi que d'autres aient fait, il fait bien pis encore;
Eux *déchirent la France, mais* **lui**[2] *la déshonore.* Ponsard.

44. **CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUN PLEONASTIC AS SUBJECT.** When a noun and a pronoun or two pronouns coupled by a conjunction, form, in English, the nominative to a verb, it is usual, but not absolutely necessary, to insert between them and the verb a conjunctive pronoun, which, so to speak, sums them up.

Un jour, **moi** *Cynthæus* **et Méphialte** *aussi,*
Tous deux exilés, lui de Sparte, moi d'Athènes,
Nous *suivions le sentier que voici dans les plaines.*
V. Hugo.

45. **DISJUNCTIVE WITH *À* AFTER REFLEXIVE VERBS.** With a reflexive verb the disjunctive form of a pronoun standing as the indirect object or dative is used.

Elle s'est fiée **à moi**, not *Elle me s'est fiée.*
Quand on a besoin des hommes, il faut bien **s'ajuster à eux.**
Molière.

The same rule applies to the dative governed by **penser à, songer à, être à, accoutumer à, renoncer à, prendre intérêt à, faire attention à, avoir recours à, avoir affaire à.**

---

[1] There is one exception: *Je soussigné reconnais*, &c., I, the undersigned, admit, &c.

[2] Robespierre (the passage is from Charlotte Corday).

Mon moulin est à moi,
Tout aussi bien, au moins, que la Prusse est au roi.
Andrieux.

This, however, does not apply to the dative neuter (or adverb) y:—j'y songe, j'y renonce, je m'y fie.

Obs. On the same principle, if the governed accusative be of the first or second person, the disjunctive with *à* must be chosen for the dative, as *il* me *montre* à eux, not *il me leur montre; il* vous *montre* à moi, not *il me vous montre.* But *il le leur montre, il me le montre*, are correct.

45*a*. **VERBS OF MOTION.** With verbs of motion, *to* is not a sign of the dative, and therefore *à* with the disjunctive pronoun is used.

Il courut à moi, not *il me courut.*

Obs. Venir is often used without being strictly a verb of motion, and then takes a dative pronoun.

Sa fortune lui venait *de son père.*
Il me vient *une idée.*

Notice —*Elle lui rapporte tout*, she reports (or brings back) everything to him. *Elle rapporte tout à lui*, he is everything to her (she makes everything centre in him).

46. **DISJUNCTIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS.** The disjunctive form is used after prepositions and conjunctions.

Quant à moi—pour lui—avec eux—chez toi.
Je suis mille fois plus criminel que lui.

46*a*. **VARIOUS USES OF DISJUNCTIVE.** The disjunctive form is also used in exclamations, after the verb *to be*, as an absolute case with a participle, and in general whenever the pronoun is neither the subject nor one of the objects of the verb.

Il croyait, lui, *devoir faire parler tout l'univers.*
Montesquieu.
Moi, *je pourrais trahir le Dieu que j'aime!* Racine.
C'est moi—*ce fut* lui—*ce sont* eux.

Qui va là? Moi.—*Je viendrai* moi *quatrième.*
Il ne sera pas dit que, moi parti, *vous rirez de la dupe que vous venez de faire.*

47. **POSITION OF GOVERNED PRONOUNS.** Governed pronouns precede the verb which governs them or its auxiliary, if it has one. If the verb be conjugated negatively, these pronouns follow the negative **ne.**

Je le lui *donne—vous ne* le lui *avez pas donné.*

If there be more than one governed pronoun, they are arranged as follows :—

(1.) me, te, se, nous, vous. (2.) le, la, les.
(3.) lui, leur. (4.) y. (5.) en.

i.e., any pronoun of group (1) precedes any pronoun of the following groups ; any pronoun of group (2) precedes any of (3), (4), (5), and so on.

48. **GOVERNED PRONOUNS WITH IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE.** With the first and second persons of the imperative affirmative: (1) the governed pronouns follow the verb ; (2) moi, toi, are used for **me, te.**

Tuez-moi. Gardons-le. Donnez-moi *dix francs.*

Obs. When two governed pronouns go with an imperative affirmative. the accusative precedes the dative, as donnez-le-moi. If the verb be reflexive, the reflexive pronoun comes first, as représentons-nous-la. Harsh forms, such as the combination of **me, y,** *menez-m'y, menez-y-moi*, &c , can often be avoided by a periphrasis, as, veuillez m'y mener.

48*a*. **GOVERNED PRONOUNS WITH IMPERATIVE NEGATIVE.** With the third person of the imperative affirmative, and with all persons of the imperative negative the governed pronouns precede: **Ne le lui donnez pas.**

Obs. They *may* also do so with the second of two imperatives affirmative, connected by et or ou :—

Écrivez-le-lui et le lui *envoyez.*

But this idiom is now scarcely used.

Voilà, voici, which are properly imperatives, take the governed pronoun before them, as **me voici, la voilà.**

49. **PLACE OF PRONOUNS WITH INFINITIVE.** Pronouns governed by a verb in the infinitive stand immediately before the infinitive, except when it depends on **faire, laisser, voir, entendre, sentir,** &c. In the latter case the two are considered as forming a single verb, and the pronoun precedes both. See § 115.

Vous devez **le subir** *sans relever le front.* Delavigne.

Je **me laissai emmener** *quand on voulut.* De Vigny.

Obs. 1. **Venir, aller, envoyer,** with *chercher,* &c., are treated like **faire.**

Je ne puis **l'envoyer chercher.** De Vigny.

Obs. 2. In poetry and in 17th century French the pronoun often precedes the verbs of mood (and occasionally in modern prose), **devoir, savoir, pouvoir, vouloir, oser.**

D'autres aiment la vie et je **la dois haïr.** Corneille.

Tu **m'oses défier.** Delavigne.

Obs. 3. With pronominal verbs and in some other cases each verb keeps its own pronoun.

Qui **le fait se charger** *des soins de ma famille?* Corneille.

Le hasard **m'a fait vous parler** *d'elle.* De Staël.

But *Il ne* **se le ferait** *pas* **dire** *deux fois.* De Vigny.

Obs. 4. In the 17th century the accusative pronoun of the third person was often omitted.

Il a demandé la Vie des Saints ; on **lui a donnée.**

Mme. de Sévigné.

50. **USE OF** *VOUS* **AND** *TU.* A stranger or acquaintance is addressed as **vous**; an intimate friend or near relation as **tu.**[1] The third person is often politely used, as *madame veut-elle... !*

Tu is also sometimes used to express contempt or anger.[2] Thus in *Les Misérables*, one of the miseries which Jean Valjean pictures to himself when about to surrender on a charge of theft, is *d'être tutoyé par le premier venu.*

---

[1] The verb **tutoyer** (old English "to thou") is used to express this. There is also a "neologism," **vouvoyer.**

[2] Coke's insulting words to Raleigh, "I thou thee, thou traitor."

In addressing the Almighty, Protestants use **tu**, Catholics **vous**, as may be seen from the following extract from the *Récit d'une Sœur*, by Madame Craven :

> *A l'époque où Alexandrine commençait son histoire et écrivait ces lignes, elle n'était Catholique que depuis quelques mois ; c'est pourquoi elle se sert encore de ce tutoiement qui, en français, est particulier aux Protestants (car, dans presque toutes les autres langues, les Catholiques s'en servent comme eux).*

51. **REPETITION OF GOVERNED PRONOUNS.** In certain cases the dative or accusative of a governed pronoun appears twice, first as a conjunctive pronoun before the verb, and a second time after it.

(1.) When it is qualified by a word like *all*.

Ce qui **nous** *donne* **à nous** *autres pères* . . .

Molière.

(2.) When it has words in apposition to it.

Ce prince ainsi présenté par St-Simon, et dont la mort **lui** *arrache* **à lui** *l'observateur inexorable des accents d'éloquence émue et des larmes.* . . . . Ste-Beuve.

(3.) When it is the antecedent to a relative.

Je **vous** *le dis* **à vous** *qui passez.*

(4.) When *self* or *selves* attached to it is emphatic.

Elle leur défend de **se** *faire justice* **à eux-mêmes.** Pascal.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the sense of a *possessive adjective* is similarly repeated.

M. Taine a **sa** *forme* **à lui.** Ste-Beuve.

Leur *réputation* **à tous deux** *est allée en grandissant.* Ste-Beuve.

Obs. 2. The usage with **l'un l'autre** is exactly similar.

Les aventures **se** *succèdent* **les unes aux autres.** Voltaire.

52. **CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUN PLEONASTIC AS OBJECT.** When, in English, the object of a verb, direct or indirect, consists of two pronouns, or of a pronoun and a noun coupled by a conjunction, it is necessary in French

to insert a conjunctive pronoun before the verb, to which they then stand in apposition.

La fortune nous *a persécutés*, lui et moi. Fénelon.
Il nous *doit cette somme*, à nous et à nos associés.
Les chefs des Communes s'*estimaient perdus*, eux et leur cause. Guizot.

Obs. If the object is put first, it must be repeated by a conjunctive pronoun.

La vie *que menait l'auteur dans ces lieux, on se* la *figure sans peine.* V. Hugo.
De maximes, *on ne* s'en *charge pas.* Labruyère.

53. **REPETITION OF PERSONAL PRONOUN WITH EACH VERB.** If the same personal pronoun be the subject of several verbs, it is generally repeated before each, but not necessarily. In rapid descriptions it is naturally enough not repeated.

Je le connais, je *l'aime, et* je *lui rends justice.* Gresset.
Sans quitter ses armes, il court, vole, arrive, annonce la victoire, et tombe mort à leurs pieds. Barthélemy.

A single pronoun cannot stand as the object of two or more verbs, but must be repeated before each.

Un auteur qui nous *flatte et* nous *loue* (who flatters and praises us).

But in a compound tense, if two participles have a common auxiliary, the pronoun need not be repeated.

Il nous *a flattés et loués.*

54. **WHAT DISJUNCTIVE ANSWERS TO** *SE?* It is important to remember that the disjunctive pronouns answering to se are lui, elle, eux, elles, and not *soi*, unless se itself refers to on, chacun, &c. (See § 107.)

Il se *croyait heureux toutes les fois qu'il pensait à* lui-même (not *soi-même*).

55. **TRANSLATION OF** *IT* **WITH PREPOSITIONS.** There is, strictly speaking, no neuter pronoun in French. In the accusative le conjunctive is used, and cela disjunc-

tive. The genitive is represented by **en**, an adverb formed from *inde* (§ 140) and the dative by **y**, equivalent to *ibi* With other prepositions there is no group of words like darauf, dadurch, but various artifices must be adopted. With **par, dessus,** and **dessous, là** (there) is used.

Il amène le roi à une fausse paix, et signale **par là** *son triomphe* (thereby). Ste-Beuve.

Mettez ce livre **là-dessus, là-dessous.**

So *Mais* **de là** *je conclus que l'homme est le plus sot.* Boileau. where **de là** is more definite than *en*. Molière has **là contre.**

Again, **dessus, dessous, avec, contre,** are sometimes used as adverbs, meaning *on it, with it,* &c.

Il croit voir un prie-Dieu, il se jette lourdement **dessus.** La Bruyère

Il a pris mon manteau, et s'en est allé **avec.** Littré.

A peine ouvrons-nous la bouche pour dire une nouvelle qu'un de ces jeunes gens propose de parier **contre.** Montesquieu.

56. **THE SO-CALLED PLEONASTIC USE OF** *LE*, &c. The pronouns **le**[1] (invariable), and **le, la, les,** are used as appositive complements with the verbs **être, devenir,** which they immediately precede. They represent an adjective or a noun in an antecedent sentence, and cannot be translated in English, except occasionally by the word *so*.

(1.) To represent an adjective, **le** inviarable is used :—

Catherine de Médicis était **jalouse** *de son autorité, et elle* **le** *devait être.* Daniel.

where **le** represents the adjective **jalouse.**

(2.) **Le** (invariable) often stands as the object of a verb, and represents a sentence or a group of words, generally an infinitive with words depending on it.

Autant que je **le** *puis, je cède à tes raisons.* Racine.

where **le** is equivalent to **céder à tes raisons.**

Tirez la corde ! Vous me **le** *devez en échange de ma complaisance,*

where **le** stands for **de tirer la corde.**

[1] Like *ce* in many of its uses, this is really neuter.

Vous devez trembler à l'ouverture de cette lettre, ou plutôt, vous **le** *deviez, lorsque vous souffrîtes la perfidie de Nadir.*
Montesquieu.

(3.) To represent a noun, the declinable pronoun **le, la, les,** is used, if it could be paraphrased in English by *that identical person or thing,* or *those identical persons or things.*

Etes vous **la mère de cet enfant**? *Oui, je* **la** *suis.*
La reine! *vraiment oui, je* **la** *suis en effet.* La Fontaine.

where **la** means *the Queen, the very person spoken of.*

But if we wish to refer to the noun, not as naming a definite person or thing, but as implying (or connoting) certain qualities, we use **le** (invariable), as in referring to an adjective :—

Etes-vous **reine**? *Oui je* **le** *suis* (I have the qualities implied by the word *queen*).

Voyez Aigues-Mortes, Fréjus, Ravenne, qui ont été **des ports,** *et qui ne* **le** *sont plus.* Voltaire.

57. **PHRASES WITH** *LE* **PLEONASTIC.** **Le** is used pleonastically in phrases like **l'emporter sur quelqu'un,** *to gain the mastery over;* **le céder à quelqu'un,** *to be no match for;* **prenez-le** *plus bas, take a lower tone;* **le disputer à ...,** *to be a match for ....*[1]

58. **GRAMMAR RATHER THAN SENSE.** It is important to remember that personal and possessive pronouns are selected on strictly grammatical principles. Thus, in referring to collective nouns like *armée, nation,* which take a singular verb, it is necessary to use **la, lui, son, sa, ses,** and not *les, leur.* Again, in referring to *Votre Majesté,* pronouns of the third person must be used.

Sire, je vais combattre les ennemis de **Votre Majesté,** *et je* **la** *laisse au milieu des miens.* (In English, I leave you).
Villars in Ste-Beuve.

---

[1] Notice *l'échapper belle,* to have a narrow escape; *la manquer belle,* to miss an opportunity.

58*a*. **THIRD PERSON FOR SECOND.** Indirect address in the third person is frequently, in conversation, substituted for direct address in the second.

Me voilà ! que demande **monsieur le marquis.** Sandeau.

V.—Possessive Pronouns and Adjectives.

59. **TRANSLATION OF MINE, THINE.** The possessive pronouns **le mien, le tien,** &c, are used to translate the English *mine, thine*, except in phrases like *it is mine*, meaning *it belongs to me*, where **à moi, à toi,** &c., are used instead.

Son livre et le mien, but

A qui est ce livre, est-il **à vous** ?—*Oui, il est* **à moi.**

Obs. 1. Of course there are phrases where *it is mine* does not mean simply *it belongs to me*, e.g.:—

Lequel des enfants a jeté cette pierre ? **C'est le mien** (*qui l'a jetée*, understood).

Obs. 2. The words **mien, sien,** were formerly used as epithets with **ce** or the indefinite Article, and even as predicates.

Au travers d'un **mien** *pré certain âne passa.*[1] Racine.

Recevant comme **siens** *l'encens et les cantiques.*

Obs. 3. The English phrase *he is a friend of mine* has no literal rendering in French ; it must be translated—

C'est un de mes amis (also *un ami à moi*).[2]

60. **PARTS OF THE BODY.** *In speaking of parts of the body*, the possessive adjective is not used in French ; its place is taken by the definite article, in all cases where no mistake could arise as to whose feet, hands, &c., are meant. (See also § 15.)

Elle rougit et baissa **la tête** (her head).

[1] Imitative of legal style.

[2] Or a slight periphrasis, as, *aucune entreprise de votre part*, no enterprise of yours.

Je me promenais devant la cour, les **mains** *dans mes poches, et* le **nez** *enfoncé dans le collet de mon paletot.* Souvestre.

Obs. 1. The same rule applies to **goût, vie, esprit,** in fact, to whatever is inseparable from a person, but not to anything else, as may be seen from the second example above. French writers, however, allow themselves some license, using possessive adjectives where an article might be expected, and that not solely in the case of ailing members.[1]

J'étais là, **ma tête** *pesante et embrasée dans* **mes deux mains, mes coudes** *sur* **mes genoux,** *les pieds sur les barreaux de ma chaise.* V. Hugo.

Obs. 2. Even if several persons be spoken of, the part of the body named is put in the singular.

Ils baissèrent **la tête** (not **les têtes**).

Obs. 3. On the same principle, no possessive is used with verbs like **changer, redoubler,** in speaking of opinions, efforts, &c.

J'ai **changé d'***avis*, not *j'ai changé mon avis.*

61. **DATIVE OF PERSONAL INSTEAD OF POSSESSIVE.** When it is necessary to point out whose hands, feet, &c., are meant, the dative of the personal or reflexive pronoun is prefixed to the verb.

Mais l'éclat des grandeurs **leur** *a tourné* **la tête.** Etienne.
Je **me** *suis coupé* **le doigt.**
Simon **s'***était fait couper* **les narines** *et* **les oreilles.**
Je m'attachai à **me** *perfectionner* **le goût.** Le Sage.

Remember to use the *Reflexive* pronoun, when *his, her, their*, refer to the subject or nominative of the sentence.

Obs. 1. There is one case where, in speaking of parts of the body, the possessive adjective is used in French as in English—namely, in referring to members that are known to be ailing, as—

Quoiqu'il soit un peu incommodé de **son** *bras* (*i.e.*, with his arm which you know has been hurt). De Sévigné.
L'état du malade empire de jour en jour; **son** *pouls s'affaiblit;* **sa** *poitrine s'embarrasse.*

[1] Notice *couper ses cheveux*, to cut off one's hair; *se couper les cheveux*, to cut one's hair.

Obs. 2. It may be added that the rules of §§ 60 and 61 are not always observed in poetry, or where emphasis is intended.

Chaque mot sur **mon** *front fait dresser* **mes** *cheveux.* Racine.

62. **POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES WITH BOTH,** &c. Possessive adjectives cannot be preceded by any other pronominal adjective except **tout.** Thus *these my friends* is **mes amis que voici,** *both my friends* is **mes deux amis,** or **l'un et l'autre de mes amis;** but we may say **tous mes amis.**

62*a*. **IDIOMATIC USE OF POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. Notre, votre** are used idiomatically, "the one we know about," especially of the hero of a story, as we say "our friend," "our young gentleman."

Je ne sais que **notre** secrétaire de **Florence** *qui ait eu le sens commun* (meaning Machiavelli). De Vigny.

Maître René de Genouillac — c'était le nom de **notre apothicaire.**

Obs. Notice also the use of **son,** "one's," in **faire son droit, ses humanités,** &c., *study law, classics,* &c.; **faire sa rhétorique,** *to be in the lower sixth;* **bien fait de sa personne,** &c.

Il n'y avait là rien qui sentît **son Académie.**

B. de Saint-Pierre.

63. **HOW TO ADDRESS RELATIVES.** In speaking to relatives or friends, the French generally use the possessive adjective, and say **mon père!** where we say *father!* **mon ami! mon frère! ma tante!**[1] In the same way, soldiers say to their officers **mon capitaine! mon général!**

Obs. 1. **Monsieur, madame** are very freely used in French (1) in speaking to other people of their relatives, as **monsieur votre père, mademoiselle votre sœur;** (2) in speaking of or to persons with titles, as **Monsieur le Comte de X., Monsieur le ministre.**

Obs. 2. **Monsieur** has become a common noun, as **mon bon monsieur, ce monsieur.** Not so *madame, mademoiselle;* we say **une jeune dame, cette dame.** But note **jouer à la madame,** *to play the fine lady.*

[1] But **maman! bonne-maman!** *grandmamma!* of course without possessive.

Obs. 3. **Monsieur, Madame,** are often used in French in speaking of a person present, when we should say *Mr. So-and-so*, or simply *he* or *she*.

64. **REPETITION OF POSSESSIVE.** Where in English a possessive adjective qualifies two or more nouns connected by a conjunction, it must be repeated in French.

Souvent nos malheurs et **nos** *torts sont la faute de nos mentors.*

But in a few legal phrases, as—**ses père et mère, mes frères et sœurs,** this rule is not observed.

64*a*. **POSSESSIVE IN FRENCH NOT IN ENGLISH.** In certain phrases, as **à sa rencontre,** *to meet him;* **de ma part,** *from me;* **à son compte, à son égard,** *with respect to him;* **à sa vue,** *at the sight of him;* **à mes côtés,** *beside me;* **à mon intention,** *meant for me*, French prefers the possessive adjective to the personal pronoun, often to represent the objective genitive.

65. **USE OF *EN* FOR POSSESSIVE.** *Its*, *their*, relating to things, are often translated by **en.** This is possible only when *its*, *their*, qualify the nominative or accusative of the verb, or the appositive complement.

Quand on est dans un pays, il faut **en** *suivre* **l'usage.**

But we cannot say *Cette terre est magnifique;* **j'en** *admire la fertilité* **du sol**; we must say—*j'admire la fertilité de* **son** *sol.*

VI.—Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives.

65*a*. *CE* **DECLINABLE FOR THE.** Occasionally **ce** is used with a noun followed by a relative when we prefer *the* or no qualifying word.

De ses vœux l'enfant presse
Ce temps *dont l'âge mûr accuse la vitesse.* Delavigne.

66. *CE* **INDECLINABLE.** The pronoun **ce** indeclinable is used, (1) As the antecedent (singular neuter) to all cases of the relative, **qui** (not *lequel*).

Ce que *vous dites*—**ce dont** *il se plaint.*

(2) As the nominative to **être** and to **pouvoir, devoir,** followed by *être*, also sometimes to **sembler.**

Qu'eût-il fait? c'eût été *lion contre lion.* La Fontaine.

La noblesse et l'argent sont brouillés, ce *me* semble.
Boursault.

Si elles ont échoué, ce peut *être une raison de laisser l'entreprise à d'autres.*

(3) Rarely in the accusative, as ce dit-il, ce voyant, ce nonobstant sur ce. Note in legal style:

Etant à ce *porté par esprit de chicane.* Racine.

66*a*. *CE* **AS NOMINATIVE TO** *ÊTRE*. As nominative to être, ce has three distinct uses:—

(1.) As a personal pronoun, to be rendered *he, she, it, they.*

(2.) As the neuter nominative of the impersonal *it is.*

(3.) Pleonastic.

67. *CE*, **MEANING HE, SHE, IT, THEY.** C'est, ce sont, &c.,[1] are often used in preference to il or elle est, ils or elles sont, &c., in speaking of persons known to the reader or already mentioned. Thus:—

Paulette n'est plus la même; l'autre jour c'était *une enfant; aujourd'hui,* c'est *presque une jeune fille.* Souvestre.

Les nègres blancs sont des nègres dégénérés de leur race, ce ne sont *pas une espèce d'hommes particulière.* Buffon.

Obs. C'est, ce sont, cannot be used if the verb be followed by a noun without an article, c'est un poète, but il est poète.

68. *CE* **USED TO TRANSLATE 'IT IS' IMPERSONAL.** The real subject in such cases is a noun or pronoun, or often a sentence or an infinitive put after the verb:—

Ce sont nos méthodes *qui nous égarent.*
B. de St.-Pierre.

Ce n'est *plus* Diderot, c'est Voltaire *qui nous le dira.*

C'est *un pesant fardeau* d'avoir un gros mérite.
Regnard.

Est-ce donc *pour veiller* qu'on se couche à Paris?
Boileau.

The true subjects of the last two sentences are d'avoir un grand mérite, and qu'on se couche à Paris.

[1] Notice the difference between *Quelle heure est-il?* What o'clock is it? and *Quelle heure est-ce?* What hour is that (I hear striking)?

The infinitive in such cases is preceded by **de**, more frequently by **que de**, occasionally by **que** only :

C'est mériter la mort **que** *l'attendre d'autrui.* Decaux.

69. *CE* **USED TO REPEAT THE REAL NOMINATIVE.** **Ce**, standing as the nominative to the verb **être**, is often pleonastic ; in fact, it repeats the nominative, and sums it up, just as *nous* does in the phrase *mon ami et moi nous partons demain* :—

Commander à ses passions, c'est *remporter la plus belle des victoires.*

L'Etat, c'est *moi.* Louis XIV.

Especially when the subject of **être** is the **ce** of **ce qui, ce que**—

Ce *que je sais le mieux,* **c'***est mon commencement.* Racine.

Obs. 1. This use of **ce**, though not necessary, adds liveliness to style. After **ce que, ce qui, ce** is more frequently inserted than omitted.

Obs. 2. When the real subject comes later in the sentence, it is preceded by **que** pleonastic—

C'est *un méchant métier* **que celui** *de médire.* Boileau.

Je crois commencer un peu à comprendre ce que **c'est que la poésie,** what poetry is. Béranger.

70. *CE SONT* **USED FOR** *C'EST.* The so-called impersonal use of **c'est** is not strictly impersonal ; when followed by a plural noun, or a plural pronoun of the *third* person, **ce sont, ce furent,** &c., are generally used.

Lorsqu'on sut que l'Académie songeait à lui encore plus qu'il ne songeait à elle, **ce furent des cris** *d'indignation,* **des rires** *ironiques.* Ste-Beuve.

Accordingly **ce sont eux,**[1] **ce sont elles,** but **c'est nous, c'est vous.**

---

[1] But *c'est* followed by a plural noun or *eux* is used by good authors. *Plus loin, c'est des portes garnies de clous énormes.* Balzac. *C'est eux qui ont bâti les douze palais.* Bossuet. Notice, in speaking of the time of day, *c'est onze heures qui viennent de sonner.* The following are required by euphony :—*ç'a été, c'eût été, sera-ce, fut-ce, fût-ce, si ce n'est.*

71. **TMESIS OF** *CE LÀ*. **Ce** used as in § 67, to represent something already spoken of, is often followed by **là** after the verb, which makes it more emphatic and definite.

Si **ce** *n'était pas* **là** *un titre à notre amitié, ce n'était non plus un titre à notre haine.* Lanfrey.

72. *CE* **OR** *IL* **AS NEUTER NOMINATIVE.** The impersonal *it is* followed by an adjective is sometimes rendered by **c'est**, and sometimes by **il est**. **C'est** is used when the phrase stands alone, and practically forms a parenthesis; **il est** when a clause or an infinitive with **de** follows.

C'est impossible! *On a eu toutes les preuves de sa fin horrible.* Mme. de Girardin.

Il est juste, *grand roi,* **qu'***un meurtrier périsse.* Corneille.

Il est si malaisé de *se défaire d'un vice qui plaît.* Massillon.

The same applies to phrases equivalent to adjectives, **il est d'usage, il est de règle, il est à craindre,** including nouns without article as **il est temps, il est besoin.**

Obs. 1. When the adjective expresses emotion, **c'est** is often used where a clause or infinitive follows.

C'est si bon de *penser qu'il est là!* Mme de Girardin.

Hence **c'est** (as well as *il est*) **à craindre, c'est dommage, c'est pitié.**

Obs. 2. **Il est vrai** is used as freely as **c'est vrai** in a parenthesis, and is less like an exclamation. In older French **il est** was often used with other adjectives in the same way, but this is no longer the case.

Obs. 3. **C'est** and not **il est** is used before adverbs of quantity, **peu, beaucoup, assez,** before nouns with an article, etc., and pronouns.

73. **REPETITION OF THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE.** The demonstrative adjective **ce, cette, ces,** is generally, like the possessive adjective, repeated before every noun of a group, though not necessarily so in English.

Except, when it precedes two words very closely connected in meaning, as **ces tribus ou castes, ces arts et métiers.**

74. **USE OF** *CELUI.* **Celui** is used—(1) as the antecedent to the relative **qui** (and all its cases); (2) before a genitive:—

Ceux dont *nous pleurons la mort.*
Celui qui *compte dix amis n'en a pas un.* Malesherbes.
La meilleure leçon est **celle des exemples.** La Harpe.

It is also used, but less frequently, before a participle, an adjective, or an expression equivalent to an adjective—

Ces éditions sont supérieures à **celles données** *par Corneille.*
Vos succès présents ne répondent de **ceux à venir.**

Obs. 1. **Celui,** as antecedent to the relative, must stand *immediately* before it. See § 75.

Obs. 2. **Lui qui, eux qui,** &c., are admissible when *lui, eux* refer to definite persons.

Pourquoi notre empereur, cet envoyé de Dieu,
Lui qui *fait tout mouvoir et* **qui** *met tout en feu,*
A-t-il ce regard froid, et cet air immobile? V. Hugo.

75. *CELUI-LÀ* **AS ANTECEDENT.** **Celui-là** is also used as the antecedent to the relative, but does not generally *immediately* precede it. This usage is dying out.

Celui-là *est riche,* **qui** *reçoit plus qu'il ne consume;* **celui-là** *est pauvre* **dont** *la dépense excède la recette.*
La Bruyère.

Which might also be written—**celui dont** *la dépense,* &c.

Obs. **Celui-là** is sometimes pleonastic, repeating a previous antecedent.

Ceux qui *connaissent la race romaine . . .* **ceux-là** *sentiront le récit de Tite-Live.* Taine.

76. *CELUI-CI* **AND** *CELUI-LÀ.* **Celui-ci,** like *hic,* denotes the nearer of two objects or persons to the speaker; **celui là,** like *ille,* the more remote. When they refer to two nouns in a preceding sentence, **celui-ci** denotes the latter, **celui-là** the former—

Corneille *nous assujettit à ses caractères et à ses idées;* **Racine** *se conforme aux nôtres.* **Celui-là** *peint les*

hommes comme ils devraient être ; **celui-ci** *les peint tels qu'ils sont.* La Bruyère.

A les regarder toutes deux, Anne et **Sarah,**[1] *l'histoire jurerait : La coupable, c'est* **celle-ci.** Michelet.

77. **USE OF** *CECI, CELA.* **Ceci, cela,** are not used in speaking of persons, nor do they refer back to a *noun* previously mentioned. They are used in two ways—

I. To denote something *pointed to* at the moment of speaking—

Ceci *est soie,* **cela** *est laine.* Acad.

II. As the *neuter* of the demonstrative pronoun, to refer to a sentence or idea. **Cela** is by far the most used for this purpose; **ceci** generally refers to something not yet mentioned—

Ce qui était inébranlable ne l'est plus, disait M. de Talleyrand; je ne dis que **cela,** *mais je dis* **cela.** Ch. de Rémusat.

Il était homme d'esprit, cultivé, et goûtait fort Virgile. Avec **cela,** *il était dissipé . . . .* Ste-Beuve.

Les poètes ont **ceci** *des hypocrites qu'ils défendent toujours ce qu'ils font.*

Obs. 1. **Cela** is sometimes used of persons in a very familiar or contemptuous style (*that fellow, that rogue*).

Cela *parle ;* **cela** *se vante, et* **cela** *ne sait rien.*

Obs. 2. In Molière, &c., **cela** is often used in the subject of *être.*

Cela *est étrange que mes propres enfants me trahissent.*

78. *TEL* **WITH OR WITHOUT ARTICLE.** **Tel** when used as an epithet and meaning simply *such,* is generally preceded by the indefinite article in the singular, by **de** in the plural.

Une telle *conduite vous fait honneur.* Bossuet.

Pour bien peindre **de telles** *choses il faut avoir un génie capable de les faire.* Fléchier.

In the predicate or in apposition it has no article and is generally followed by **que** :—

Telle *est sa bonté* **qu'***il se fait chérir de tout le monde.*

La voilà **telle que** *la mort nous l'a faite.*

---

[1] Sarah Churchill, Duchess of Marlborough.

Obs. 1. *Such a great man* is—**un si grand homme** ; the English really means so great a man.

Obs. 2. In 17th century French **tel**, meaning *such*, appears as an epithet without article.

Il y a **telle** *liaison entre notre corps et notre âme que . . . .*
Descartes.

79. **IDIOMATIC USES OF** *TEL.* The following should be noticed.

(1.) **Tel** standing by itself as a pronoun, or used as an epithet, and without the article, generally means *such and such*, and thus sometimes passes into the meaning *many a, many a one.*

Il y a **tel** *officier qui, à la rigueur, a fait son devoir, et qui, en plusieurs années de service, ne s'est pas trouvé à une seule action* (many an officer, I know of officers). Ste-Beuve.

Tel *brille au second rang qui s'éclipse au premier.* Voltaire.

Sometimes it almost takes the place of **celui** as antecedent to the relative.

Tel qui *rit vendredi, dimanche pleurera.* Racine.

(2.) **Tel que**—**tel** in two parts of a comparison.

Telle que *des loups ravissants s'élancent dans l'ombre,* **telle** *s'avançait* **la troupe** *des Troyens.*

Notice that the first **telle** agrees with **troupe**, not with **loups.** Somewhat similar are phrases like—

Tel *maître,* **tel** *valet* (Like master, like man).

(3.) **Tel quel**, the strict representative of the Latin *talis, qualis*, is only used elliptically, *such as it is*, and practically now means *mediocre, so-so:—des gens* **tels quels.**

Encore ce reste **tel quel** *va-t-il disparaître, cette ombre de gloire va s'évanouir.* Bossuet.

Where *ce reste tel quel* is evidently depreciatory, like *cette ombre de gloire.*[1] Note also *tellement quellement*, so-so.

80. **DIFFERENT USES OF** *MÊME.* *Même* is used in three different ways :—

[1] Notice also *Monsieur un tel*, Mr. So-and-So.

(1.) It may be a declinable adjective or pronoun, **le même,** *the same;* **ce même,** *this same*, as **ces mêmes hommes,** *these same men*, **les mêmes livres,** the same books, or again :—

Les symptômes ne furent pas partout **les mêmes.**

Sismondi.

In a few cases **même** without article means *the same*, namely in the phrase **en même temps,** *at the same time*, and in short, animated descriptions :—

Voici les frères Martin : **même** *taille,* **même** *figure.*

Un même, does not mean "the same as something going before." It is translated *one and the same*, or even *one*. Thus Taine renders :—

"Thus all the various kinds of interest which belong to the near and to the distant, to the present and to the past were collected on one spot and in one hour."

Macaulay.

. . . . *étaient rassemblés dans* **un même** *lieu et dans* **une même** *heure.*

(2.) It is appended to plural pronouns, and also to **celui** and to nouns, and means *self, itself*, &c. In this sense it is plural if the word to which it is appended is plural, as **eux-mêmes, nous-mêmes, ceux mêmes.**

Les montagnes mêmes *se séparent pour leur ouvrir un passage.* Le Sage.

(3.) It is an adverb and of course indeclinable.

Leurs vertus et **même** *leur noms étaient ignorés.*

Bernardin de St-Pierre.

Ses anciens disciples, ses amis, **ses ennemis même,** *venaient l'entendre.* Barthélemy.

The difficulty is, whether II. or III. should apply in the case of **même** following a noun or **ceux.** In the last example, where **ses ennemis** is compared with other words, and forms a climax, it is natural to follow III. ; otherwise, where there is only a single noun, as in *les montagnes mêmes*, the plural is generally used. (App. VI.)

Obs. Notice the idioms **être à même de,** to be competent to; **de même,** likewise.

VII.—Relative Pronouns.

81. **CONCORD OF THE RELATIVE.** The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number and person. Its case depends upon the construction of its own clause.

Les **récompenses auxquelles** *vous avez droit.*

Vous qui citiez *Horace, écoutez son conseil.* Ponsard.

Les **lettres que** *nous avons* **écrites.**

Ce sera **nos descendants** *qui nous* **jugeront.**

Comment, pendard! c'est **toi qui t'abandonnes** *à ces coupables extrémités.* Molière.

In the second example, **qui** requires **citiez** to be in the second plural; in the third **que** is feminine plural like its antecedent, and requires **écrites**, which agrees with it, to be of the same number and gender.

A difficulty is sometimes felt after **c'est, ce sont**: the fourth and fifth examples just given show the normal construction, but occasionally the third person is used in the relative clause.

Je vous demande si **ce** *n'est pas vous* **qui se nomme** *Sganarelle.* Molière.

82. **POSITION OF THE RELATIVE.** The relative in French generally stands immediately after its antecedent, or, at any rate, as near as possible to it. This is effected—

(1.) By transposition, as, for example, in translating—

"There happened between these two men a dispute about an affair of love, which grew to an irreconcilable hatred."

Il survint, entre ces deux hommes, pour une affaire d'amour, **une dispute qui . . .**[1]

(2.) By repeating the antecedent, or substituting a personal pronoun:—

Il n'est pas besoin d'insister beaucoup sur les caractères qui distinguent **les œuvres** *des grands tragiques,* **œuvres qui** *sont dans toutes les mémoires.*

(3.) By the use of **et qui, ou qui,** § 88 (2).

[1] Gasc's French Prose Composition, p. 10.

82*a*. *QUI* **AND** *QUE* **AS RELATIVES.** When the relative is the subject of a sentence it is ordinarily translated by **qui**, when the direct object by **que**. **Que** relative is further used (1) as an accusative of time, measure, &c., as in *les jours* **que** *j'ai vécu;* (2) as the appositive complement of **être, devenir,** &c., in which case it is generally preceded by *ce.*

L'imprimerie est à l'écriture ce **que** *l'écriture* **avait été** *aux hiéroglyphes.* Rivarol.

(3) as the logical subject of impersonal verbs.

Il en arrivera ce **qu'il pourra.** Acad.

83. **USE OF** *LEQUEL.* **Lequel** must be used

(1.) When an ambiguity not otherwise avoidable (see § 82) might arise as to the antecedent.

*Adam de Post, d'***une race saxonne** *du Hampshire,* **laquelle** *possédait vingt-cinq manoirs.* Ch. de Rémusat.

Le père *de la jeune fille,* **lequel** *nous a écrit.*

(2.) With prepositions when the antecedent is the name of a thing.

Le bagage *sans* **lequel** *je ne peux partir.*

(3.) After **parmi** and **entre** in all cases. But **lequel** cannot be used after **en.**

(4.) When the relative is in the genitive and depends on a noun governed by a preposition, **duquel, de laquelle,** &c., are used. If a person be referred to, *de qui* may be used.

Obs. Lequel is occasionally used as an epithet when the antecedent is repeated in the relative clause, and in the phrase **auquel cas.**

Elle avait aimé un **comte** *de Trémigon,* **lequel comte** *ayant dû l'épouser avait avait ensuite violé sa promesse.* Chateaubriand.

83*a*. **USE OF** *QUOI.* If the antecedent be **ce, rien** or an indefinite neuter expression (including some nouns), **quoi** is used after all prepositions except **de.**

Il n'y a **rien sur quoi** *l'on ait tant disputé.* Acad.

Au milieu de ses désordres, il fallut cependant **adopter un ordre, sans quoi** *la confusion de la matière eût encore ajouté à l'insuffisance de l'auteur.* B. de St-Pierre.

C'était presque **la seule chose à quoi** *ils distinguaient les catholiques des luthériens.* Voltaire.

Le point en quoi *Condorcet se sépare de Turgot est ici très net et très sensible.* Ste-Beuve.

Obs. 1. In this case the antecedent is sometimes understood, especially before **de quoi** followed by an infinitive.

Il y avait là **de quoi**[1] *charmer les plus pieux.* Guizot.

Obs. 2. Hence the use of **de quoi** absolutely, as in phrases like **avoir de quoi** (*vivre* understood).

Je n'en sais rien ; mais les savants je voi
Faire la cour à ceux qui ont **de quoi.**

Note the idiom **il n'y a pas de quoi**, "don't mention it," when one is thanked; also *il se plaint,* **voilà bien de quoi!** ironically.

Obs. In the seventeenth century *quoi* was still used with an ordinary noun antecedent—

Voilà de ces **pensées à quoi** *je ne résiste pas.*
De Sévigné.

84. **USE OF** *DONT.* **Dont**, which is really an adverb, is used almost exclusively in modern French for the genitive of the relative, except when the genitive depends on a noun governed by a preposition.

(1.) Genitive governed by verb:—

Vous ne connaissez pas la personne **dont** *il* **s'agissait.**
Racine.

(2.) Genitive governed by an appositive complement:—

Ils eurent une vigueur **dont** *ils ne se croyaient point* **capables.** Fénelon.

(3.) Genitive governed by subject or object:—

Heureux le peuple **dont l'histoire** *est ennuyeuse.*
Fuir n'est un déshonneur
Que pour ceux **dont** *on peut soupçonner* **la valeur.**
Crébillon.

(4.) Instrument or manner (see § 130, 137):—

Quel pouvoir a brisé l'éternelle barrière,
Dont *le ciel sépara l'enfer et la lumière?*[2] **Voltaire.**
L'air **dont** *il m'a reçu m'a surpris.* Marmontel.

[1] *de quoi* = wherewith, wherewithal. [2] Scarcely a modern use.

(5.) Meaning *from which*:—

Du sang **dont** *vous sortez rappelez la mémoire.* Racine.

Obs. 1. When motion is implied **d'où** is used, not *dont*.

Obs. 2. In the seventeenth century **de qui** is often used where *dont* is now required.

Il court parmi le monde un livre abominable,
Et **de qui** *la lecture est même condamnable.* Molière.

85. **ORDER OF SENTENCE AFTER** *DONT*. **Dont** being really an adverb, not a pronoun, does not affect the order of the sentence any more than **plus, autant,** &c. Therefore, when the object of the verb governs **dont,** the object stands in its natural place after the verb, and not next to **dont,** so that it would be wrong to say above:—

. . . *dont la valeur on peut soupçonner.*

86 **NOUN AFTER** *DONT* **HAS ARTICLE.** Remember also that the noun governing **dont** *must* have the *definite article*, whether in the nominative or accusative; thus **dont l'histoire** above, though in English it is *whose history*, in German deſſen Geſchichte.

87. *DONT* **NOT USED WITH A NOUN GOVERNED BY PREPOSITION.** If the relative be governed in the genitive by a noun depending on a preposition, **de qui, duquel,** &c., must be used, not **dont.**

Le roi, aux bienfaits **de qui** (or **duquel**) *vous devez tout.*
Boniface.

Ils plantent aux murs des échelles, **à l'aide desquelles** *ils montent* . . . . Michaud.

In fact, **dont** must depend on the verb itself, its subject, or its object.

88. **IDIOMATIC USES OF RELATIVE.** There are two idioms connected with the use of the relative in which French differs widely from English.

(1.) In English a relative clause beginning with *whose* often contains a personal pronoun in the accusative or dative, referring to the same

person. In French they prefer to use the ***relative*** pronoun in the accusative or dative. Thus:—

A man *whose* virtues have endeared *him* to his countrymen.

Un homme **que ses** *vertus ont rendu cher à ses compatriotes.*
Not—*dont les vertus l'ont*, &c.

Il le devait sans doute à son père, **à qui sa** *belle mine et* **ses** *airs de héros de roman avaient valu dans la société le surnom d'Orondate.* Ste-Beuve.

Not—*dont la belle mine . . . . lui avaient valu.*

(2.) It is not strictly correct in English to couple a relative clause by *and* to an adjective or an expression equivalent to an adjective. In French this construction is not uncommon, provided the adjective be an epithet, not a predicate.

C'est là un **grand aveu, et qui** *explique bien des choses.* Ste-Beuve.

In English we must say, either—*a great admission which . . . .*, or, *a great admission, and one which . . . .*

88*a*. **QUI DEMONSTRATIVE.** **Qui . . . . qui** are used in a few phrases to mean *some—the others;* of course **qui** is then demonstrative.

Nos gens, faisant main basse sur tout, s'en vont **qui** *deçà,* **qui** *delà.* Courier.

Tout cela est sorti du gouffre où nous voici attelés du matin au soir, **qui** *à une roue ou à une pince,* **qui** *à une barre de fer ou à un marteau.* G. Sand.

89. *OÙ* **FOR** *AUQUEL, DANS LEQUEL.* The word **où** is often used instead of **lequel** with **à** or **dans**, in speaking of *things.*

Libre du joug superbe **où** *je suis attaché* (to which). Racine.
La douleur **où** *elle est plongée* (in which).
Il abdique le jour **où** *son autorité est méconnue.* Napoléon.

Obs. 1. **Que** is used, but by no means so frequently in modern French, in the same way.

En l'état **qu'***ils sont, vous pouvez continuer vos amours.* Molière.

Obs. 2. Notice also **par où**, *through which*, **d'où**, *from among which, whence,* corresponding to the German **wodurch**, **woraus**, and to the English compounds of *where.* **D'où** is almost always used for *from which* after verbs of motion.

Les endroits **par où** *nous passons.* Acad.

Vénus remonte dans un nuage **d'où** *elle était sortie.* Fénelon.

D'où, par où are also used as interrogatives.

Ils me sommèrent de leur apprendre qui j'étais, **d'où** *je venais.* Le Sage.

89*a.* **WHEN WITH AN ANTECEDENT.** Notice especially that *when* with an antecedent (as *the day when*), must be rendered by **où** or **que**, and not by *quand.*

Dans **le moment où** *ils allaient commencer leur repas.* Fénelon.

Un temps *viendra* **que** *tous les hommes, soumis à la seule pensée, se conduiront par les clartés de l'esprit.* Chateaub.

90. **USE OF** *CE QUI*, &c. *Which*, referring to a sentence as its antecedent, is rendered by **ce qui, ce que,** in the nominative and accusative, in the genitive (*of which*) by **ce dont.** After prepositions **quoi** is used. But **qui, que, dont** cannot in modern French have a sentence for antecedent.[1]

On ne fait pas entrer d'ordinaire l'armée de Masséna dans cette évaluation, **ce qui** *est un tort.* Lanfrey.

Il fut résolu qu'on me laisserait servir encore quelque temps, **après quoi** *on m'accorderait la place.* Le Sage.

91. **WHAT, THAT.** When *what, that*, mean *that which*, they are translated by **ce qui, ce que,** *of what* by **ce dont.**

Ce qui *fait le héros, dégrade souvent l'homme.*

On ne peut désirer **ce qu'on** *ne connaît pas.* Voltaire.

Il m'a raconté tout **ce dont** *vous avez parlé.*

---

[1] In the seventeenth century, **qui** was often used with a sentence for antecedent. *Madame de Dreux sortit hier de prison ;* **elle fut admonestée, qui** *est une très légère peine.* De Sévigné.

91*a*. **WHATEVER.** *Whatever* may begin a substantival sentence, *i.e.*, a sentence which is the subject or object of a verb; it is then rendered by **tout ce qui, tout ce que.** Or it may begin an adverbial sentence, and be nearly equivalent to *if . . . anything.* It is then rendered by **quelque chose que, quoi que,** &c. See § 108.

92. **OMISSION OF ANTECEDENT.** There are a few cases in which the relative stands without antecedent: —

(1.) **Celui** may be omitted; **qui means** ***whoever, whomsoever.***

Qui *sert les malheureux, sert la divinité.* De la Touche.

Que n'a-t-elle aimé Beethoven au lieu de Gœthe! elle aurait trouvé **qui** *lui aurait rendu don pour don.* Ste-Beuve.

Sauve **qui** *peut.* ***Cherchez*** **qui** (not ***que***) ***vous voudrez.***

Notice the phrase, **comme qui dirait,** as though one were to say, *literally*, as a person (would say) who should say . . . .

(2.) **Celui** may be omitted, and the relative attracted into the case in which **celui** should have been.

Un écrivain distingué proposait **à qui** *prétendrait que l'Angleterre était aristocratique de prouver qu'elle était démocratique, et l'inverse.* Ch. de Rémusat.

Notice **c'était à qui le ferait,** literally, *the contest was as to who . . . .; they vied with each other who should do it.*

Les nobles polonais accouraient chez le prince Constantin. **C'était à qui** *lui ferait ses offres de services,* **à qui** *lui donnerait la fête la plus splendide.* Mérimée.

(3.) **Ce** is omitted after **voilà, voici.**

Voilà qui *va bien,* that's capital (literally, behold that which goes on well).

So, too, in the phrases **qui pis est,** *what is worse,* **qui plus est,** *what is more,* inserted parenthetically.

93. **PUNCTUATION OF RELATIVE SENTENCES.**

(1.) A relative clause, unless very short, is, contrary to English usage, *followed* by a comma. This usage, however, is now by no means always observed.

(2.) A relative clause is not ordinarily separated from its ante-

cedent by a comma. If it is so separated, it no longer simply qualifies the antecedent, but introduces a fresh and generally a parenthetical statement. This is illustrated by a misprint in the first edition of Borel's French Grammar. He had written :—

> *Les Français qui n'ont pas reçu d'instruction, disent ordinairement, je m'ai promené* (for *je me suis promené*), meaning *such Frenchmen as are ill-educated.*

By a mistake of the printer a comma was inserted after *les Français*, and the meaning then became—

> Frenchmen, who (I should add) are all uneducated men, usually say *je m'ai promené.*

93*a*. **QUICONQUE**, like the English *whoever*, often combines in one word relative and antecedent.

> *Chose incroyable* pour quiconque *n'a pas vu à l'œuvre les haines de parti.* Lanfrey.

93*b*. **ATTRACTION.** In seventeenth century French the genitive or dative of the relative is often used after a genitive or dative, rather than que.

> *C'est* à sa table à qui *l'on rend visite.* Molière.
> *Ce n'est que* de la santé dont *il est question en ce monde.* De Sévigné.

VIII.—Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives.

94. **DIFFERENT CLASSES OF INTERROGATIVES.** An interrogation may be either *direct*, as—

> What are you doing?

or else *dependent or indirect*, as—

> I want to know what you are doing.

It is important to bear this distinction in mind, especially in translating the English word *what.*

95. *QUI* **INTERROGATIVE.** The interrogative pronoun **qui** (*who, whom*) is used exactly as its English equivalent, *i.e.*, both in direct and indirect questions, and in all constructions, as subject, object, or dependent upon prepositions. It refers to persons, not to things.

De qui *Alexandre était-il le fils?*
Qui *voyez-vous là-bas?*—**A qui** *en voulez-vous?*
Je lui demandai **de qui** *il se plaignait.*

Obs. In older French and in poetry **qui** interrogative is used of things. It is also found in modern prose.

Qui *te rend si hardi de troubler mon breuvage?* La Font.
Qui *vous irrite?* **Un crime.** Delavigne.

96. *QUE* **INTERROGATIVE.** The interrogative pronoun **que** (*what*) is used in direct questions, of things:—

(1.) As the accusative of a transitive verb.
Que *faites-vous?*

(2.) As the *appositive complement* with the verb *to be*, etc.
Que *sont devenus ces Romains qui persécutaient l'église?*

(3.) As the *logical subject* of a verb used impersonally.
Que *s'est-il donc passé?* Delavigne.
Que *te semble, à toi, de cette personne.* Molière.

In the latter example *il* is suppressed with *semble*.

Thus it remains to translate *what?*—(1.) as the nominative to a verb in a direct question.—(2.) when governed by a preposition in a direct question, and (3.) in an indirect question.

97. **PERIPHRASTIC FORMS OF THE INTERROGATIVE.** In direct questions the following periphrastic (*i.e.*, roundabout) forms are used:—

As subject	**qui est-ce qui?**	who is it who? = who?
	qu'est-ce qui?	what is it that? = what?
As object or appositive complement	**qui est-ce que?**	who is it whom? = whom
	qu'est-ce que?	what is it that? = what?

Of course none of these forms can be used with prepositions.

98. *WHAT* **AS DEPENDENT INTERROGATIVE.** The dependent interrogative *what* is translated **ce qui, ce que,** when subject, object, or appositive complement ; by **quoi** after a preposition.

La question n'est pas de savoir **ce qui** *nous convient, mais* **ce à quoi** *nous convenons.* Souvestre.

On commence à sentir **en quoi** *Fontenelle se différencie des écrivains frivoles.* Ste-Beuve.

Obs. **Que** is used in *indirect questions of appeal* before an infinitive, as

Je ne sais **que résoudre.** Ducis.

99. *WHAT* **RENDERED BY** *QUOI.* **Quoi** is used to translate *what* in four cases.

(1.) After a preposition.

Je veux savoir **de quoi** *vous vous plaignez.*

(2.) Before a partitive genitive.

Quoi de plus grand *que d'être né pour le bonheur des siècles à venir.*

(3.) In some elliptical expressions, as **je ne sais quoi** (*nescio quid*).

(4.) In the phrase **quoi faire ?** which is used as well as **que faire ?**

100. **SUMMARY OF RULES ON INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.** Hence, to sum up, we have, speaking of *persons*,—

In direct questions :—

Subject	**qui ?** or **qui est-ce qui ?**
Object or app. comp.	**qui ?** or **qui est-ce que ?**
After prepositions .	**qui ?**

In indirect questions :—

Subject	**qui.**
Object or app. comp.	**qui.**
After prepositions .	**qui.**

In speaking of *things*,

In direct questions :—

Subject	**qu'est-ce qui ?**
Object or app. comp.	**que ?** or **qu'est-ce que ?**
After prepositions .	**quoi ?**

In indirect questions :—

Subject	**ce qui.**
Object or app. comp.	**ce que.**
After prepositions .	**quoi.**

101. **REPEATED QUESTIONS.** There is a remarkable use of the dependent interrogative **ce que, ce qui,** to repeat a question before answering it, when the question itself excites some surprise.[1] Thus—

A. *Que faites-vous donc là ?*

B. **Ce que** *je fais ! Vous n'avez qu'à regarder.* (What am I doing ! Do you ask what I am doing !)[2]

102. **TO TRANSLATE** *WHOSE?* The English possessive, *whose?* depending on a noun, cannot be translated literally. With the verb *to be* **à qui** is used.

A qui est *ce manteau ?* Whose cloak is that ?

In other examples it is necessary to use **quel,** and so not express the sense quite completely, or to adopt a periphrasis, as—

Quelle *main a versé ce sang ?* Whose hand . . . . ?

Where, of course, we might say, "Who is the murderer whose hand . . . . ?" or use any other periphrasis.

103. **INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE. Quel** is used exactly as the interrogative adjectives, *what, which,* in Eng-

---

[1] Compare in Greek, *Ar.* Ran. 198—Charon *οὗτος τί ποιεῖς ;* Dionysus *ὅτι ποιῶ.*

[2] So even in answer to an implied question. Thus in *le Duc Job* (Laya), one of the speakers is recounting the misfortunes of a friend in distress, and continues in answer to a gesture of the interlocutor : *Ce que furent ses épreuves ? Pour en juger il faut en avoir vu comme moi les ravages.*

lish, to qualify a noun. It is also used alone as the predicate or appositive complement when in a question the word *what?* means, not *what thing?* but *what town? what fate?* &c., requiring some noun to be supplied with it.

Quel *sera le destin de tant de malheureux?*
Et enfin **quels** *sont ses torts?* De Vigny.
But **Que** *sera cet enfant qui ne se peut connaître?* Voltaire.

104. *LEQUEL* **WITH GENITIVE.** **Lequel** is used both in direct and in indirect questions, and is either followed by a partitive genitive, or easily admits of one being supplied after it. In speaking of persons **qui** may take its place.

Laquelle de ces deux villes *est la plus illustre, Athènes ou Rome?*
Laquelle *préfères-tu, d'Athènes ou de Rome?*
D'Esther, d'Aman qui *le doit emporter?* Racine.

IX.—Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns.

105. **USE OF** *ON, SOI.* **On** requires the verb agreeing with it to be in the third person singular. It has no oblique cases of its own; we must, therefore use **se** or **soi** to refer to it in its own clause, **nous** or **vous** according to the sense in another clause.

Peut-on recevoir un présent sans vouloir **se** *donner,* **soi** *aussi, en présent, remarqua-t-elle.* Ste-Beuve.

Quand le bonheur **vous** *guide,* **on** *doit suivre ses pas.* Destouches.

On s'*applaudit des éloges qui* **nous** *reviennent.*

Obs. 1. The adjectives referring to **on** may be in the plural, if the sense demands it, and either masculine or feminine.

Quand **on** *est* **jeunes, riches, et jolies,** *comme vous mesdames.* **on** *n'est pas* **réduites** *à l'artifice.* Diderot.

Obs. 2. **On** is often used instead of one of the definite personal pronouns **je, tu,** &c. The same idiom is not uncommon in conversational English.

Et **vous,** *à m'obéir, prince, qu'*on *se prépare.* Racine.

On *a certains attraits, un certain enjouement,*
Que personne ne peut **me** *disputer, je pense.* Molière.

In the first example **on** stands for **vous,** in the second for **je.**

106. **USE OF** *L'ON.* **L'on** is *generally* used in preference to **on** (1) after words ending in any other vowel than **e** mute, (2) after the words **et, si, où, qui, quoi, ou.**

Ce qu'on a bien aimé, l'on *ne peut le haïr.* Corneille.

Le véritable Amphitryon,[1]
C'est l'Amphitryon où l'on *dîne.* Molière.

After **que,** the usage is by no means fixed.

On n'est jamais si ridicule par les qualités que l'on *a que par celles* qu'on *affecte d'avoir.*

Of course, expressions like *qu'on connaît, qu'on comprend,* must be avoided for euphony's sake. So also should the use of **l'on** before a word beginning with **l.**

107. *SOI* **REQUIRES AN INDEFINITE SUBJECT.** **Soi** is used almost exclusively in sentences, the subject of which is an *indefinite* word like **on, tout le monde, personne, chacun,** and so on, or in sentences where an impersonal verb being used, no subject is expressed.

Chacun *ne songe plus qu'à* **soi.** Rousseau.
Aucun *n'est prophète chez* **soi.** La Fontaine.
St-Simon qui lisait dans tous les plis de cet amour-propre avantageux et content de **soi.** Ste-Beuve.

It is also often used in reference to inanimate objects; seldom in reference to a person.

L'aimant *attire le fer à* **soi.**

This limitation was not always observed in 17th century French:

*Quels démons, quels serpents, traîne-t-*elle[2] *après* **soi**? Racine.

[1] Hence the use of Amphitryon to mean a host. [2] Hermione.

108. *QUELQUE, QUEL QUE, QUOI QUE, QUI QUE.* *Whatever* (adjective) is translated by **quelque** with **que** or **qui** when it is an epithet, by **quel que** when it is the appositive complement or part of the predicate with **être**.

(1) **Quelques** *défauts* **que** *vous ayez, il faut les corriger.*

De **quelque** *côté* **qu'***il se tournât, il trouva des obstacles.*

Sometimes when adjective and noun form one idea.

Quelques bonnes raisons que *vous puissiez donner . . .*

(2) **Quels que** *soient vos défauts, il faut les corriger.*

Obs. 1. *Whatever* (pronoun in an adverbial sentence, see § 91*a*), is **quoi que**; *whoever*, as appositive complement, **qui que**; *wherever*, **où que**.

Quoi que *d'autres aient fait, il fait bien pis encore.*
Ponsard.

Hélas! **où que** *vous soyez, vous êtes mort pour moi.*
Rousseau.

Qui que *ce soit, parlez et ne le craignez pas.* Racine.

Obs. 2. It is important to distinguish from both (1) and (2) the *adverb* **quelque** used to qualify adjectives and adverbs, and translated *however*.

Quelque *grands* **que** *soient vos défauts, il faut*, &c.
Quelque *savamment* **que** *vous parliez. . .*

Obs. 3. Instead of **quelque** in Obs. 2 we find **tout** (declined when euphony requires it, § 40), **si**, and, with a slightly different sense, **pour peu que**.

La valeur, **tout** *héroïque* **qu'***elle est, ne suffit pas pour faire des héros.*

O mort, attends un peu! **Pour peu que** *tu retardes,*
J'enverrai devant moi de belles avant-gardes. Ponsard.
(However little you delay—if you delay ever so little. . . .).

Si *inventeur* **que** *soit un esprit, il n'invente guère.* Taine.

Tout is used when there is no idea of comparison.

Tout *mort qu'il est, Thésée est présent à vos yeux.* Rac.

Si implies but a slight possibility of comparison; **quelque** is quite indefinite.

Obs. 4. The adverb **quelque**, used with numbers, and meaning

about, upwards of, must not be confounded with the indefinite *adjective* **quelque**, *some, a few.*

Alexandre perdit **quelque trois cents** *hommes.*

Obs. 5. **Quelques** in the plural means *some*, and frequently *a few*. It may be preceded by **les, ces,** &c.[1]

109. **TRANSLATION OF** *ANY*. The word *any* is rendered by different French words, according to the form of the sentence in which it occurs.

I. In an affirmative sentence, *any* means *any you please* (Latin *quivis, quilibet*). It is then rendered by **tout**, *anybody* by **tout le monde**, *anything* by **tout**.

Toute *autre aurait pour moi pris les mêmes ombrages* (any other woman). Racine.

Hatto, je te défie, à pied, sur la pelouse,
À **toute** *arme, en champ-clos, sans délai, sans merci* (with any weapons you please). V. Hugo.

C'est un homme à **tout** *croire* (to believe anything).

II. In a negative sentence, or one which implies a negative (requiring in Latin *quisquam, ullus*), *any one* is rendered by **personne**, *any thing* by **rien**, *any* by **aucun**, or by the partitive genitive. Where emphasis is necessary, as in translating *any whatsoever*, **qui que ce soit** (fût), **quoi que ce soit** (fût) are used.

L'amour est un tyran qui n'épargne **personne**. Corneille.
Nous marchâmes plus d'une heure et demie sans rencontrer **personne**.
La gloire des conquêtes a-t-elle **rien** *qui égale le plaisir?*
Ce roi doit-il avoir **d'***autre volonté que celle de la loi?* Mignet.
C'est un duel à mort qui n'aura **d'***autre témoin que toi seul.*
Désormais je ne douterai de **quoi que ce soit**.

The same applies after a comparative where, if there were a verb, it would have **ne**.

*Un malheur instruit mieux qu'***aucune** *remontrance.* La Chaussée.

---

[1] As for example—

Les quelques *vers placés en tête de ce recueil* V. Hugo.

III. After *if*, and in interrogative sentences simply asking for information, *any* is translated by **quelque**, *any one* by **quelqu'un** *any thing* by **quelque chose** (Latin *quis*, *ecquis*, &c.).

S'*il y a* **quelque chose** *de nouveau, je vous demande en grâce de me le dire.*

Connaissez-vous **quelqu'un** *qui l'entende?*

Obs. Remember the difference between questions asked for information, and questions which are really only negations. Thus, *Y a-t-il* **quelque chose** *de plus parfait que ce tableau?* asks without forcing you to answer "No." *Y a-t-il* **rien** *de plus parfait?* &c., insists on a negative answer; and is really equivalent to saying "There is nothing more perfect."

110. **USE OR OMISSION OF THE ARTICLE WITH** *TOUT*. **Tout** may be used in a *distributive* sense, corresponding to the English *every*. It has then no article.

En **tous pays** *tous les bons cœurs sont frères.* Florian.

En **toute chose** *il faut considérer la fin* (in each thing singly, each and all). La Fontaine.

So **en tous sens**, in every direction, **de toutes parts**, on all sides, **toutes sortes de gens**, &c.

Or **tout** may be used to mean *all*, *the whole of*, without thinking of the different items singly. It is then followed by an article, unless there is already a demonstrative or possessive adjective before the noun.

Toute la *doctrine des mœurs.* Bossuet.

La coquetterie détruit et étouffe presque **toutes les vertus.** De Genlis.

There is an idiomatic use of *tout* of which the best English rendering is with the word *only*.

Lui qui n'avait pour **toute** *religion qu'une foi plus souvent affectée que réelle en son étoile.* Lanfrey.

Obs. 1. With names of towns **tout** (undeclined) is used without article to mean *all*, *the whole of*, **tout Florence, tout Rome,**

like ganz Berlin, ganz Paris, but, of course, *toute l'Europe, toute la belle France.*[1]

Obs. 2. **Tout** is sometimes used to mean *every one*, like Alles in German.

Tout *fuit*, **tout** *se refuse à mes embrassements.* Racine.

Obs. 3. **Tout,** *everything*, **rien,** *nothing*, if governed by a verb in the infinitive, generally precede it.

Tout rêver, tout tenter, *le moyen de* **tout perdre.**

117. **IDIOMS WITH** *AUTRE.* **Autre** in the plural, if not preceded by the definite article, is nearly always preceded by **de**, whether standing alone or as an epithet. In the singular it mostly takes the definite or indefinite article, or else a pronominal adjective or *nul.*

Quoi que **d'autres** *aient fait, il fait bien pis encore.*
Ponsard.

But **autre** is used without article :—

(1.) In the expressions **autre part,** *elsewhere*, **de part et d'autre,** *on both sides.*

(2.) In epigrammatic phrases like :—

Autres *temps*, **autres** *mœurs.*

(3.) When **autre chose . . . . autre chose** are used to mean *one thing . . . . another thing*, or **autre chose** alone to mean *a different thing* :—

Autre chose *d'agir avec un père*, **autre chose** *de répondre devant un juge.* Bossuet.

Obs. 1. **Autre que** means *different from what, other than*, and is used as an appositive complement.

Félicitons-nous de voir l'Angleterre devenue **autre que** *ne l'avait faite la guerre contre la révolution française.*

Obs. 2. **Autre** is used pleonastically with **nous, vous,** to make a contrast clearer. Thus an Englishman might say **vous autres,**

---

[1] The declension of *tout* when really an adverb is discussed under adjectives, § 40. Remember that *tous*, when not followed by a word which it qualifies, is pronounced *touss.*

Français, nous autres Anglais, meaning simply *you Frenchmen, we Englishmen.*[1]

Obs. 3. *Both* is rendered by **l'un et l'autre** or **tous les deux**; *neither* by **ni l'un ni l'autre**; *either* by **l'un ou l'autre.**

Obs. 4. **Autre** *sometimes* comes to mean *greater*, especially with **bien**, as **d'une bien autre importance**, far more important.

Obs. 5. **Autrui** is only used after prepositions, and in cases where "all other persons" are meant. In fact, the world is made up of **soi** and **autrui.** In most cases *others* is rendered by **d'autres.**

*Dans le bonheur d'***autrui** *je cherche mon bonheur.*

Corneille.

X.—Accusative Case and Use of Faire.

112. **TRANSITIVE VERBS IN ENGLISH AND FRENCH.** Most of the verbs which in English govern an accusative of the nearer object are represented by transitive verbs in French, but—

Some English intransitives with a preposition are represented by French transitives. Such are **écouter,** *listen to;* **espérer,** *hope for;* **attendre,** *wait for.*

Many intransitive verbs are also used transitively. Such are **sortir,** properly *to go out*, also *to carry out;* **monter, descendre,** properly *to go up, to go down*, also *to carry up, to carry down;* **sonner,** *to ring*, or *to ring for;* **entrer,** *to come in*, or *to bring in.*

Again, some transitive verbs are used intransitively—**donner dans un piège,** *to fall into a trap*, **la fenêtre donne sur la rue,** *looks on to the street*, **la mode prend,** *the fashion takes*, **tenir ferme,** *to stand fast*, &c.

Very often a reflexive verb with **de** or **à** is used where, in English, we prefer a transitive verb, as **se moquer de, s'aper-**

[1] Compare in Greek, *οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος οὐδὲ ἄλλο δένδρον οὐδέν*, and in Latin—

Inde alias animas, quæ per juga longa sedebant,
Deturbat. Virgil, *Æn.* vi. 46.

In Spanish the personal pronoun is actually *nosotros.*

cevoir de. The active forms of many such verbs, as **échapper, apercevoir,** are also used transitively.

112*a*. **PLACE OF THE ACCUSATIVE.** If a noun which is the direct object of a verb stands first in its sentence, it must be repeated by a pronoun before a verb. (52)

La mort *qu'il veut fuir, il* **la** *porte en son sein.*
Delavigne.

113. **COGNATE ACCUSATIVE.** The cognate accusative with an intransitive verb, as *to sleep a sleep, to laugh a laugh*, exists in a few expressions, **jouer**[1] **un jeu, danser une danse, aller le pas,** but it is more frequently rendered by a genitive, as, **dormir d'un sommeil calme ; vivre d'une nouvelle vie ; mourir d'une mort naturelle.**

Cinq-Mars **rit aussi, mais d'un rire** *amer.* Musset.

Obs. 1. A construction resembling the cognate accusative is not uncommon. Thus in **respirer luxe, courir risque, parler français, parler toilette,** the intransitive verb **respirer,** instead of a word meaning *a breath*, has **luxe** after it.

En m'entendant **parler guerre, assauts** *et* **bataille.**
V. Hugo.

Obs. 2. Under this head fall **sentir, puer,** *to smell of.*

Cet ouvrage **sent la lampe.** Acad.

113*a*. **ENGLISH NOUNS AS VERBS.** In English there are many expressions, like *to elbow one's way through a crowd, to iron the creases out of a dress.* There is no corresponding idiom in French, but we must use a periphrasis : **se faire jour à travers la foule à coups de coude, faire disparaître (enlever) les plis en repassant.**

Similar expressions are **tuer à coups de pierres,** *to stone to death ;* **s'endormir à force de pleurer,** *to cry oneself to sleep ;* **tuer d'un coup de fusil,** *to shoot dead ;* **faire taire à force de tousser,** *to cough down.*

---

[1] In the phrase *jouer un jeu d'enfer ;* but *à quel jeu jouez-vous ? jouer au whist, jouer du piano.*

113*b*. **NO DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.** The double accusative, with verbs of *teaching*, does not occur in French, though *to teach* takes an accusative either of the person or of the thing. Thus we say **instruire un enfant, enseigner la géographie**, but **enseigner la géographie à un enfant**, or **instruire un enfant dans la géographie.**

114. **TIME AND PLACE.** Time *how long*, and space *over which* are, as in other languages, put in the accusative.

Les Français travaillèrent **toute la nuit.** Ségur.
Ce bruit a été entendu **une lieue** *à la ronde.* Acad.
Les jours **que** *j'ai vécu.*[1]

Obs. 1. Time *when*, to express which we should expect a preposition, is often rendered by the simple accusative.

Il renvoyait ses auditeurs à ce qu'il avait dit **la veille.**
Nous ne sommes pas **1793**; *nous sommes* **1847.** Lamartine.

In giving the day of the week or month, the preposition used in English is nearly always omitted in French.

Obs. 2. The same applies to expressions of *place*, answering the questions *where?* or *whither?* and forming adverbs, **nulle part, quelque part, autre part**; also to names of streets similarly used—

Il crut que sa présence **Rue Corail** *était indispensable.*
R. d. D. M.

Obs. 3. Even *price* with verbs like **estimer**, &c., is often put in the accusative, where we should use a preposition in English—

Elle **vend** *ce secret* **mille louis** *à Fouché.* Bourrienne.
Il commença à **être estimé ce** *qu'il valait.*

115. **CONSTRUCTION OF *FAIRE* WITH ANOTHER INFINITIVE.** **Faire** always governs an accusative when followed by the infinitive or a neuter verb, nearly always when followed by the infinitive of a verb taking **de** or **à**.

Il **fait naître** *et* **mûrir** *les fruits.* **Racine.**
La nature **les a fait naître** *dans l'obscurité.*
On **le fit renoncer** *à ses prétentions.*

[1] Where *vécu* uninflected shows that *que* is not the ordinary accusative. See chapter on Participles, § 223.

But if the infinitive dependent on **faire** governs an accusative, whether that accusative be a noun, pronoun, or substantival sentence, then the noun or pronoun governed by the combination of **faire** and the infinitive is in the dative.

Son père voulut **lui faire épouser** *la fille de Louis XI.*
Michelet.

Lui *avez-vous* **fait observer** *que je n'y consentais pas?*
Acad.

Il voulait **faire comprendre à l'Angleterre** *de quoi il s'agissait.*

The direct object of **épouser** is *la fille;* of **observer**, the clause *que je . . .*; of **comprendre** the clause *de quoi . . .*

Obs. 1. To explain these constructions we must remember that **faire** is really an auxiliary, forming with the following infinitive a sort of factitive verb like *fell* (make to fall) in English, or **fprengen** in German. It is this compound verb that really governs the cases. There are three points to be noticed:—

(1.) The object, if a noun, comes after the compound, *il* **fait naître les fruits**, not *il fait les fruits naître.*

(2.) The past participle of *faire* is uninflected (228), even with an intransitive infinitive, *il* **les a fait naître**, which is not the case with participles like **vu, entendu.**

(3.) When the infinitive with **faire** is transitive, the combination takes a direct and indirect object, two direct objects being out of the question in French. Thus the first example above might be rendered, "Her father wished to give to him in marriage his daughter . . ."; the second, "Did you show him that . . .", and so on.

Obs. 2. Notice that a transitive infinitive with **faire** is often rendered by the English passive. Thus, *j'ai* **fait timbrer** *la lettre*, which is literally "*I made stamp the letter*," is rendered *I caused the letter to be stamped*, or more idiomatically *I had the letter stamped.*

Obs. 3. The agent may be expressed by **de** or **par** instead of by the dative, especially when the accusative is the reflexive pronoun.

Faites-la *toujours* **précéder de** *la victoire et de la mort.*
Il **se faisait honorer de** *tous.*
Je **ferai bâtir** *ma maison* **à cet architecte** or **par cet architecte.**

Obs. 4. The construction of **faire** gives rise to certain ambiguities. Thus, *Je l'ai fait lire* may mean either, I made him read, *or*, I caused it to be read ; *J'ai fait lire cette lettre à votre père* may mean, I made your father read this letter, *or*, I caused this letter to be read to your father.

115*a*. **REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS OMITTED AFTER *FAIRE*.** In using a pronominal verb with **faire** the reflexive pronoun is generally omitted.

Il a **fait taire** *son ressentiment* (not *se taire*).
Je l'en **ferai** *bien* **repentir** (not *se repentir*).
Un secret pour **faire en aller** *les punaises* (not *s'en aller*).

The reason is easily seen : **se taire** is literally *to silence oneself*, and thus **faire taire** in the first example is to *cause the silencing, to cause to be silenced.*

Obs. 1. This rule does not always apply to pronominal verbs with reciprocal **se**.

La tempête **faisait s'entrechoquer** *les cimes des arbres.*

Obs. 2. **Laisser, entendre,** &c., only occasionally follow this rule :—

Laissez rasseoir *son esprit.*
Laissez-le s'égarer *dans la vague hauteur de ses conceptions.* Nodier.

116. **LAISSER, VOIR, &c.** The verbs **laisser, voir, entendre, ouïr,** generally take, like **faire,** a dative when followed by a transitive infinitive.

Vous jugerez sur ce que je **leur ai ouï dire**. Ste-Beuve.
Laissez-lui croire *ce qu'elle voudra.*
Mourir sans **lui entendre dire** *encore une fois qu'il m'aime !*
But *Je* **les ai laissés boire** *mon vin.* Dumas.

Obs. 1. When an ambiguity is possible, the double accusative is preferable, as—

Je **l'ai laissé enlever** *ses livres* (I let him take away his books),

because *Je* **lui ai laissé enlever** *ses livres* may mean, I let his books be taken from him.

Obs. 2. Just as in the case of **faire**, the infinitive with these verbs is, where no agent is expressed, rendered by a passive in English.

La reine ne **se laissa** *pas* **attendrir** (to be affected).

117. **SECOND ACCUSATIVE IN APPOSITION TO THE FIRST.** Verbs like **rendre, croire, nommer**, take a second accusative in apposition to the first, forming an appositive complement.

*Aucune loi n'*a **constitué le clergé un corps permanent** *dans l'État.* Mirabeau.

Quel bonheur de **me voir la fille** *d'un tel père!*

On **l'a reçu docteur**, he has had the degree of doctor conferred on him.

Notice *armer qlqn chevalier; retenir qlqn prisonnier.*

Obs. 1. After **passer, choisir, tenir, reconnaître, pour** is used.

Obs. 2. The Latin construction of the accusative and infinitive forming a single idea scarcely exists in modern French. The nearest approach to it is with **dire, croire**, with a relative.

La France **qu'***on m'*a **dite être** *beaucoup plus riche que le pays de Salomon.* Voltaire.

where **que—être** almost exactly represents *quam—esse.*

117*a.* **CONSTRUCTION AFTER FAIRE.** Instead of taking two accusatives, the verb **faire** usually has a genitive of material representing the English direct object, and turns the English complement into its direct object.

Charles-Quint **fit d'Anvers la ville** *la plus riche de l'Europe.*

118. **ACCUSATIVE ABSOLUTE.** An absolute accusative (or nominative) is constantly used in French to express *manner*, where we should insert the preposition *with*:—

On rencontre un homme, **les bras nus, le bonnet rouge** *au front.* Ponsard.

Il ne songe à vous que **les larmes** *aux yeux.* V. Hugo.

Besides this, there is the construction exactly analogous to the Latin ablative absolute, where a noun or pronoun

with a participle stands independently of any other word in the sentence :—

Ce devoir accompli, *il demandera vos ordres.* Delavigne.
Parleriez-vous ainsi, César étant *présent ?*

118*a*. **ACCUSATIVE WITH** *VOICI, VOILA.* **Voici, voilà,** govern an accusative, as might be expected from their derivation from the imperative of **voir.**

Me voilà *grand d'Espagne* (grandee). V. Hugo.

Obs. But the origin of the expressions has been so completely forgotten that we also find—

Ne **voilà-t-il** *pas qu'il se fâche sans sujet ?*

118*b*. **POSITION OF ADVERBS AS ACCUSATIVE.** **Assez, beaucoup, tant, trop,** used as nouns of quantity, generally stand before an infinitive or past participle with which they are connected.

XI.—Genitive Case and the use of De.

119. **MEANING OF GENITIVE.** The French genitive represents : (1) the Latin genitive ; (2) the Latin ablative; (3) the Latin ablative with *de, ab, ex.*[1] The following are the chief uses of the genitive common to French and other languages :—

(1.) Genitive meaning *from*, of place, time, &c. § 120.
(2.) Genitive of origin. §§ 121, 122, 123.
(3.) Possessive genitive. § 124.
(4.) Genitive of quality. § 124.

[1] This would probably afford a better basis for classification than that adopted in the text, which is not very systematic, but it has been thought worth while to retain the arrangement of the earlier editions as far as possible.

(5.) Genitive of the subject. § 124*a*.
(6.) Objective genitive. § 124*b*.
(7.) Partitive genitive. §§ 125, 126, 127, 128, 129.
(8.) Genitive of agent. § 130.
(9.) Genitive of instrument. § 130*a*.

120. **GENITIVE MEANING** *FROM.* Under this head falls the genitive with several classes of verbs, &c., viz. :—

(1.) Verbs, adjectives, and adverbs denoting *separation, deliverance, deprivation, difference*, and the like.

C'est **déshériter** *mon pays* **de ses droits.** Delavigne.
Il oublia les soins **dont** *la force ne peut* **se passer.**
Ils sont **loin** *l'un* **de l'autre.** Acad.

(2.) Verbs of *asking, receiving, expecting*, &c. (but see § 145).

*Qu'*exigez-*vous de* **moi?**

Ils firent des lignes parallèles dans leurs tranchées—usage que nous **avons pris d'eux,** *mais qu'ils* **tenaient** (had taken, learnt) **d'un ingénieur italien.** Daru.

(3.) Verbs denoting *dependence*, followed by *on* in English, as **relever, ressortir,** &c.

C'était une belle terre, qui ne **relevait** *que* **du roi.** Acad.

(4.) Verbs of *changing*[1] (from one state to another).

La guerre devint, **de politique qu'elle était,** *une guerre personnelle et royale, de sentiment, de passion.* Guizot.

Notice the insertion of *qu'elle était.*

(5.) The genitive with verbs of *making* which often represents one of two English accusatives is discussed in § 117*a*.

121. **GENITIVE OF ORIGIN.** The genitive denotes *origin, source*, or *material.*

(1.) With verbs, adjectives, &c.—

Opprobre malheureux du sang **dont vous sortez.** Voltaire.
Cette ville est donc **bâtie de sapin** *et* **de résine.** Dumas.

[1] But for another sort of genitive with such verbs, see § 135.

(2.) With nouns, frequently replacing an English noun used as an adjective, as in *an ivory horn, an iron mask.*

Les chants volent pressés sur mes lèvres de flamme.
V. Hugo.

Le plus fort, dans sa main, élève un cor d'ivoire.
De Vigny.

Obs. Notice agir de son chef, de son propre mouvement, *on one's own authority.*

122. **FULNESS AND THE REVERSE.** Verbs and adjectives denoting *fulness* and the reverse, as **plein, rassassié, nu, pauvre, manquer, remplir, combler, charger,** &c., which suggest the idea of drawing from a source, take the genitive.

Ils ne manquaient *point* d'armes. Voltaire.

La vue nous remplit de *douleur et de désespoir.*
B. de St-Pierre.

De *paroles sois* économe. Scribe.

Obs. 1. Never translate *with* by *avec* after verbs of *filling*, &c.

Obs. 2. Hence verbs meaning *to make use of*, like se servir, jouir, user, abuser,[1] profiter (but not exploiter), and *to feed with*, like nourrir, abreuver, &c., take a genitive.

On se repaît de *chimères.* Lamennais.

Il abusait de la confiance *que j'avais en lui.*

Obs. 3. Abonder, riche, fertile, also take en.

Obs. 4. Many examples of this rule fall also under §§ 120, 130*a*.

123. **VERBS AND ADJECTIVES DENOTING FEELINGS.** Many verbs and adjectives, denoting feelings, like *grief, repentance, joy, desire, satisfaction, astonishment, anger,*

---

[1] *User* with genitive to use, make use of, with accusative, to wear out; *abuser* with genitive, to misuse, with accusative, to deceive; *hériter* is used with a genitive in two senses, *hériter de son père*, to come into one's father's property, *d'une grande fortune*, to inherit a large fortune; but *il n'a rien hérité de son père.*

are followed by a genitive denoting the *cause* or *source* of the emotion.

Some of them take *of* in English, as **mourir de**, *to die of;* **se repentir de**, *to repent of;* many are followed by other prepositions, viz., **rougir de**, *to blush at* or *for* (**de honte**); **s'alarmer de**, *to be alarmed at;* **frémir de**, *to shudder at;* **se soucier de**, *to care for;* **rire de**, **se moquer de**, *to laugh at;* **remercier de**, **rendre grâce de**, *to thank for;* **content de**, *satisfied with;* **étonné de**, *astonished at;* **furieux de**, *enraged at;* **ravi de**, **charmé de**, *delighted with;* **se piquer de**, *to plume oneself on;* **reconnaissant de**, *grateful for;* **responsable de**, *responsible for;* **au désespoir de**, *in despair at*, &c.

Ils **s'indignèrent de ce joug** *honteux.* Acad.

Qui vit **content de rien** *possède toute chose.* Boileau.

Cessez de **vous en prendre** *aux autres* **de vos propres fautes** (to blame others for your own faults). Rousseau.

Obs. 1. Most English *transitive* verbs denoting feelings, have transitive equivalents in French, as **désirer**, **admirer**, &c.

Obs. 2. Transitive verbs of *praise*, *blame*, *accusation*, *requital*, &c., take a genitive of the ground of praise, &c.

Je m'empresse
De vous **féliciter du succès** *de la pièce.* Etienne.

Il m'a complètement **dédommagé de la perte** *que j'ai faite.* Acad.

Obs. 3. Verbs of *speaking* and *thinking* take **de**, representing the Latin *de*, but see § 47 for **penser à**, **songer à**.

124. **POSSESSIVE GENITIVE AND GENITIVE OF QUALITY.** Both of these are rendered, when attributes, by **de**, &c., **le cheval de mon père**, *my father's horse;* **un homme d'esprit**, *a man of talent.*

Obs. 1. But the English possessive genitive after the verb *to be* is turned by the dative in French, as—

Ce cheval **est à mon père**, this horse is my father's.

Obs. 2. The genitive of quality after the verb *to be* is rendered by

de, but its use is more extended than in English. It is used both of persons and of things.[1]

Cette lettre n'est *pas* **d'un gentilhomme**. Sandeau.

Le faire **est d'un brave homme** *et d'un bon citoyen.*
Delavigne.

Il a pensé qu'il **était de sa délicatesse** *de vous offrir de vous rendre la liberté.* Dumas.

Le Rhône et Lyon me **sont de quelque chose.**
De Sévigné.

So **de rigueur** *indispensable*, **de trop** *superfluous*, **de service** *in attendance*, **de faction** *on guard*, &c., including an idiomatic use of the neuter adjective.

Il y a des créanciers qui sont **d'un grossier** ! Balzac.

Under this head falls a remarkable use of **dire** with genitive—**On dirait d'un homme ivre**, one would say he was drunk —*i.e.*, one would call it the actions, &c., of a drunken man.

La mort de Bonaparte se mit à faire quelque bruit en France ; on **eût dit d'un sujet** *grec ou romain, tant nos poètes s'en occupèrent.*

Also—

On dirait un homme *de l'ère de Pélage.* St. Victor.

Obs. 3. The possessive genitive often passes, by the omission of the article, into a kind of adjective. Compare *les grandes qualités* **du capitaine**, a possessive genitive, with *ses grandes qualités* **de capitaine**, meaning his excellence as a captain, his leader-like qualities. See § 20.

Obs. 4. Note especially **de** representing another English preposition, **le chemin de Paris**, *the road to Paris*, **le marchand du rez-de-chaussée**, *on the ground-floor.*

Obs. 5. Under the head of the genitive of quality must be classed a number of different relations which the genitive is used to express, and in which it is nearly equivalent to an adjective, such as **une maison de campagne**, *a country-house ;* **un bonnet de nuit**, *a night-cap ;* **le droit de chasse**, *right of shooting.*

---

[1] Corresponding to the Latin *Cujusvis hominis est errare*, and *Saevum id malique moris etiam furentibus visum.* Tac. Ann. I. 35.

124*a*. **GENITIVE OF SUBJECT.** Verbal nouns, or nouns representing the action of a verb, are followed by a genitive answering to its subject. Thus *the arrival of the king* suggests the sentence *the king arrives*. This genitive is common to all languages.

124*b*. **OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.** This genitive corresponds to the object of a transitive verb, and follows noun and adjective. Thus, *the love of country* recalls the sentence *he loves his country; desirous of peace* recalls *he desires peace*; French and English agree in its use.

L'amour du travail *me retient souvent au logis.*
Le Sage.

125. **THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE IS USED:—**

(1.) After adverbs of quantity, as **assez, beaucoup, tant, combien, que,** &c., including such adverbs as **pas mal, énormément, infiniment,** &c. In English, *enough, much,* &c., are adjectives.

Elle a **infiniment d'esprit.** Acad.
De **combien de douleurs** *ma douleur fut suivie!*

Obs. 1. With **bien**, but with no other adverb of quantity, the definite article is used (but *bien d'autres*, § 23).

Il y a **bien des personnes** *curieuses dans le monde.*

Obs. 2. **Force**, *many*, is followed by a noun without *de*.

J'ai dévoré **force moutons.** La Fontaine.

Obs. 3. A genitive (**en**) is also found with **là, où**[1]—

Où en *êtes-vous de votre procès?* Acad.

(2.) After the negative particles **pas, point, ne—jamais, ne—plus, ne—guère,** and after **ne** alone. (See also § 109.)

L'ambition **n'***a* **guère de limites.** Boursault.

N'*ayant* **d'air** *que celui qui vient d'un soupirail.* Ponsard.

So also after an implied negation (cf. § 23, *Obs.* 4).

Il s'en alla **sans** *commettre* **de dévastations.**[2]

---

[1] *Ubi gentium; eo insolentiæ.*

[2] But *il ne s'en alla pas sans commettre* **des** *dévastations.*

Obs. 1. It is a common mistake to extend this use of **de** without the article to cases where there is no negative—to say, for example, *il a commis de dévastations* instead of *des dévastations.*

Obs. 2. Notice especially **ne pas vouloir . . . . de,** *not to care for.*

Hors de ces sectes organisées en régiments, personne en Angleterre **ne voulait de la République.** Guizot.

(3.) After what are called partitive words, such as **un, l'un, autre, lequel, qui, quiconque, quelqu'un, chacun, plusieurs, aucun, nul, personne,** &c.

Chacun d'eux *résolut de vivre en gentilhomme.* La Font.
Qui de nous *n'est sujet à erreur?* Scribe.

Obs. 1. The genitive need not immediately follow **qui.**

Qui *est le plus grand,* **de César ou d'Alexandre?**

Or the partitive word may be only implied.

Qu'il **choisisse** *après,* **de la mort** *ou* **de moi.** Corneille.

Obs. 2. Notice especially the genitive *of an adjective* in the superlative after **un, une autre,** &c. (See § 41.)

Une autre *question* **des plus graves** *était posée par les événements* (another most serious question). Guizot.

(4.) After superlatives, ordinal numerals, **le seul,** and nouns like **la plupart, une vingtaine, un millier.**

Qu'il vous souvienne **du moindre de vos serviteurs.**

Obs. Notice the genitive after a superlative where we use *in.*

C'est l'avocat **le mieux connu de la ville.**

(5.) After words of measure, weight, &c., as **une bouteille de vin, une livre de fromage.**

(6.) **D'entre** is sometimes substituted for **de** forming the partitive genitive, especially after the superlative.

Le plus petit d'entre *nos disciples.*

126. **ELLIPSIS OF THE PARTITIVE WORD.** The partitive genitive is often found in cases where a parti-

tive word (*some of, a part of*) may easily be supplied,[1] but only if the noun be qualified by ce, a possessive adjective, &c.—

Essayez de ce vin.—*Prenez* de ces pommes.
Voilà justement de mes religieuses.
Il était de ceux *qui se multiplient.* Ste-Beuve.
La nation croit de son devoir *d'applaudir à ce qui est austère et grave.* De Staël.
Le génie de Charlemagne formait de ces entreprises *que le vulgaire croit téméraires.*

Obs. 1. Notice superlative adjectives without nouns. § 125 (3).

Il se jeta, toujours des premiers, *dans le fleuve.* Ste-Beuve.

La face de ma fortune était des plus riantes. Le Sage.

Notice faire de son mieux, to do one's best.

Obs. 2. Under this head falls the expression trancher du grand seigneur, *to affect the nobleman.* Also se mêler de.

126*a*. **PARTITIVE ARTICLE.** A noun with the partitive article is easily seen, when, for example, it is the object of a verb, to be a case of the partitive genitive. But in most cases the partitive article is treated exactly as un or le, and can even be preceded by à.

Asservie à des lois *que j'ai dû respecter.* Racine.

When the noun it qualifies is preceded by an adjective, de is substituted for du, de la, &c., and treated in the same way.

Habitué dès l'enfance à de longues marches. G. Sand.

127. **VERBS OF PERCEIVING, REMEMBERING.** The genitive with reflexive and impersonal verbs *of perceiving, remembering*, and with verbs of *informing*, is really a partitive genitive, inasmuch as such verbs involve the notion of taking or giving a share of something.

[1] *Pies nobilium tu quoque fontium.* Hor. *Od.* iii. 13.

De vos projets, *seigneur*, *qu'*il **vous souvienne !**
Il s'aperçut[1] **du piège** *qu'on lui tendait.* Acad.

128. *UN SOUFFLET DE DONNÉ.* There is an idiom resembling the partitive genitive, by which an adjective is connected by **de** with a noun, a pronoun, or a numeral ; especially in sentences where the impersonal **il y a** occurs.[2]

Il y a un soufflet **de donné**—*mille hommes* **de tués.**
Il faut qu'il y ait quelqu'un **de décapité.** V. Hugo.
Il y a déjà deux mailles **de rompues.** Molière.
Sur dix il n'y en avait pas un **de bon.** Acad.

In the last example **en** is the partitive genitive proper, **de bon** illustrates the rule just given.

So **quelqu'un de moins ; suis-je de trop ?**

129. *QUOI DE*, &c., **WITH AN ADJECTIVE.** A neuter adjective (and sometimes a noun) preceded by **de** may depend on **quoi, ce qui, ce que, que, ceci, cela, quelque chose, rien :—**

Tout **ce qu'***a* **de cruel** *l'injustice et la force.* Racine.
Il s'était informé de **ce qui** *se passait* **de si opiniâtre** *dans cette demi-lune.* Ste-Beuve.
Il y avait **ceci de particulier** *chez les Romains qu'ils mêlaient quelque sentiment religieux à l'amour qu'ils avaient pour la patrie.* Montesquieu.
Catinat savait tout **ce qu'***exige* **de qualités** *cet emploi de major.* Ste-Beuve.

130. **AGENT EXPRESSED BY** *DE* **OR** *PAR.* The ordinary preposition used in modern French to answer the question *by whom* after a passive verb is **par**, provided the action is considered to be due to the agent alone. But in many cases the *subject* of the verb is, in a certain sense, responsible for the action as well as the so-called agent, and

[1] But *apercevoir* with accusative as well as *s'apercevoir de.*

[2] Brinkmann (I. 543) connects this genitive with that of § 138, and explains it as representing the Latin ablative of limitation (*in respect of*) not as a case of the partitive genitive.

this shade of meaning is expressed by using **de**. **De** is, in fact, almost universally used for the agent after verbs expressing *love*, *hate*, &c.

Il est **estimé de tous ceux** *qui le connaissent.*

Le comte de Toulouse **était suivi de Tancrède** *et* **du duc** *de Normandie* (implying that he had ordered or allowed them to form part of his suite). Michaud.

Le régiment **était précédé de sa musique** (the regiment in fact, was the free agent, not the band).

Quand les légions d'Espagne eurent proclamé Galba, il marcha sur Rome, **précédé par cette double réputation** *de sévérité et de barbarie* (much against his will).

La poudre à canon **fut inventée,** *dit-on,* **par le cordelier** *Berthold Schwartz, vers la fin du treizième siècle.*

Abandonné de tous *excepté* **de sa mère** (where the feeling of loneliness is suggested). V. Hugo.

Obs. 1. Compare the use of *of* in old English—

For the leaders of this people cause them to err; and they that are led of them are destroyed. Isaiah ix. 16.

Obs. 2. The agent need not always be a person; by a simple metaphor an abstract word is often treated as an agent.

Tous accoururent; les uns **guidés par l'espoir,** *d'autres,* **poussés par la crainte.** Ségur.

Obs. 3. The genitive of the agent was commoner in old French—

Je crois voir Annibal qui, **pressé des Romains,**
Met leurs chefs en défaut. La Fontaine.

130*a*.[1] **GENITIVE OF INSTRUMENT OR MEANS.** The ordinary preposition used in answer to the question *wherewith* is *avec*, when a simple literal instrument is spoken of as **tuer avec une épée, couper avec un canif.** But when the instrument is not simply an instrument, but remains associated with that on which it acts, as in **couronner de fleurs, ceindre d'une épée, remplir de vin, tuer d'un coup d'épée,** or where the instrument is not concrete or

[1] § 130, *Obs.* 2, in previous edition.

material, **de** is used in preference both with active and with passive verbs.

Leurs brassards sont **rayés de longs filets** *de sang.* V. Hugo.
Histoire, poésie, il **joint du pied** *vos cimes.* Ibid.
La cloche **frappa** *l'air* **de ses funèbres coups.** Ibid.
On **lia** *chaque bloc* **avec des nœuds** *de fer.* Ibid.

Obs. 1. **Par** sometimes represents the instrument, in cases where *per* would be used in Latin.

Qui emploiera le glaive **périra par le glaive.**

Obs. 2. For a way of expressing the instrument with **à**, see § 151.

131. **MORE IDIOMATIC USES OF THE GENITIVE.** Besides the above principal uses of the genitive, the following are to be noticed :—

(10.) Idiomatic use in reference to place and time.
(11.) Genitive of measure or comparison, answering the question *by how much?*
(12.) Genitive of respect.
(13.) Genitive of manner.
(14.) Genitive with **servir, traiter,** &c.
(15.) Genitive of price.
(16.) Genitive after **plus** and **moins**
(17.) As a substitute for apposition.
(18.) For cognate accusative (113).

132. **WITH WORDS OF NEARNESS, APPROACHING, &c.** In speaking of place, not only separation, but also *nearness* is expressed by the genitive, where we should use *to*.[1] The explanation is simple : we say A. is near to B , placing ourselves at A. ; the French say, **A. est près de B.**, placing themselves at B. :—

En **approchant de** *la baie.* Ségur.

So **de** is used with **côté, part,** to translate *on* or *to*.

Le vent s'est tourné **du côté** *du midi* (*towards* the south). Acad.

[1] Compare in Latin *prope ab*, e.g., *bellum tam prope a Sicilià*, Cic. **Verr.**

Voyez-vous Londres **de l'autre côté** *de l'eau* (*on* the other side)? V. Hugo.

Notice **près de** *near*, distinguished from **prêt à** *ready to*.

133. **IDIOMATIC GENITIVE OF TIME.** There is also an idiomatic use of **de** in speaking of time *when*, where we should say *at* or *in*. The French think of the beginning of the action[1]:—

De très grand matin *nous nous dispersâmes*. Ségur.

There are other cases where the origin of the idiom seems almost forgotten,[2] as **de nos jours**, *in our days*; **du vivant de César**, *in Cæsar's life-time*; **de bonne heure**, *betimes*.

The use of the genitive to answer the question *how long?* is limited to negative sentences.

Je ne l'ai vu **de trois jours** (for three days past).

Je ne veux **de trois mois** *rentrer dans la maison* (for three months to come). Racine.

134. **GENITIVE OF MEASURE.** The genitive is used to answer the question *by how much?* after comparatives, and words or phrases implying comparison, such as **dépasser, augmenter, vieillir**, &c.

Le duc de Lutzelbourg est **trop grand de la tête.**[3] V. Hugo.

Monsieur **l'emporte d'une ou de deux voix.**

Obs. 1. With **s'en faut** the constructions are various. **Il s'en faut de peu** *que le vase ne soit plein*, &c., which is literally—it is wanting therefrom by little that. . . **Peu s'en faut** *que Mathan ne m'ait nommé son père*, literally—little is wanting therefrom.

Obs. 2. On the same principle:—

Un bâton **long de trois pieds**, three feet long.

Une fille **âgée de vingt ans**, twenty years old.

---

[1] *Surgunt de nocte latrones.*

[2] Perhaps this idiom should rather be referred to a genitive of time, **νύκτος**, abends, *o'nights*.

[3] is too tall by the head, *i.e.*, wants his head cut off.

135. **GENITIVE OF RESPECT.** Often the genitive answers the question *in respect of what?*[1] especially after **changer, redoubler:** (See § 60, *Obs.* 3):—

Ils diffèrent **d'esprit, d'apparence.** Ponsard.
Il est noble chez lui, bien fait **de sa personne.** Molière,
Il n'en est pas de même **des tragédies.** Mme de Staël.
Rester jeune **de cœur** *et entier* **de zèle.** Ste-Beuve.
Toutes ces parties de son livre sont **supérieures de vues.** Ibid.
Pour Schiller il était **admirable de sollicitude, de conseil.** Ibid.

Obs. Under this head (or as partitive) class genitive after **suffire, être assez,** which is practically the subject in English.[2]

Toi qui cumules à la fois les fonctions de tailleur et de portier, comme si ce **n'était** *point* **assez d'un martyre** (as if one martyrdom were not enough.) De Beauvais.
Il ne me **suffit** *pas* **d'un changement** *de forme.* Ponsard.

136. **THIRTY FEET HIGH.** The idiomatic use of **de longueur, de hauteur, de profondeur, de largeur, d'épaisseur,** &c., should be noticed here; *e.g.*, *this wall is thirty feet long, high,* must be rendered :—

Ce mur a trente pieds **de longueur (de hauteur,** &c.), or *Ce mur est* **long de trente pieds.** (§134, *Obs.* 2.)

Obs. **De haut, de large,** &c., are used in the same way.
Le portail était de 220 *pieds* **de haut** *et de cent* **de large.** Voltaire.

137. **GENITIVE OF MANNER.** Like the Latin ablative, the French genitive forms adverbial expressions of **manner,** where in English **in** or **with** is used :—

Peut on se comporter **de la**[3] **sorte?** (in that way.) Acad.

---

[1] Latin *pendere animi* (locative). Compare also in German phrases like grau von Haar.

[2] So in Latin, *satis superque esse suarum cuique rerum.* Cic. de Am. xiii. 45.

[3] Notice the meaning of *la* in this expression, which is the only one in which it retains its original force as a demonstrative.

C'est **de mon consentement** *qu'il a fait cela.*

Les grands hommes d'action ne construisent pas **d'avance** *et* **de toutes pièces** *leur plan de conduite.* Guizot.

S'il vous avait aimé **d'amour, d'un véritable amour.** Mme de Girardin.

So **de sang-froid,** *coolly;* **de bon cœur,** *courageously;* **de grâce,** *please;* **d'accord,** *agreed;* **de front,** *side by side;* **de droit,** *de jure;* **de fait,** *de facto;* **de vive voix,** *vivâ voce*[1]; **d'ordinaire,** *ordinarily;* **boire d'un seul trait,** *to drink at a draught;* and above all, **dont,** § 84, II.

Obs. 1. Some such expressions are used in the predicate as adjectives or their equivalents, as **être de force à, de trempe à,** *strong enough to;* **de rigueur,** *correct;* **de service,** *on duty;* **de retour,** *back again.*

Obs. 2. Under this head falls the genitive **dormir d'un sommeil paisible,** &c., corresponding to the Latin cognate accusative, § 113.

138. **GENITIVE WITH SERVIR, TRAITER, &c.** After **traiter, qualifier, servir,** &c., a genitive represents English words with *as*, which are really an appositive complement.

Ce vieil oncle lui avait **servi de second père** (had served as a father, had been a father).

Les gens qui ne connaissent pas la campagne **taxent de fable** *l'amitié du bœuf pour son compagnon d'attelage.* G. Sand.

Obs. 1. Distinguish from this **j'agis en roi,** *as a king,* where the phrase *en roi* is really adverbial, *royally.*

Obs. 2. Notice the idiom **aller de pair,** *to behave as an equal;* **si j'étais de vous, si j'étais que de vous,** *if I were you.*

138*a*. **GENITIVE OF PRICE** occasionally stands with verbs of *buying, selling, bidding.*

Un vieux noir, qu'elle avait **acquis de quelques deniers empruntés.** Chateaubriand.

Notice the phrase, **payer d'audace,** *to brazen it out,* literally to give brass in payment.

[1] A *vivâ voce* examination is *examen oral.*

139. *PLUS DE.* *After* **plus** *and* **moins** *than* is translated by **de** if a cardinal numeral follows. This is the only survival of the Latin ablative after a comparative—

Plus de six *mois s'étaient écoulés.*

Notice also **plus d'une moitié, plus d'un demi.**

Obs. Remember that **plus d'un** means *more than* **one**; but—
Addison est **plus qu'***un journaliste*, not a mere journalist.[1]

139*a*. **GENITIVE AND APPOSITION.** As in English we say: *that rascal of a valet, that idiot of a boy*, so in French we find **un bonhomme de moine, ce coquin de valet.** So also in certain metaphorical expressions.

L'hydre de l'hérésie *fut de nouveau terrassée.*
Chateaubriand.

Again, French agrees with English, and differs from German in saying **la ville de Paris, le mois de janvier, le nom de père, le titre de professeur,** &c.

139*b*. **GENITIVE WITHOUT** *DE.* In old French the genitive inflexion of Latin had disappeared, but had not been, at least in the possessive genitive, entirely replaced by **de.** A familiar illustration is *les quatre fils* **Aymon,** *the four sons of Aymon.* This construction remains in modern French in two forms:

1. In certain familiar phrases which have survived. Such are **à moitié chemin, force moutons** (125 *Obs.* 2), *s'en donner à* **cœur joie, Hôtel-Dieu, morbleu** (*par la* **mort Dieu**) and proper names like **Châteaubriand.**

2. In many phrases associated with proper names, it is a living construction, as **le faubourg St-Antoine,** le **Musée Napoléon, la maison Nucingen, la Place Vendôme, la division Grouchy, le procès Bazaine,** and even **des carabines dernier système.**

140. **USES OF** *EN.* The word **en,** which is properly an adverb, is used as the conjunctive personal pronoun of the third person. In modern French it is practically used of things only, not of persons. It has all the meanings of the genitive.

[1] Also in incomplete sentences, like *un éléphant mange plus que six chevaux* (*ne mangent*). *De* would make the elephant carnivorous.

Revient-il de la ville?—Oui, il **en** *revient* (from).

Quand on est dans un pays, il faut **en** *suivre* **l'usage** (possessive. § 124).

*On revient d'une erreur à force d'***en rougir.** (§ 129.)

Les Troglodytes aimaient leurs femmes et **en** *étaient tendrement* **chéris** (agent. § 130.) Montesquieu.

*Vous êtes le plus généreux des hommes; j'*en *serais* **le plus égoïste,** *si j'acceptais* (partitive. § 125).

*Le meilleur moyen de se défaire d'un ennemi, c'est de s'*en **faire un ami.** (§ 117.)

141. *EN* **MEANING** *SOME, ANY.* Frequently the partitive genitive **en** stands without anything to govern it, and is translated by *some* or *any*—

*Voilà du pain; prenez-*en (take some).

Il leur **en** *coûtait de se dévouer de nouveau à sa cause.*

Thiers.

142. **IDIOMS WITH EN.** There are several idiomatic uses of **en**, of which a few will be noticed.

(1.) With a comparative equivalent to *à cause de cela.*

Le beau est difficile, disait Socrate. Pour être plus difficile, **en** *est-il moins beau?* (Is it for that reason. . . . .?)

Obs. In Molière, &c., this use of **en** is by no means so limited.

Ces grands hauts-de-chausses sont propres à devenir les recéleurs des choses qu'on dérobe, et je voudrais qu'on **en** *eût fait pendre quelqu'un* (on account of them, for inventing them).

The survival of this freer use of **en** accounts for some of the idioms in (4).

(2.) In a number of phrases with **être** it is almost pleonastic, as in **il en est de même.**

Il **en** *est de cela comme de la plupart des choses de ce monde* (it is with that as with . . . .).

Soit il **en** *est autrement, c'*en *est fait de nous.*

(3.) Sometimes it means *something amiss*, as in **en vouloir à,** *to wish something amiss to, have a grudge against*, **en faire accroire à,** *to make believe something false, impose upon*, **en imposer**

à, en conter à, *to impose mistaken ideas on, impose upon,* **en avoir avec quelqu'un,** *to have a quarrel with.*

(4.) In **s'en aller, s'en revenir,** as well as in **en appeler à, s'en rapporter à,** *to appeal to,* **en,** though not rendered literally in English, has its natural meaning, *from it* (i.e., from the place where we are, from the *status quo*). In **je vous en crois,** *I believe you,* **je m'en prends à lui,** *I blame him,* **il faut en passer par là,** *you must acquiesce in that,* **je m'en tiens à cela,** *I adhere to that,* **à quoi s'en tenir sur quelque chose,** *what value to set on a thing,* **en** probably means *in respect of it,* but is almost superfluous. In **peu (beaucoup) s'en faut,** the meaning is more obvious, *little (much) is wanting therefrom.* In the phrase, **en dépit que j'en aie,** the second *dépit* has dropped out (*en dépit que j'en aie dépit*), and it means *despite the vexation I feel at it.* Notice **il en est pour ses frais,** *he has thrown away his efforts.* **Also On savait ce qu'il en coûte de fatigues et de larmes...,** where *de fatigues* depends on *ce que.*

XII.—Dative Case and use of à.

143. **MEANING AND USES OF THE DATIVE.** The use of the dative in French is for the most part based upon the same principles as its use in the classical languages. Besides the agent denoted by the nominative, we have often to think of some other person taking part in the action, perhaps opposing it, and besides the object denoted by the accusative, of some other person or thing indirectly affected by the action of the verb. These ideas have gradually expanded so as to include any person (or even thing) having any interest in, or in any way affected by, the action, reserving always the right of the accusative to denote the person or thing at whom the action is directly aimed. Thus we get the *dative of the remoter object*[1] with verbs of giving, &c., the *dative with verbs of doing good or harm to,* the *dative of*

[1] In French, *régime indirect.*

the possessor, and lastly, the so-called *ethic dative*. The above applies mainly to *persons*; another use of the dative, existing in Greek, but in Latin appropriated to a special case, the ablative, is confined to *things*—its use, namely, to represent the *instrument*. To a limited extent this construction is found in French. Further, the dative denotes rest at a place and the ideas immediately connected with it, and so represents the classical locative.

In the case of nouns the classical dative was gradually superseded by the preposition *ad* (à). That preposition had therefore to do double duty, and to represent the meaning of *ad* in classical Latin, as well as the later use corresponding to the dative. Hence à is used to denote motion to a place, in answer to the question *whither*. Connected with this is its use to express *tendency*, *destination*, &c.

The uses of the dative may therefore be classed under the following heads:

(1.) Dative of relation, including:—
  (α) dative of the remoter object;
  (β) dative with intransitive verbs, &c.;
  (γ) dative of the possessor;
  (δ) ethic dative.

(2.) Dative of instrument.
(3.) Dative of rest in space or time.
(4.) Dative of motion, tendency, &c.
(5.) Lastly, the use of the dative to form adverbs and compound nouns, though it can be referred to one or other of the above heads, will be noticed separately.

144. **DATIVE OF RELATION.—REMOTER OBJECT.** Verbs of *giving*, *telling*, *showing*, and many other transitive verbs take an accusative of the thing, and a dative of the person, called the *dative of the remoter object*. The following should be especially noticed:—**permettre, défendre, commander, ordonner, enseigner, conseiller.**

Va, **dis-leur** *qu'à ce prix je* **leur permets** *de vivre.*
Racine.

Les diverses sciences qu'ils se vantent de **leur enseigner.**[1]
Rousseau.

Tout **prête** *des armes* **à la volupté.**

Un sort jaloux
Lui défend de jouir *d'un spectacle si doux.* Racine.

Obs. 1. This construction is used more freely than in English, especially with verbs like **trouver, reconnaître,** &c.

Je **lui trouve** *un peu trop d'amour-propre* (I find *in* him).
La señora veut-elle que je **lui essaie** *ces bijoux?* Dumas.
Voilà l'affaire! je **lui ai vu** *une cassette.*[2] Molière.

Obs. 2. Verbs of *belonging, seeming,* &c., equivalent to the passive of the ideas above-mentioned, take a dative:

La jeunesse a pris le parti que bon **lui semblait.**
Hamilton.

Obs. 3. The French and English idioms differ in respect to some verbs, such as **reprocher qch. à qlqn.**, *to reproach with*, **inspirer qch. à qlqn.**, *to inspire a person with*, **défendre qch. à qlqn.**, *to forbid a person to do something.*

145. **DATIVE IN FRENCH,** *OF* **OR** *FROM* **IN ENGLISH.** Verbs of *taking away*, with **acheter, demander,** take a dative of the person, not a genitive.

Les voleurs **lui ont ôté** *son manteau.*
On **lui a demandé** *son nom.* Acad.
*On l'***a dérobé à la fureur** *du peuple.*
Pajol refoula les avant-postes prussiens après **leur avoir fait** *deux à trois cents prisonniers.* Thiers.

Obs. **Emprunter** takes *à* or *de* before a noun denoting a person, *de* before one denoting a thing.

145*a*. **PARTS OF THE BODY.** The name of the person, whether represented by a noun or pronoun, is put in the dative in French, whereas in English we use a genitive or a possessive adjective.

Il **lui serre** *vivement* **la main.** Lemercier.
On **lia les mains à tous ces pauvres prisonniers.**

---

[1] *Enseigner* with a *single* object takes an accusative—*enseigner le latin* or *enseigner un enfant*. [2] *Lui*, in his possession.

146. **GOOD AND HARM** (*commodi et incommodi*). Verbs and adjectives of *doing good or harm to* take a dative.

L'indécision **nuit au progrès.**
Je bénis le ciel **propice à nos desseins.**

This includes verbs, adjectives and adverbs implying *adaptation*, *likeness* and *unlikeness*, *superiority* and *inferiority*, *obedience* and *resistance*, *pleasing* and *displeasing*, *trust*, and the like.

Sa voix **ressemble au tonnerre.**
Tout citoyen doit **obéir aux lois.**
Votre fille **me plaît**; *je prétends* **lui plaire.** Molière.
Nous **vaquons** *tour à tour* **aux travaux** *du ménage.*

Obs. The English *is to* (of proportion) is also used in French.
La modestie **est au mérite** *ce que les ombres* **sont aux figures** *dans un tableau.* La Bruyère.

146*a*. **NO PASSIVE OF VERBS WITH DATIVE ONLY.** There is no construction in French exactly corresponding to the impersonal use of verbs governing a dative (*mihi resistitur*). The pronoun **on** is used in such cases; e.g., *he was ordered to come*, **on lui ordonna de venir.**

Obs. Two of the verbs governing a dative, **obéir, pardonner,** are used in the passive as if they were transitive.

Madame la marquise **sera obéie.**
Confessez: **vous êtes pardonné** *d'avance.* Delavigne.

147. **OBSERVATIONS ON THE** *DATIVUS COMMODI.*

(1.) Many verbs denoting *co-operation*, &c, with which we might have expected a genitive, take a dative; such are **coopérer à, prendre part à.**

Je **prendrai part aux maux** *sans en* **prendre à la gloire.** Corneille.

(2.) Notice **renoncer à, surseoir à, survivre à, penser à**; also **prendre** impersonal (with conjunctive pronouns) *il* **me prit** *envie; il* **lui prend** *une fièvre, une faiblesse.*

(3.) The dative of the person interested accounts for the idiom,

in which the dative with *à* (not the inflected dative of a personal pronoun) is put with **être** and an adjective or noun.

Que **c'est aimable à vous** (how kind that is of you—in you). Delavigne.

Ce *n'était pas* **de bon goût à lui** *de venir ainsi étaler son art.* Ste-Beuve.

148. **DATIVE OF POSSESSOR.** Especially after **être**, the dative (with *à*) denotes possession (see § 45).

Il n'a rien **à lui** ; *tout* **est à ses amis.** Lamennais.

A qui est *ce livre? Il* **est à moi** (not *il m'est*).

Rendez à César ce qui **est à César.**

The dative is also used to repeat the possessive adjective (see § 51) as—**mon ami à moi** ;—**leur réputation à tous les deux.**

149. **THE ETHIC DATIVE.** The dative of a Pronoun used to denote that a person is indirectly interested in the action is not uncommon in French. In *l'Avare* the cook says, speaking of a pig :—

Qu'on **me** *l'égorge, qu'on* **me** *lui fasse griller les pieds* (*i.e.* I wish some one to kill, &c. . . . .).

Vous ne **m'***en avez pas l'air* (you do not seem, in my eyes. .).

The corresponding Latin expression, *Quid mihi Celsus agit?* What, I should like to know, is Celsus doing? and in English "Enquire me first what Danskers are in Paris," are well known.

150. **THE DATIVE OF THE INSTRUMENT.** A dative of the instrument is used with verbs of *gaining*, *recognising*, *judging*, &c., to denote the *sign* by which we know, judge, &c. This answers to the German an.

Il n'y a que Pauline qui **gagne à votre mal de tête.** De Sévigné.

Je **reconnais** *mon sang* **à ce noble courroux.** Corneille.

151. **DATIVE OF INSTRUMENT FORMING ADVERB OF MANNER.** With other verbs a dative of the instrument is used, but always so as to be equivalent to an

adverb of manner; if we wish to speak of any definite instrument, we must use **de** or **avec** (see § 130, 161). Thus :—

On **moissonne à la faux** *ou* **à la faucille.**
Sa vie ne **tient** *qu'à* **un fil** (hangs by a thread).
Du brouillard à **couper au couteau** (to be cut with a knife, *knife-wise*, if one may coin a word). Dumas.

but, *Il a coupé la corde* **avec son couteau.**

There are a number of such phrases, as **recevoir à bras ouverts ; aller à voiles et à rames; se sauver à la nage; s'enfuir à toutes jambes; poursuivre à coups de pierres ; charger à balle ; fouler aux pieds; comprendre à demi-mot,**[1] &c. Under this head comes the dative in **acheter à bon marché ; vendre au poids, à la livre,** *by weight, by the pound ;* **prendre une voiture à l'heure, à la course,** *by the hour, by the drive ;* **prêter à cinq pour cent,** *at five per cent. ;* **à la différence de,** *allowing for ;* **à jeun,** *fasting ;* **à merveille,** *admirably, exactly so ;* **à l'amiable,**[2] *amicably :* **une lecture à nous deux,** *reading a book tête à tête ;* **à voix basse,** *in a whisper ;* **à son corps défendant,** *in one's own despite ;* **à tort et à travers,** *at random.*

152. **PLACE WHERE.** The French **à** is more freely used than *at*,[3] and must often be rendered in English by other prepositions : **à la campagne,** *in the country ;* **au jardin, au lit.** Again, a man is said to have a cigar **à la bouche,** a pen **à la main,** to be **à cheval,** *on horseback.* So **à ma place, à mes yeux, à la maison, jeter au feu,** &c. **En** and **dans** are limited to cases where *in* is used quite strictly.

Obs. 1. Under this head fall the notions of being attached to, reaching to, &c., especially with **tenir.**

L'attachement *d'un Anglais* **à la Révolution de 1688.**
Il est si grand qu'il **touche au plancher.** Acad.

---

[1] A faculty which Frenchmen possess to a much greater extent than Englishmen.

[2] Not the adjective ***aimable.***

[3] The use of *à* for *in* is due to the substitution in the 16th century of *au* for *ou* (*en le*), *aux* for *es* (*en les*) (Darnstetter, § 462).

Ce qui lui **tenait** *le plus* **au cœur** (had most hold on his heart, affected him most). Le Sage.

Obs. 2. **à** may also mean *at the distance of.*

A dix pas *d'ici, tout disparaît dans la brume.*

Obs. 3. Notice adverbial expressions like **pied à pied, dos à dos, tête-à-tête,** and closely connected with them, **un à un, goutte à goutte, brin à brin,** &c.

Obs. 4. Names of countries take *en* or *dans*, except those of which the definite article is a necessary part, as **aux Pays-Bas, au Brésil,** and a few others. (But see § 159*a*.)

153. **TIME WHEN.** In speaking of time, **à** is used with words like **époque, âge,** &c., and with *hours of the day.* For days of the week or month the accusative is preferred (§ 114).

Le 14 **à huit heures** *du matin il partit.*

A l'époque *de la Réforme.*

Again, like *at* in English, **bei** in German, **à** is used in speaking of some signal, incident, &c.

A cet aspect *que de pensées diverses reviennent à mon esprit!*

154. **MOTION, DIRECTION, EXTENT.** In this sense **à** corresponds almost exactly to the English *to*,[1] except before the names of countries, where **en** is used. Like *to* in English, **à** denotes extent and direction as well as motion. Notice especially **au point de,** with infinitive, *so far as to,* **à ce point que,** *so that* (see § 259).

Obs. 1. It is used also of time, **renvoyer au lendemain,** &c., but **d'aujourd'hui en huit (jours),** this day week. **Du jour au lendemain** means *between one day and the next, in a very short time.*

Les plus durables fortunes passent **du jour au lendemain.** Malherbe.

Obs. 2. Also in speaking of numbers, **(de) mille à douze cents francs, vingt à trente personnes,** &c.

---

[1] And, as in speaking of rest, is used rather more freely than *to*, as *jeter à la mer* (into the sea).

155. *A MOI*, **NOT** *ME*, **WITH VERBS OF MOTION**, &c. Since **à** with verbs of motion represents *ad*, and not the dative, **à moi**, **à lui**, &c., are used, and not the datives of the conjunctive pronouns. The same rule applies to **penser à**, **songer à**, **boire à**, and reflective verbs. See § 45.

Obs. But **venir**, used impersonally, and even personally when not much stress is laid on the motion, takes the dative of the conjunctive pronoun.

Il **me vient** *une idée.—Il* **m'est venu** *beau jeu.*
D'où **vous vient** *aujourd'hui ce noir pressentiment?*
Racine.

156. **TENDENCY**, &c. Closely connected with this use of the dative is its use after verbs and adjectives denoting *tendency*, *destination*, &c.

Toutes nos actions doivent **tendre à la gloire** *de Dieu.*
Acad.

Il m'a **engagé à cela** *par ses arguments.*

Il avait **préparé** *les esprits* **au changement** *qu'il se proposait de faire.*

A quelque chose *malheur est* **bon** (it is an ill wind that blows no one any good).

On this principle explain **prendre quelqu'un à témoin.**

157. **COMPOUND NOUNS FORMED WITH** *A*. Two nouns in French are often joined by **à** or **de**, where in English we use a compound noun or an adjective and a noun. **De** is used, as noticed in § 121, where one noun describes the material or contents of the other; **à** in most other cases, especially where there is an idea of purpose, destination, or of instrument.

Examples are:—**Un moulin à vent**, *a windmill;* **une pension à vie**, *a pension for life;* **le pot au lait**, *the milk-jug* (with milk in it); **un pot à lait**, *a milk-jug* (empty); **une boîte à thé**, *a tea-chest;* **la poudre à canon**, *gunpowder;* **terre à blé**, *arable land;* **du papier à lettres**, *note-paper;*

une vache à lait, *a milch-cow;* **un bateau à vapeur**, *a steamboat;* **le marché au foin**, *the hay-market;* **du poulet aux champignons**, *fowl dressed with mushrooms;* **la boîte aux lettres**, *the letter-box.* So again, **l'homme au chapeau blanc**, *the man with the white hat;* **Lalagé au doux sourire, au doux parler** (*Dulce ridentem Lalagen amabo, dulce loquentem*); **Aurore aux doigts de rose**, *rosy-fingered dawn;* **un frein à vide**, *a vacuum brake;* **une montre à répétition**, *a repeater watch;* **la ville aux sept collines**, *the City of the Seven Hills;* **le serpent à sonnettes**, *the rattlesnake.*

Obs. 1. The explanation of the dative in these phrases is not uniform, *e.g.*, in **un moulin à vent**, it is a dative of instrument, in **la boîte aux lettres**, it is a dative of destination or purpose, but it often denotes simply association.

Obs. 2. There is some difficulty respecting the use or omission of the article with the second part of such compound nouns, as there is in the case of the datives used as adverbs. The general rule is to use the article (1) where the noun denotes some definite thing, or (2) where we could prefix to it *the well-known* (as in **Aurore aux doigts de rose**), or (3) where, in speaking of household utensils or dishes, the contents of the vessel or the sauce is spoken of as quite familiar. Thus, **le pot au lait**, is the jug with *the* (household supply of) milk, **un poulet aux champignons**, a fowl with *the* mushroom dressing. But with regard to articles of food and drink, it is impossible to give quite a strict rule.

Obs. 3. The words **à la**, originally confined to phrases like **à la** (mode) **française**, *in the French fashion*, **à la légère** (*façon*), have come to be used with nouns of both genders.

Une démarche **à la Cromwell**, a step such as Cromwell would have taken.

Un ameublement **à la Louis XV**, furniture in the style of Louis XV.

158. **ELLIPTICAL USES OF DATIVE.** The dative occurs in a number of elliptical expressions, which can easily be explained, as, **à votre santé**, *here's to your health;* **au voleur!** *stop thief!* **au secours!** *help!* **à moi!** *to the*

rescue! **au revoir**![1] *good bye* (till our next meeting); **à demain!** *we meet to-morrow;* **à la bonne heure,** *at the right time*, and thus either—(1) *capital!* or (2) *very well, let's leave it.*

Also in the signs of inns, shops, &c., **à la Cigogne** (zum Storch), **au Bon Diable, à la Tour de Nesle,** but *l'hotel du Lion d'or*, &c.

XIII.—Remarks on other Prepositions.

159. **DISTINCTION OF** *EN, DANS.* **En** and **dans,** both mean *in, into;* but **dans** is the more restricted of the two, and is only used when we mean distinctly within certain definite limits. If the noun be not qualified by an article, or a demonstrative or possessive pronoun, **en** must be used; if it be so qualified, and, especially if by the definite article, **dans** must generally be preferred.

Je travaille **en chambre** (in my room, not in the school-room, at a public office, &c.);

but, *je travaille* **dans la chambre de mon père.**

La seconde coalition entre **en campagne.** Mignet.

but, *Les Prussiens s'étaient engagés* **dans cette campagne,** *comme dans une promenade militaire.* Mignet.

Again, **être en prison,** to be a prisoner, in gaol, **in Haft sein, ſitzen; être dans la prison,** to be inside the prison, as a visitor; **en voiture,** but **dans une voiture découverte.**

Obs. 1. The contraction **ès** is used in a few expressions like *bachelier-ès-lettres.* **En** is never used before a definite article in the plural or in the masculine singular unelided. Thus, **en la présence,** as **en l'air, en l'honneur.** We have also **en ma faveur, en sa présence.**

[1] But *à revoir* means to be revised.

Obs. 2. In speaking of time, **en** is used before the names of months (**en janvier**), and before the date of the year (**en 1872, en l'an 1890**). But **au mois de janvier, au dix-huitième siècle.** In speaking of the seasons we say **en été, en automne, en hiver,** but **au printemps.** Of course **dans** is used before any definite expression of time, as **dans la troisième année de ce siècle.**[1]

Obs. 3. When used with words denoting a period of time, **dans** and **en** differ materially.

Il fera cet ouvrage **en trois jours,** . . . . he will take three days to do it, whenever he begins.

Il terminera cet ouvrage **dans trois jours,** . . . . he will finish it in three days from this time.

Obs. 4. **En** is used, and not **dans,** in speaking of *clothing*, **en noir, en grande tenue, en habit de chasse, en deuil, en redingote,** also with verbs of *changing, dividing*, &c., as **changer en bête, diviser en trois parts.**

Le sénat s'érigea **en tribunal.** Montesquieu.

Obs. 5. **Dans** is used after **prendre** (*dans ses poches*, &c.), **puiser, manger, boire,** where we should use *from* or *out of.*

Le roi n'eut pas d'autre ressource que de **choisir** *ses nouveaux ministres* **dans le parti victorieux.**

Guizot.

159*a*. **DANS, EN, WITH GEOGRAPHICAL NAMES.** The chief difficulty is as to the use of **dans, en, à,** with geographical names.

(1.) *With names of countries, provinces*, &c., **en** is generally used, without the article, to answer both questions, *where?* and *whither?* except with such names as are inseparable from the definite article, which take **à.** Thus **en Europe, en France,**[2] **en Languedoc,** but **aux Indes, au Brésil, au Japon, au Maine.** In the case of the name of a country qualified by an adjective or genitive, **dans** is used, **dans la belle France, dans l'Allemagne du**

[1] See § 114, 133 for the genitive and accusative of time.

[2] *Dans la France* means definitely *within the limits of France.* In the same way we can say *dans le Brésil*, &c.

Nord, dans les (or **aux**) **États-Unis, dans la Grande-Bretagne, dans la France méridionale,** but **en Asie Mineure, en Franche-Comté,** &c., where the adjective is part of the name. The English counties are treated in the same way, **dans le Kent.**

(2.) *With names of towns* **à** is used to translate not only *to*, but *at* or *in*, which are used almost indifferently in English. **En** is not used at all.[1] **Dans** is used only to mean *within the walls of, inside.* Thus Napoleon said on his Russian expedition :—

Je suis donc **dans Moscou.**

160. **ADVERBIAL PHRASES FORMED WITH** *EN.* A number of adverbial or adjectival expressions are formed with **en.**

(1.) As by the English *in*, **en colère, en repos, une terre en friche** (*fallow*), **docteur en théologie, un vase en porcelaine, mettre des vers en musique** (*to music*), **manger son blé en herbe, une fenêtre en ogive** (*ogee-window*), **ranger en bataille,** &c., **mettre en gage, livrer en proie, donner en otage, venir en aide.**

(2.) Where we must use *as* or *like* to translate it (but see § 138).

Je pense **en citoyen,** *j'agis* **en empereur** (like an emperor).

(3.) In phrases like **de jour en jour, de temps en temps, d'aujourd'hui en huit,** *a week hence.*

161. **MEANINGS OF** *AVEC.* **Avec** has nearly the same meanings as *with* in English, viz. :—

(1) along with :—

Je suis venu **avec lui** ;—*naître* **avec le printemps.**

After many verbs—as **mêler, s'associer, comparer,** &c.—either **avec** or **à** may be used with a slight difference of meaning.

(2) to describe the accompanying circumstances of an action, and therefore with words like *justice, prudence,* &c., to form adverbs :—

[1] Except in such a sentence as—*Je me berçais dans la tête d'aller l'apprendre bientôt* **en ce** *Paris, où seulement on le savait.* Ste-B.

Quand on aime avec crainte, *on aime* avec excès.
Delavigne.

(3) with and in spite of :—

On est étonné qu' avec tout son esprit *il fasse de pareilles sottises.* Acad.

(4) of the *instrument* or *material* (cf. § 130).

Il a tué un homme avec son épée.

*Dans ce pays ils ne bâtissent qu'*avec du bois. Acad.

Obs. D'avec means *from* (*among*).

Démêlez la vertu d'avec *les apparences.* Molière.

162. **MEANINGS OF** *PAR.* **Par** means (1) *through*, or sometimes *by*, *about*, as **jeter par la fenêtre ; aller par les rues ; voyager par terre, par mer.**

Notice **tomber par terre, jeter par terre,** to fall, throw down from an erect position (also used metaphorically) ; but **tomber, jeter à terre,** from a height.

(2.) *By*, of instrument and agent, to be distinguished from **de** (see § 130) ; *through* or *by*, of cause, as **se taire par timidité, par préférence, par mégarde.**

(3.) *By*, in swearing, **jurer par ; par ma barbe !**

(4.) In speaking of distribution, **distribuer par compagnies, un poème divisé par chants, tomber par flocons.**

(5.) Of time, where we use no preposition, **deux fois par jour.**

(6.) In speaking of the weather, where we prefer *in*.

Où allez-vous **par cette pluie-là ?**

Obs. Notice **De par le roi,** *by order of the king*, when **par** used to be written *part*. so that the phrase is equivalent to *de la part de*. *Par* in *par trop* is the Latin *per* in *permagnus*.

163. *AVANT* **AND** *DEVANT.* **Avant** is used in speaking of *time* or of *order ;* **devant** in speaking of *place* (and, therefore, often means *in the presence of*).

Mettez cela devant le feu ;—*prêcher* devant le roi.

Nous nous promenons généralement avant le dîner.

Il faudrait mettre ce chapitre avant l'autre.

Ne pensant pas que l'ennemi voulût tenir ferme **avant Ulm** (before they reached Ulm). Lanfrey.

Il resta immobile **devant Ulm** (before the walls of Ulm).

Obs. 1. **Avant tout** means *above all;* **avant peu**, *in a short time* (*from now*); **au-devant de**, *to meet.*

Obs. 2. **Avant** often means *in less than. Je serai rentré dans Gênes* **avant quinze jours.**

164. *SOUS* **AND** *SUR* are used almost exactly as the corresponding English prepositions.

Idiomatic phrases with **sous** are: **sous quinze jours**, *in less than a fortnight;* **sous peu**, *in a little while;* **sous le règne de Louis XIV**, *in the reign of Louis XIV.;* **passer quelque chose sous silence**, *pass over in silence;* **sous peine d'amende.**

Sur is used idiomatically (1) to express the total from which a certain number are taken; in English we use *out of* or *among.*

Sur *cent personnes il se trouve à peine un philosophe.* Voltaire.

On lui retiendra tant **sur** *ses gages.*

(2.) To combine two dimensions, like our two feet *by* five.

Un fleuve de 100 *mètres de largeur* **sur une profondeur** *moyenne de* 15 *pieds de courant.* Volney.

(3.) In expressions of manner, **sur le qui-vive**, **sur un ton bien haut**, *avancer* **sur plusieurs colonnes**, *in several columns*, **sur mesure**, *chanter* **sur un air.**

(4.) In speaking of time, where one thing *supervenes* on another, **sur ces entrefaites**, *meanwhile*, **sur quoi**, *whereupon.*

Obs. **Au-dessous de**, **au-dessus de**, correspond to our English *below* and *above;* notice also **par dessus le marché**, *into the bargain*; **bras dessus, bras dessous**, *arm-in-arm.*

164*a*. *DÈS*, *DEPUIS* are used both of time and place to mean *from*, **dès** includes the starting-point, **depuis** may or may not. **Depuis** expects *jusqu'à* expressed or implied after it, **dès** does not.

Demain, **dès cette nuit**, *je prendrai des mesures* (i.e.,

begin to-night and go on, but it does not state or imply for how long). Racine.

Depuis le lever du soleil, *jusques à la nuit, les troupes de Darius ne cessèrent de défiler.* Vaugelas.

L'un à l'autre attachés **depuis notre naissance** (where up to the present time is implied). Voltaire.

Vous savez qu'il tomba malade **dès Amboise** (he fell ill at Amboise, and was ill some time after).

Mme de Maintenon.

165. **USES OF** *POUR.* **Pour** corresponds to *for* in English, except in respect of time. *For*, denoting duration of time, is either omitted in French or translated by **durant, pendant**; in speaking of an appointment for such and such a time, **pour** is used.

Je suis votre ami **pour** *la vie;*

but, *Il est resté trois jours sans manger* (for three days).

In negative sentences referring to time just passed, *for* is rendered by **de.**

Je ne l'ai vu **de trois jours.**

Notice **pour moi** (*quant à moi*), *as for me;* **pour qui me prenez-vous?** *what do you take me for?* **traduire mot pour mot,** *word for word;* **danger pour danger,** *weighing one risk with another;* **être pour beaucoup dans,** *to take an important part in;* **passer pour; tenir pour dit,** &c.

165*a*. *SANS.* **Sans** often means *had it not been for.*

Sans la bataille *de Chéronée, Démosthène eût sauvé la Grèce.*

165*b*. **ENTRE, PARMI.** **Entre** answers to *between* as well as to *among*, that is, it can be used either of two or of more objects; **parmi**, literally *in the midst of*, can only be used to translate *among*. In the 17th century **parmi was sometimes used with a singular,** as *parmi la plaine.*

Obs. Notice the phrases **entre les mains de,** *in the hands of;* **entre deux soleils,** *between sunrise and sunset;* **entre deux vins,** *neither quite drunk nor quite sober;* **nager entre deux**

eaux, *neither quite under water nor quite above* (and metaphorically); **entre deux âges**, *neither old nor young.*

166. *A TRAVERS, AU TRAVERS.* *Across* or *through* is rendered by **à travers**, without any following preposition, or by **au travers de**. The latter suggests an obstacle.

Au travers des périls *un grand cœur se fait jour.*
Racine.

*Un roi ne voit le peuple qu'*à **travers le prisme** *brillant de la cour.*
Malesherbes.

167. *PRÈS DE* **AND** *AUPRÈS DE, HORS, JUSQU'À, COMME.* **Près de** means simply *near*, of place or time; **auprès de** is not used of time; its most common uses are—(1) *attached to, in attendance upon* (a distinguished person), and thus often *in the opinion of;* (2) *beside, in comparison with.*

On l'a placé **auprès du ministre.**
Il a voulu me perdre **auprès de vous.** Corneille.
Que sont les périls du corps **auprès des** *tourments de l'âme?*
Chateaubriand.

But **Ambassadeur près la cour d'Espagne,**

Hors means *except;* **hors de**, *out of, outside of;* **dehors** is used in the same sense, but **en dehors de** is more common; **hors la loi** means out of the pale of the law.

Jusqu'à, *up to, as far as*, may often be rendered by *even*, i.e., everything up to and including.

Il aime **jusqu'à ses ennemis.**

Et **jusqu'à Montaigne** *essayait d'y propager sa morale naïve.*
Bouilly.

Comme is used almost as a preposition, *as for:*—

Comme velours, *vous trouverez la plus riche collection de nuances.*
Zola.

168. **REPETITION OF PREPOSITIONS.** The prepositions **de, à, en,** are almost always repeated before different words governed by them; other prepositions are frequently so repeated.

168*a*. **NOUNS CONNECTED BY PREPOSITIONS.** In English nouns are freely connected by prepositions other than *of*; in French this construction is often avoided by introducing a participle, though the rule is not so strict as in Latin. Thus, *examples from history*, **des exemples tirés de l'histoire**; *a victory over the Moors*, **une victoire remportée sur les Maures.**

Cela ressemble à une malédiction amère lancée sur le sort de l'humanité. G. Sand.

XIV.—Use of the Tenses.

169. **PRESENT.** The present represents both forms of the English present, viz., the present indefinite, *I love*, and the present imperfect, *I am loving*.

La superstition **cause** *mille accidents.* La Fontaine.

Besançon **fume** *encore sur son roc foudroyé* (is still smoking).

The present is also used in the following cases where it is not employed in English :—

(1.) *The historical present*, that is, the use of the present for the past, in describing past events, in order to make the reader or hearer a spectator, as it were, of the action, is far more common in French than in English.[1]

Les Romains, malgré l'inégalité du lieu où ils combattaient, **repoussent** *de tous côtés les Gaulois. Brennus les* **rallie, lève** *le siège, et* **campe** *à quelques milles de Rome. Camille le* **suit** *avec la même ardeur, l'*attaque *de nouveau et le* défait. *La plupart des Gaulois furent tués sur la place.*

It should be noticed in this passage that the historical present is used only in those parts where the writer is strongly influenced by the excitement of the scene described, not, for example, in **où ils combattaient,** nor in **furent tués.**

[1] It is occasionally used in English, especially by Carlyle.

In translating such passages into English, it must be borne in mind that our comparative want of vivacity and dramatic feeling would condemn a literal rendering as affected; and, therefore, the student will generally do well to choose the past tense. On the other hand, in translating English into French, he should look out for opportunities of using an idiom so characteristic of the genius of the French language.

(2.) The present is used for the future when the speaker wishes to impress his hearers with the certainty or the immediate approach of the action he is talking about.

Je **suis** *de retour dans un moment.* Molière.

(3.) The present of the verbs **arriver, tomber,** is used in a peculiar way.

*J'***arrive** *de Paris,* I am just come from Paris.

Je **tombe** *des nues,* literally I have just fallen from the clouds, meaning I should never have dreamt of it.

So also **tenir,** to have received, see example to § 120 (2).

(4.) The English *will,* denoting, not futurity, but indefinite frequency, is rendered by the French present; *e.g.*, in a phrase like "Two bands of men will often meet, and shake the earth with noise."

Similarly *would* is often simply a sign of the imperfect, "One of them would load a gun and order a spectator to fire at him."

169*a*. **PRESENT AND IMPERFECT TO RENDER ENGLISH PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT.** In speaking of actions begun some time ago and still continuing, we use the *perfect,* with some expression like *for a long time,* the French use the *present* with *since a long time,* &c. Similarly, where we say *I had been loving for a long time,* they say, *I was loving since a long time.* This applies both to principal and to dependent sentences.

Depuis trente hivers il **languit** (he has languished).

Depuis que tu **es** *avec moi, je ne* **suis** *plus reine.* (Since you have been with me, I have ceased to be queen.)

Voilà **plus d'un an** *qu'il* **était** *secrétaire d'Etat* (had been).

La notion même de patriotisme **commençait** *à s'altérer dans les âmes,* **depuis que** *Bonaparte* **identifiait** *sans cesse sa propre personne à la cause et à l'image de la patrie.*

Lanfrey.

Obs. Hence we must render "How long have you been here?" by **depuis quand êtes-vous** *ici;* "I have been here a long time," by **Je suis** *ici* **depuis longtemps,** or **il y a longtemps que je suis** *ici.* But "How long were you in Paris last year?" is translated **Combien de temps** *avez-vous été* . . . . because there is here no idea of the stay in Paris continuing either now or up to any particular date spoken of.

170. **THE PRETERITE DEFINITE** is used in speaking of a single action that occurred at a definite past time. The time at which it occurred must be defined by words in the sentence, or must be, from the context, obvious to the reader. It answers the question, *What happened next?* the imperfect answers the question, *What was going on? What was the situation?*

171. **THE IMPERFECT**, as its name implies, denotes that the action was unfinished at the time thought of. It represents an action as going on at some past time to which the reader's thoughts are carried back by the rest of the sentence, or by the context. Hence it is used:—

(1.) As the English *I was speaking*, to denote an action going on contemporaneously with some other action actually mentioned.

Je **lisais,** *pendant que vous dormiez.*

Je **lisais,** *quand il entra.*

(2.) In speaking of things that were habitual in past time, as the custom of a nation, the habits of a person, where we can generally put *used to.*

Les anciens Egyptiens **embaumaient** *leurs morts.*

La pompe de la royauté **était** *pour lui un fardeau pesant.*

(3.) Sometimes in a vivid narrative of recent events, to make the

reader or hearer as it were a spectator of the scene.[1] This applies especially to verbs of saying, *mon père* **disait** *hier*, my father was saying yesterday. So **reprenait, répondait.**

(4.) For its use of an action all but accomplished, see § 179.

Obs. One of the chief difficulties connected with the use of the imperfect and preterite definite is embodied in the question—How can words like **rester, dormir,** which denote a lasting action, ever be used in the preterite definite? The answer is, that the imperfect does not denote continuance merely, but *indefinite* continuance. As soon as you fix the time, the action expressed by **rester** may be as much a single definite act as the action expressed by **disparaître.** Thus:—

Il **resta** *interdit depuis le commencement de la cérémonie jusqu'à la fin.*

Erasme de Rotterdam **vint** *plusieurs fois à Paris et y* **vécut** *longtemps.*

172. **PRETERITE DEFINITE AND IMPERFECT COMPARED.** In histories or narratives, the preterite definite is the tense used to give the *successive* events recounted; the imperfect is used where the historian lingers, so to speak, over any detail or scene. The preterite gives the action of the drama, the imperfect the background.

Bonaparte **attendait** *avec impatience le résultat de cette délibération; il* **était entouré** *de généraux et de trois régiments qu'il* **devait** *passer en revue. Le décret du Conseil des Anciens lui* **fut apporté** *à huit heures; . . . il* **reçut** *les félicitations de tous ceux qui* **formaient** *son cortège, les officiers* **tirèrent** *leurs épées . . . il se* **mit** *à leur tête, et ils* **marchèrent** *aux Tuileries.*

The first sentence does not carry the narrative on; it simply describes the state of things, and, therefore, the imperfect is used. Afterwards, to give the several events which succeeded, the historian uses the preterite.

---

[1] Robert (*Questions de Grammaire*, &c.) says that this use of the imperfect is common in the works of the "picturesque" school (Daudet, the brothers de Goncourt, &c.).

Obs. The following examples, in which there is no doubt which tense is to be used, are mostly taken from Bernhard Schmitz, p. 211.

Il **avait** *la joue enflée*—he had a swelled face.

Il s'était enrhumé, et il en **eut** *la joue enflée*—he had caught cold and got a swelled face from it.

Une tuile lui **tomba** *sur la tête et le* **tua.** Imperfect out of the question—two distinct and successive occurrences.

*J'*aperçus *qu'il* **était** *distrait.* He was bewildered all the time, before I saw it, when I saw it, and afterwards.

Les Médicis **appelèrent** *à Florence les savants que les Turcs* **chassaient** *de la Grèce. Chassèrent* would have implied that the Turks expelled them from Greece after the Medicis had invited them to Florence.

Nous attaquâmes l'ennemi qui se **retirait,** the retiring enemy —*qui se* **retira**—who then retired (after our attack).

Hence the *terms* of a treaty are frequently put in the imperfect.

Le 4 mai 1713, *l'Angleterre, le Portugal, la Savoie, la Prusse et la Hollande* **signèrent** *les traités d'Utrecht. La France* **reconnaissait** *l'ordre de succession établi en Angleterre,* **cédait** *l'Ile de Terre-Neuve,* &c.

173. **THE PRETERITE INDEFINITE** corresponds in form to the English present perfect (*I have loved*). But its commonest use is to denote an event that took place at some unknown past time.

J'ai acheté une maison properly means *I possess a house bought*, I bought the house, no matter when, and I now possess it. But in French, the idea of now possessing, of the result of the action continuing, is lost sight of, or rather it is thought of as continuing in the mind of the narrator, and the tense, as its name implies, indicates most frequently an *unknown past time.*

Hence it is used in conversation, and in easy narrative, where the mere occurrence of the incidents, rather than their connection or sequence, is thought of. It is, in fact, the ordinary tense of *conversational narrative*, as the preterite definite is the ordinary tense of

the historical written narrative. Mätzner remarks that it is natural to an uneducated[1] person to use the preterite indefinite rather than the perfect, because the several facts are then linked together, not by their natural connection, which the narrator is scarcely capable of understanding, but by their all being past incidents *to his mind*. "Poets," he adds, "and writers of tales are right in accommodating themselves to this view. The tense is constantly found in the old French *Romans, Fabliaux et Contes.*"

In Ponsard's *Charlotte Corday*, Barbaroux, relating to Charlotte the arrest of the Girondins, uses this tense, where a historian would have chosen the preterite definite.

Et même, c'est justice à rendre à leur conduite,
Ils ont *résolument* essayé *de la fuite.*
Deux fois ils se frayaient un passage douteux,
Deux fois un mur de fer s'est dressé *devant eux.*
De leur opprobre enfin par deux fois convaincus,
Ils sont rentrés *muets, consternés et vaincus.*

Which may be compared with Mignet's narrative:—

Toute la nuit se passa *en préparatifs; le tocsin* sonna, *la générale* battit, *les rassemblements se* formèrent. *Henriot se* présenta *au conseil général. . . . . Henriot se* retourne *alors vers les siens, et* crie:—*Canonniers, à vos pièces! Deux canons* sont pointés *sur la convention qui* recule, entre *dans le jardin, le* traverse. . . . *Ainsi* succomba *le parti de la Gironde.*

Mignet, it will be observed, uses either the preterite definite, or in the most exciting part, the historical present.

174. **PLUPERFECT.** *The Pluperfect* stands in the same relation to past tenses as the imperfect to the present, that is, it denotes a completed act the result of which goes on through the whole period at some point of which another past action took place.

---

[1] *i.e.* originally; now, of course, it is the accepted tense of conversation

Les Turcs **avaient atteint** *leur limite extrême, le Danube n'ne restait plus qu'à prendre Constantinople. Mahomet II assiégea cette ville et la prit.* Michelet.

Here the past action is the siege and capture of Constantinople. The imperfect, *restait*, denotes the state of things at the time; the pluperfect, *avaient atteint*, an action previously completed, the results of which were continuing.

Obs. The pluperfect is used idiomatically in conversation, much as in English, in cases where the speaker first goes back *in thought* to some past time, and then, still keeping that time in his mind, speaks of events before it.

Abigaïl. *Je suis un peu sa parente.*
Bolingbroke. *Vous, Abigaïl?*
Abigaïl. *Oui, vraiment, par mésalliance! Un cousin à elle, un Churchill,* **s'était brouillé** *avec sa noble famille en épousant ma mère.* (We should say *quarrelled.*)
Masham. *Est-il possible? Parente de la duchesse?*
Abigaïl. *Parente bien éloignée; jamais je ne* **m'étais présentée** *devant elle . . . .* Scribe.

175. **PRETERITE ANTERIOR.** The *preterite anterior* denotes a past action completed just before another past action. It is used chiefly in principal sentences beginning with **à peine**, and dependent sentences beginning with **aussitôt que, dès que** or **quand, lorsque**, &c., employed in something of the same sense.

A peine eurent-ils appris *la mort de Charles VIII, qu'ils ordonnèrent*, &c. Sismondi.

Lorsque *tout le monde* **fut parti,** *Adèle voulut profiter du peu de jour qui restait pour aller se promener.* De Souza.

Obs. Of course the pluperfect is used of an *habitual* past action.

176. **FUTURES IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.** The following idioms should be noticed:—

(1.) *The future* is sometimes used in French of a *past* event where the writer takes his stand, as it were, at some previous point of

time. This occurs both in principal and in dependent sentences :—

Les troupes anglaises, en effet, venaient de débarquer en ce pays. Ce n'était encore qu'un premier essai, et elles **auront** *à revenir à la charge avant de prendre pied dans la Péninsule pour n'en plus sortir que par la frontière de France. Pourtant le signal est donné ; sir Arthur Wellesley, celui qui* **sera** *le duc de Wellington, avec ce bon sens tenace contre qui se* **brisera** *le génie, apparaît et se dessine pour la première fois.* Ste-Beuve.

(2.) As in English, the future is sometimes used in commands.

Tu ne **tueras** *pas* (thou shalt not kill).

Vous **apporterez** *le café quand je sonnerai.* Feuillet.

(3.) The future perfect is often used to express a supposition about a past event.

Il lui **aura** *tout* **dit**,[1] he has probably told him all.

C'est que vous **aurez négligé** *quelque précaution.*

177. **FUTURE AND CONDITIONAL IN TEMPORAL SENTENCES.** In sentences beginning with *when*, *until*, the English language is careless about the tense of the verb. This is not the case in French, and, therefore, if the verb of the principal sentence be in the future or refer to future time, that of the sentence beginning with *when*, *until*, &c., if in the indicative, must also be in the future or in the future perfect.

Vous serez mon ami quand vous me **quitterez** (when you leave me).

Qu'on m'avertisse quand les chevaux **seront arrivés** (when the horses come).

The same principle applies to the conditional :—

Si nous avions laissé l'armée prussienne sur notre droite, elle nous aurait pris à revers, pendant que nous **aurions été occupés** *à lutter avec les Anglais.* Thiers.

Il s'engagea à leur rendre les places, lorsque leurs étendards **flotteraient** *sur les murs de Jérusalem.*

[1] As in German, er wird ihm alles gesagt haben.

And to relative (adjectival) sentences.

En suivant l'armée ennemie pendant trois ou quatre jours, vous verrez ce qu'elle **deviendra**, *et ce que vous* **pourrez** *faire sans vous commettre.* Ste-Beuve.

Le plus heureux des hommes serait celui qui, possédant la science de son labeur, et travaillant de ses mains, **aurait** *le temps de vivre par le cœur et par le cerveau.* G. Sand.

The following forms a link between this construction and § 178 (4).

Et il (Gibbon) *ajoutait qu'il avait quelquefois pensé à écrire un dialogue des morts dans lequel Lucien, Erasme, et Voltaire se* **seraient** *fait leur confession.* Ste-Beuve.

Obs. But after **si**, meaning **if**, even where in English we use a future or conditional, the present or imperfect indicative is employed in French. See § 253*a*.

178. **THE CONDITIONALS PRESENT AND PAST** are properly futures, referring to past time. Just as **je parlerai** means *I have to speak*, so **je parlerais** means *I had to speak*, *I was to speak*, and passes easily, when an if-clause is attached, into the sense *I should speak*.[1]

Besides their use in the apodosis of conditional sentences, they have several idiomatic uses.

(1.) In asking a question politely.

Pourriez-vous *me dire . . .* ? Could you tell me?

Probably **je ne saurais**, *I cannot*, is used on the same principle, to avoid a direct refusal.

(2.) In indignant exclamations.

Moi, **je pourrais** *trahir le Dieu que j'aime!* Racine.

Quoi! Louis XIV **aurait été** *dupe à ce point!* Ste-B.

(3.) After **quand, quand même**, in conditional sentences. See § 284.

(4.) In relating a story, &c., on some one else's authority, or where an "if" might be supplied.

[1] The Latin *scripturus eram*, sometimes used for *scripsissem* in the apodosis of a conditional sentence, is a close parallel.

S'il faut en croire Defoe. . . . Bolingbroke s'écarta beaucoup du sang-froid que lui commandait sa devise. En voyant le duc de Shrewsbury lui enlever la première place, il aurait jeté *son sac sur le plancher et* se serait écrié[1]: "*Que le souffle de l'enfer et la rage d'un million de diables soient sur la maudite baguette!*" "*Nous enlever la baguette!*" aurait dit *l'évêque de Rochester.* "*Par Lucifer! je ne croyais pas qu'elle l'osât.*" Ch. de Rémusat.

*Selon certains critiques modernes, Numa Pompilius n'*aurait *pas* existé, *et il ne* serait *que la personnification de l'époque de législation religieuse et civile des Romains.* (If we believe certain critics, Numa did not exist.) Ampère.

179. **IMPERFECT FOR PAST CONDITIONAL.** In energetic writing, the *imperfect* indicative is often used instead of the *past conditional*, when the writer wishes to call special attention to the certainty of the result :—

S'il épousait la fille du duc de Bourgogne, il réunissait *tôt ou tard l'Aquitaine et les Pays-Bas, entre lesquels Louis XI* périssait *étouffé.*[2] Michelet.

179*a*. **EUPHONY.** The 2nd plural preterite definite of the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th conjugations and the imperfect subjunctive of the first conjugation are displeasing to a French ear. The latter is often avoided by violating the sequence of tenses.

Il ne m'aurait pas cru et m'aurait battu jusqu'à ce que je parle. G. Sand.

The following is from Ste-Beuve :—

Mme de la Tour met à un endroit un mot terrible, consultassiez, *et Rousseau semble l'y autoriser quand il écrit:* "*Je ne supporterais pas l'idée que vous* attribuassiez *à négligence . . .*" *Que dirait Fénelon? que dirait Voltaire? Il y a là de quoi les faire souffrir et crier.*

---

[1] Compare the use of sollen in German.

[2] Compare in Latin, *In paludem trahebantur, ni Cæsar legiones productas instruxisset.*

180. **SUBJUNCTIVE IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.** The subjunctive is used in ordinary principal sentences to express modest assertion only in the phrase **je ne sache pas.** The phrase **Qui vive?** is probably due to the use of watch-words, *vive le roi, vive le duc;* a challenger would say: *Qui vive?*

Je ne sache pas *qu'il y ait eu des hommes blancs devenus noirs.* (I am not aware.)

Notice also the phrase que je sache, *as far as I know.*

181. **OPTATIVE.** The present and imperfect subjunctive are used to express a *wish*, and occasionally a *command:*

Dieu soit *loué!*—Plût *à Dieu!*

Périsse *le Troyen, auteur de nos alarmes!*

Ecrive *qui voudra!*—Soit! (good! the *t* is pronounced).

Obs. The subjunctive occasionally means *to think that!*

Que je puisse *jamais oublier Bérénice.* Racine.

182. **COULD HAVE, SHOULD HAVE, MIGHT HAVE,** in English must be rendered in French by the past conditional of **pouvoir, devoir,** with a *present* infinitive.

*J'*aurais pu *le* faire, I could have done it, might have done it.

Tu aurais dû venir, you should have come, ought to have come, which *may* also be rendered Tu devais venir.

This use must be distinguished from je dus, j'ai dû, je devais, *I must have, I am likely to have.*

*Des lettres ainsi refaites et retouchées laissent toujours à désirer quelque chose; mais Courier, homme de style et de forme, n'*a *guère* dû faire *de changements à ses épîtres que pour les perfectionner par le tour* (can scarcely be supposed to have made). Ste-Beuve.

C'est la dernière fois que Marmont le vit, et il dut conserver *depuis lors de cet entretien inachevé un amer et douloureux souvenir* (he must have retained).

Ste-Beuve.

Obs. 1. Of course the past tenses of devoir often have the ordinary meaning *had to, was bound to.*

Comme ils étaient très pauvres, sa grand'mère et lui, **il avait dû** *de bonne heure naviguer à la pêche.* Loti.

Obs. 2. *Must have* is sometimes rendered as in English :—

Quelqu'un qui **doit être arrivé** *hier* (*être arrivé* means *be here*).

Obs. 3. **Devoir** and **pouvoir** are often almost pleonastic according to English ideas, though giving vigour to the style in French. Thus Lanfrey, after describing the enthusiasm of Arndt and other writers before Jena, continues . . . mais *on ne* **devait** *comprendre que plus tard l'utilité d'un tel concours* (was not understood till later). Cf. § 176 (1).

Le parti de Cromwell disparut si complètement que les fils du protecteur **purent** *mourir en paix et oubliés dans leur patrie* (died). Guizot.

Les républicains régicides **durent** *se résigner à accepter pour collègues ceux qui ne voulaient, à aucun prix, passer pour leurs complices* (consented to accept). Guizot.

Obs. 4. In the 17th century the imperfect indicative of *devoir, pouvoir, falloir*, is found where the conditional is now used.

Si mon mal se pouvait guérir par une grande appréhension, cette malice **pouvait** *être bonne à quelque chose.* Voiture.

And even a construction like the English is found.

Vous **deviez** *l'***avoir** *compris par les passages que j'ai cités.* Pascal.

183. **PERIPHRASTIC FORMS.** The verb **aller**, like the English, *I am going*, &c., is frequently used to express an immediate future.

Venir with **de** is used of an action just completed ; **il vient de partir**, he *has* just started, **il venait de partir**, he *had* just started. (See § 181, note.) So **il ne faisait que de succomber**, *he had just fallen ;* but **il ne faisait que succomber**, *he did nothing but fall, he only fell.*

183*a*. **EXCEPTIONAL TENSES.** The past imperative occasionally occurs, like our *have done !*

Aie fini *quand j'arriverai.*

There is also a compound perfect, &c., now and then used, **il a eu fait, il avait eu fait.**

XV.—Voices and Auxiliaries.

184. **NEUTER VERBS WITH** *ÊTRE.* The following neuter verbs, denoting *motion* or a *change of state*, always take **être** :—

aller, arriver, mourir, décéder,
naître, éclore, venir, devenir,
sortir, ressortir, partir, repartir,
tomber,[1] **retomber, retourner, échoir,**
entrer, rentrer, rester,

and compounds of **venir**, except *subvenir*, *contrevenir* and *convenir* meaning *to suit.*

Other neuter verbs denoting *motion*, or *a change of state*, take **être** when the result of the action is to be thought of, **avoir** when it is the action itself that is present to the mind;

cesser,	**demeurer,**	**grandir,**
changer,	**descendre,**	**maigrir,**
coucher,	**échouer,**	**monter,**
croître,	**embellir,**	**passer,**
déborder,	**empirer,**	**rajeunir,**
dégénérer,	**expirer,**	**vieillir,**

and apparaître, disparaître (though *paraître* always takes *avoir*), are among the commonest of these verbs. The difficulty generally occurs in the preterite indefinite, which is used to denote either a single action (**avoir**), or a resulting state (**être**).

La procession **a passé** *sous mes fenêtres* (passed, went).
La foi du centenier, la foi du charbonnier, **sont passées** ***en proverbe*** (have become proverbial).
Le soleil **avait baissé** *sans que je m'en aperçusse.*
Ils commencent à croire que leur crédit **est fort baissé.**
Racine.

[1] Nearly always takes **être**, except in speaking of rain, &c., falling at a particular time. *La pluie a tombé vers deux heures.* Karr.

Nous **avons couché** *à dix lieues de Paris* (we slept).
Ils **sont couchés** *dans le bateau* (have gone to bed, and and are now sleeping there).
Notre vaisseau **a échoué** *sur un banc de sable* (ran aground).
Ses projets **sont échoués** (have run aground and stand there, *i.e.*, failed).
Or, en 1482, *Quasimodo* **avait grandi.** V. Hugo.
Quoi ! Ernest ! c'est que tu **es** *si* **grandi,** *si* **changé.**
Les usages **ont** *graduellement* **changé.** Chateaubriand.
*Elle n'*avait *jamais* **monté** *à cheval* (she had never ridden). G. Sand.
Étant monté *à cheval la veille au soir pour faire la garde, il n'était pas encore de retour.* Lamartine.
Nous **avons déménagé** *hier.*
Nous **sommes déménagés** *depuis hier.*

Obs. 1. **Demeurer,** meaning *to sojourn at a place, to pass time* there, takes **avoir** ; meaning *to stop*, that is, *interrupt a journey*, or *to be left* (as, for instance, on the battle field), it takes **être** ; **rester** very rarely takes **avoir.** It seems strange at first sight that **rester** and **demeurer** should take **être** ; the reason is that they denote the *change* from motion to rest.

Obs. 2. **Échapper,** in the meaning *to escape the notice of, to be forgotten*, takes **avoir.**

Une observation qui **a échappé** *à M. Anibert, et que j'ai été à même de faire.* Mérimée.

In the idiomatic meaning *to be said or done inadvertently*, it takes **être,** though **avoir** is found.

*Ce mot m'*est **échappé,** *pardonnez ma franchise.* Voltaire.
Il lui **avait échappé** *de dire.* St-Simon.

Obs. 3. **Convenir** with **avoir,** *to suit ;* with **être,** *to come to an agreement.*

Obs. 4. All other neuter verbs, including such words as **marcher, périr, sauter, fuir,** take **avoir** in all cases.

185. **THE PAST PARTICIPLE OF NEUTER VERBS,** conjugated with **être,** is used without an

auxiliary as an active past participle, and is rendered *having done so and so.*

Un gentilhomme, dévoué d'abord au Covenant, mais **rentré** *depuis dans la faveur du roi* (who had returned). Guizot.

In this respect they are exactly like Latin deponents. Notice that in this passage **dévoué** and **rentré** are used in exactly the same way, though one is passive, the other neuter.

185*a*. **EQUIVALENTS OF ENGLISH PASSIVE.** The passive voice is much less used in French than in English. There are three constructions which admit of being rendered by a simple passive in English, though, perhaps, with a slight sacrifice of fulness of meaning.

(1.) An active verb with **on** for subject.

On *l'*estime *partout un modèle d'honneur* (he is deemed).
On *la* cite *en exemple* (she is quoted). Ponsard.

(2.) A pronominal verb.

Des pourparlers pour un traité de paix **s'étaient établis** *dès le* 20 *octobre entre Succhesini et Duroc* (had been set on foot). Lanfrey.

Un jour, le talisman **s'égare** *ou* **se brise**, *et soudain le dieu a disparu* (is lost or broken). Lanfrey.

(3.) A pronominal verb formed with **faire**, **laisser**, **trouver**, **voir**.

Ses généraux les plus renommés **s'étaient fait tuer** *sur le champ de bataille* (had been killed). Lanfrey.

Cette erreur a entraîné dans une conduite à eux-mêmes fatale les pouvoirs qui **s'***en* **sont laissé abuser** (have been misled by it). Guizot.

L'élan national, la profonde homogénéité de pensée et d'action qui avaient fait de notre armée un tout animé et vivant, **se trouvèrent affaiblis** *d'abord, puis peu à peu comme* **submergés** *au sein de cette masse cosmopolite.* Lanfrey.

XVI.—Infinitive Mood.

186. **INFINITIVE A VERBAL NOUN.** To understand the infinitive, we must remember that it is really a verbal noun, that is to say, a noun representing the action of the verb without naming any person or time. In English there are two forms of the verbal noun, the infinitive, and the gerund ending in **ing**, the latter identical in form with the present participle ; in French there is only the infinitive.

The infinitive as a noun may be the subject, object, or appositive complement in a sentence. It may stand alone, or may be governed by one of the prepositions **de, à, par, pour, sans, après, entre,** or by one of the compound prepositions of which **de** and **à** form the latter part, such as **avant de, à force de.**

187. **THE INFINITIVE IS USED WITHOUT A PREPOSITION :—**

(1.) When it stands as a nominative to a verb.
(2.) With certain impersonals, of which it is really the subject.
(3.) With auxiliary verbs of mood, and verbs of hearing, seeing, &c.
(4.) With verbs of thinking and declaring.
(5.) With verbs of motion.
(6.) In exclamations and questions of appeal.

188. **AS NOMINATIVE TO A VERB.** The infinitive without preposition is used in French as the nominative case of a noun, where we employ either the infinitive or the verbal noun in *ing*. It may stand either

(1.) As the subject of a verb, or the subject repeated by **ce.**

Servir *avec amour et* **répandre** *son sang est approuvé là-haut ; mais, ici-bas, les exemples prouvent qu'***être** *honnête homme porte malheur.*[1] Rémusat (quotation.)

S'entretenir *avec son ami, c'est* **penser** *tout haut.*

---

[1] To serve with love
And shed one's blood
Approved is above ;
But here below
Examples show
'Tis fatal to be good.

(2.) As complement after **être, sembler, paraître, être censé,** and sometimes **se trouver.**

Il **serait censé avoir abdiqué** *la royauté.* Mignet.

It will be seen that *after* **être** the infinitive with **de** is much more used, § 198; the present rule applies when the nominative to **être** is an infinitive or **ce** representing an infinitive.

(3.) In apposition,

Une pensée préoccupa dès lors Cromwell; ne point **s'associer** *à la politique. . . .* Guizot.

Obs. 1. The French never use **parlant,** &c., as verbal nouns, except after **en.**

Obs. 2. A few infinitives may be preceded by the definite article, viz., **manger, boire, parler, savoir, savoir-faire, dormir, rire, sourire, vouloir, dire,** and thus become substantives in all respects. **Aller** and **sortir** are so used only in the expressions **l'aller et le retour,** *return journey,* **l'aller et le venir,** *going up and down,* **au sortir de table,** *after dinner.*

Obs. 3. This use of the infinitive of ordinary verbs was common in the 16th century, less so in the 17th.

Le vivre *et* **le vieillir** *sont choses conjointes.*

Malherbe.

189. **AFTER CERTAIN IMPERSONALS.** The infinitive, without preposition, stands after the impersonals **il faut, il fait beau, il fait bon, il me semble, il vaut mieux, il vaut autant,** and is in such cases really the subject of the sentence.

Il me semble avoir vu *remuer cette porte* (I think I saw).

Il vaut mieux recacheter *cette lettre.* Dumas.

Obs. The 17th century often has **de** after these impersonals.

Ne **vaudrait-***il pas* **mieux de** *se* **laisser** *tromper?*

Molière.

190. **AFTER AUXILIARIES OF MOOD, &c.** The verbs **pouvoir, faire, laisser, devoir, oser, vouloir,** which translate the English or German auxiliaries of mood,

as well as **voir**, *to see*, **entendre, ouïr**, *to hear*, **savoir**, *to know how to*, **aimer mieux**, *to prefer*, and **daigner**, are followed by an infinitive without a preposition.

Celui qui n'a pas **su haïr** *la servitude,*
Celui-là ne **peut** *pas t'***aimer**, *ô solitude.*

Avoir beau, faillir, with **manquer, penser** (old fashioned) in the sense of *faillir*, also take an infinitive without preposition.

Il **faillit tomber** (he just escaped falling, all but fell).
Vous **avez beau**[1] **lutter** (it is in vain for you to struggle).
Le chien **pensa** *se* **noyer** (was all but drowned).
La Fontaine.

191. **ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.** The verbs **faire, laisser,** often govern an accusative and infinitive, the accusative being the subject of the infinitive, though not so closely connected with it as in Latin. This is also the construction of verbs of *seeing*, *hearing*, *perceiving* (see §§ 115, 116)

La nature **les a fait** *naître dans l'obscurité.*
Je **sens** *de jour en jour* **dépérir** *mon génie.* Boileau.
*Les gens que j'***avais vus arriver**.

In relative clauses, verbs of *saying* and *thinking* also take this construction (§ 117).

Il revenait sur les propositions **qu'***il* **disait** *lui* **avoir été faites** *par tous les partis et avoir repoussées.* Lanfrey.

Obs. 1. This accusative and infinitive construction, where the accusative is the *subject* of the infinitive, must be distinguished from the cases in which the accusative is governed by the infinitive. (§ 115, *Obs.* 2.)

Par les traits de Jéhu je vis **percer le père**. Racine.

Such phrases are translated by the English passive; the real construction is: *I saw the piercing the father*. The example *Il revenait* combines both.

Obs. 2. With verbs of *hearing* and *seeing*, we often think of

[1] Almost exactly like "It's all very fine."

hearing and seeing the person rather than of noticing the action. This accounts for the frequent use of the participle, or **qui** with an indicative after these verbs.

Je t'ai **vu** *là* **griffonnant** *sur ton genou.* Beaumarchais.

Nous y trouvâmes mon fils **qui** *patinait.* Ste-Beuve.

Especially after **voilà**:

Le **voilà** *qui vient* (there he comes)!

192. **VERBS OF THINKING, HOPING, AND DECLARING**, are often followed by an infinitive, the *subject of which is the same as the subject of the verb*, but is not expressed in French. In Latin an accusative and infinitive with the reflexive pronoun is used after such verbs, in English the conjunction *that* with a finite verb:—

Si tu **comptes** *le* **retenir** (if you think that you can keep him back).

Gibbon déclare qu'il ne **reconnait avoir** *aucune obligation à l'université d'Oxford.* Ste-Beuve.

Il **croyait** *alors* **devoir** *lui montrer de grands ménagements*[1] (he thought he ought, *not* he thought it his duty). Acad.

But *L'armée de Masséna qu'il savait périssant de faim.*

Obs. 1. Sometimes, of course (see second example), **que** is used in such cases; **croire** nearly always adheres to the infinitive construction.

Obs. 2. Some of these verbs, as **espérer, souhaiter,** often take **de**. See Appendix III.

Obs. 3. In the 17th century **de** is found with **croire, prétendre, compter,** &c.

C'est en vain que tu **prétendrais de** *me le* **déguiser.** Molière.

193. **AFTER VERBS OF MOTION**, as **aller, venir,**[2]

[1] Of course, if the subject of the infinitive be not that of *croire*, &c., another construction is used (§ 215).

[2] Remember *viens jouer*, come and play; *je viens de jouer*, I have just played; *je viens à jouer*, I happen to play; *je viens pour jouer*, I come in order to play.

and the transitive verbs **envoyer, mener,** an infinitive without a preposition is used,[1] where we should often couple the second verb to the first by *and.*

Ils **allèrent** *ensuite* **demeurer** *à Oviédo* (went and lived). Le Sage.

Un spahi **était venu** *lui* **apporter** *le petit écrin doré.* Daudet.

Ces devoirs rendus, il **monta** *se* **faire** *voir dans la ville.* Daudet.

Envoyez chercher *le médecin.*

The past indefinite (and less frequently the past definite) of **être** is used in the same way.

Elle **a été trouver** *le roi.*

Ils se séparèrent, et chacun **fut** *se* **coucher.** Mérimée.

194. **IN EXCLAMATIONS AND QUESTIONS OF APPEAL,** an infinitive without preposition is used. A noun or pronoun (of course disjunctive, § 46) often stands as its subject.

Moi, vous **payer** ! *dit le bigot en colère.*

Pourquoi toujours **parler** *d'un pareil scélérat ?* Ponsard.

Quel parti **prendre** ? (what course am I to take !)

On peut juger du scandale : un élève d'Oxford se **convertir** *au papisme !* Ste-Beuve.

Obs. 1. Also in indirect questions.

Nous avons **de quoi vivre** (wherewithal).

Je ne sais **que répondre.**

Obs. 2. The following elliptical infinitives should be noticed— **savoir,** *namely ;* **s'adresser au concierge** ! *apply to the porter !* **voir page 270** ! *see page* 270 !

195. **USE OF THE INFINITIVE WITH** *DE.* The infinitive with **de** is used not only as a genitive, but also

---

[1] A construction confined in Latin to the poets.

Omne cum Proteus pecus egit altos visere montes. Horace Od. I. 2.

Tradam protervis in mare Creticum portare ventis. Ib. I. 26.

in some cases where the noun whose place it takes would have been in the nominative or accusative. Its uses are:—

(1.) After verbs, &c., governing a genitive;
(2.) After many transitive verbs;
(3.) With impersonals, and the third singular of **être**;
(4.) After a comparative and **que**;
(5.) Elliptical.

196. **REPRESENTING A GENITIVE.** When verbs, nouns, adjectives, or adverbs, which ordinarily govern a genitive, are followed by an infinitive, it takes **de** before it. The following are examples:—

(1.) After nouns, answering more or less to an objective genitive.

La tâche *ingrate* **de réprimer** *les complots.*

(2.) After adjectives, as **capable, digne, certain, fier, heureux, content, désolé, curieux, impatient,** mostly denoting the ground of a feeling or answering to an objective genitive, and after the adverbs **près, loin.**

Il est **certain de réussir.**
Je suis **désolé de** *vous* **avoir fait** *attendre.*
Il n'est pas **près de finir.** Acad.

(3.) After verbs denoting separation, as **empêcher, se passer,** or to give the ground of a feeling or an action with verbs like **rougir, enrager** (§ 123).

Aussi **se garda-t-***il bien* **de parler** *à personne* (took care not to.) Daudet.

Il faut **rougir de commettre** *les fautes et non* **de** *les* **avouer.** Voltaire.

Le ciel me **punit d'avoir** *trop écouté*
D'un oracle imposteur la fausse obscurité. Voltaire.

Il ne **se mêle** *de rien, sinon* **de manger** *et de boire.*

Obs. 1. Hence the number of compound prepositions **afin de, à force de, à moins de, faute de, au point de,** &c.

Obs. 2. Notice especially **à moins de,** which cannot be rendered literally in English.

A moins d'être *fou, il n'est pas possible de raisonner ainsi* (unless one is mad). Acad.

Obs. 3. This use of the infinitive with **de** is carried further than that of the genitive of a noun, being admissible wherever anything like a causal sense can be traced.

Tu fais mal de me parler *ainsi.* G. Sand.

*J'*ai tort de *m'* occuper *tant des petits nuages.* Ibid.

Que tu es gentille de venir *me voir.* Scribe.

Compare the free use of **en** in Molière, &c., *because of it* (§ 142).

197. **CERTAIN TRANSITIVE VERBS** have an infinitive with **de** as their direct object. Such are

(1.) Verbs which have also a dative of the person, as **permettre, dire**[1] (command), **commander, défendre, conseiller, reprocher, pardonner.**

Mon médecin m'a défendu de m'exposer *au vent du matin.* Souvestre.

On reprochait à Racine d'avoir mis *les principes du jansénisme dans le rôle de Phèdre.* Voltaire.

(2.) Verbs of which the infinitive is the only object, as **achever, craindre, choisir, entreprendre, essayer, mériter, refuser.**

*J'*évite d'être *long et je deviens obscur.* Boileau.

Cet homme entreprend de changer *la face de l'Univers.*

On craint de se montrer *sous sa propre figure.* Boileau.

(3.) A few verbs of *commanding*, &c., as **prier, conjurer,** which also take an accusative of the person.

Le conducteur appelait les voyageurs en les pressant de remonter. Souvestre.

198. **AFTER IMPERSONAL VERBS.** Most impersonals, except those mentioned in § 189, take an infinitive with **de**, which is really their subject; so also do **c'est, il**

---

[1] Notice *il dit l'avoir fait*, he says he has done it; *il me dit de le faire*, he tells me to do it.

est, followed by a noun, adjective, adverb, or adverbial expression.

Il *me* restait d'être oublié *de vous.* Racine.
Il s'agissait de rendre *la liberté à sa patrie.*
C'est de la vanité *à Villars* d'avoir fait *cette proposition.* Ste-Beuve.
Il est doux de *revoir les murs de la patrie.* Corneille.

Obs. 1. The third singular of être, in fact, in all cases where its nominative is not an infinitive or ce representing a previous infinitive (§ 188), takes an infinitive with de.

Le premier plan de Villars était de se porter *entre Passau et Linz.* Ste-Beuve.
Il n'avait plus qu'une chose à faire; c'était de se résigner, et d'observer *la Constitution.* Guizot.

Obs. 2. Sometimes que pleonastic is put before de.

Ce que c'est *pourtant* que d'être *jeune!* Daudet.
C'est beaucoup que de *savoir commander.*

Obs. 3. Similarly, after verbs of *thinking*, &c., with an adjective as appositive complement, an infinitive with de is used as their direct object.

Nous croyons inutile d'insister *sur ce point.*
Il n'a pas jugé à propos de s'y trouver. Molière.

199. **AFTER A COMPARATIVE**, *than to* is always rendered by que de, unless an infinitive with some other preposition precedes. The same applies to *as to* with autant.

Il vaut mieux *lire ses pièces* que de *les voir.* De Staël.
Autant *vaut mourir de faim* que d'être *pendu.* Dumas.
Une indemnité plus *propre* à alarmer *l'Autriche* qu'à *la* séduire. Lanfrey.

Obs. Since avant involves an idea of comparison, avant que de is sometimes used rather than avant de.

200. **HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.** Like the *Latin historical infinitive*, the French infinitive with de is sometimes used in lively narrative instead of the indicative, generally after et.

Ainsi dit le renard, et flatteurs d'applaudir. La Fontaine.

201. *POUR* **WITH INFINITIVE.** **Pour** is used with the infinitive whenever a purpose is to be clearly expressed; whenever, in fact, we should use *in order to*, in English.

Il a jeté de l'eau sur la pierre **pour** *la laver.* Le Sage.

Especially after **trop, assez**[1]—

Il est **trop franc pour** *vous tromper.* Acad.
Il est **assez** *riche* **pour** *acheter ce domaine.*

Obs. Besides the meaning *in order to*, **pour** with the infinitive is used idiomatically—(1.) to mean **because of, for,** with the past infinitive :—

Il a été chassé **pour avoir** *trop* **parlé.** Acad.

(2.) Also chiefly with the past infinitive, in sentences like :—

Pour avoir étudié *si longtemps, il est bien ignorant.* Acad.
Considering that he has studied, for all his study.

(3.) With **passer,** *for, as.*

Il **passe pour être** *savant.*

202. **THE INFINITIVE WITH** *À* corresponds to the dative of a noun and is specially used to answer the question *to do what?* but with a less marked notion of purpose than **pour.** It is used :—

(1.) With verbs that govern the dative of the remoter object, and with intransitive verbs and adjectives that govern the dative.

(2.) As a dative of the instrument after verbs of *knowing*, &c.

(3.) As the equivalent of the Latin participle in *dus.*

(4.) To form compound nouns.

203. **AFTER VERBS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.** Verbs taking a dative (not of the remoter object) or **à** with a noun, generally take an infinitive with **à,** often answering the question *to do what?* Such verbs chiefly denote *aim or tendency, result, exhortation, habituation, interest.*

---

[1] **De, que de,** are also found in less modern authors after **assez.**—**Assez** *hardi* **de proposer** *la guerre.* Fénelon.

(1.) Transitive verbs with an accusative of the person, not included in § 197, and reflexive verbs.

L'art frivole d'imiter les fleurs **l'avait conduite à examiner** *ses modèles.* G. Sand.

Elle **s'était habituée à vivre** *au dehors de tout ce qui l'entourait.* G. Sand.

Ils **m'exhortèrent à prier** *Dieu pour mon oncle.* Le Sage.

L'intérêt les pourrait **engager** *à vous venger.* Voltaire.

Elle **se mit à** *lui adresser des remerciements.* G. Sand.

(2.) Transitive verbs like **commencer, continuer, chercher,** after which the infinitive with **à** represents the direct object. See §§ 205, 205A.

(3.) Intransitive verbs denoting *tendency* and the like :—

Toutes choses **concourent à** *me rendre heureux.*

(4.) With many verbs like **s'occuper, consister, réussir, gagner,** the infinitive with **à** denotes the object of interest, &c.

Il s'amuse **à chasser** ; *il s'occupe* **à lire.**

Tu as trop de plaisir **à voir passer** *le cortège.*

Il **s'est gâté la vue à lire** *de vieux manuscrits.*

In order to could not in the above examples be substituted for *to* without alteration of meaning.

Obs. 1. Notice the use of the infinitive with **à** after **être,** in reply to the question **où ?**

Où *en* **est** *-on sur Voltaire ?* **à combattre** *encore,* **à se contredire.** Ste-Beuve.

Obs. 2. After **avoir,** an infinitive with **à** is used as in English, **ayant à parler** *de lui,* having to speak of him.

Obs. 3. An English gerund with *in* or *with* is often rendered by an infinitive with **à.** See examples (4) above.

Obs. 4. Nouns denoting *tendency, aim, &c.,* also take **à.**

Il y a en France **une tendance** *invétérée* **à exploiter** *les citoyens au profit de la société.* Lanfrey.

La persévérance à prier, *par laquelle nous obtenons* **la persévérance à** *bien* **faire.** La Rochefoucauld.

Obs. 5. The 17th century usage often allowed **de** with verbs of this class.

Je **consens d'oublier** *le passé.* Racine.
*Vous m'*engagez **d'entrer** *dans cet eclaircissement.* Pascal.

204. **WITH CERTAIN ADJECTIVES,** *DIFFICILE A* or *DE.* The infinitive with **à** likewise accompanies certain adjectives,[1] mostly akin in meaning to the verbs of § 203, used as appositive complements.

Je suis **prêt à reconnaître** *que j'ai eu tort.* Souvestre.
Ce problème est **difficile à** *résoudre.*
J'ai trouvé ce problème **difficile à** *résoudre.*

Obs. But if **être** be used *impersonally*, we must have **de** (§198).
Il **est difficile de** *résoudre ce problème.*

205. **VERBS OF TEACHING AND LEARNING, enseigner, montrer, apprendre, chercher,** and sometimes **commencer,** take an infinitive with **à,** equivalent to the accusative of a noun.

*J'*apprends **à lire,** or *j'apprends la lecture.*
Le curé me **montre** *le catéchisme et* **à lire.** Mérimée.

205*a*. *DE* **OR** *A* **WITH SAME VERB.**

Oublier à means *to forget how to;* **oublier de,** *to omit through forgetfulness, to forget to;* **demander** takes **à** when the infinitive is its only object, **de** when there is another object as well—

Je **demande à** *vous* **parler.**
Demandons-lui *de nous* **rendre** *justice.*

With **commencer, essayer, tâcher, continuer, s'efforcer, s'occuper, s'empresser, souffrir,** &c., **de** or **à** may be used; **à** gives more the idea of a purpose. See Appendix.

206. **WITH VERBS OF JUDGING, RECOGNIZING,** &c., an infinitive with **à** may stand as the dative of a noun

[1] Especially *bon, beau, facile, aisé, difficile, prêt, disposé, prompt, lent, adroit, habile, propre, enclin, fondé* (entitled), *utile, impossible, curieux* (odd), *triste, le premier, le dernier,* &c. Notice *sauf à,* as **sauf à recommencer,** reserving the right to begin again.

does (cf. § 150). But the verb of *judging*, &c., must often be mentally supplied.

A le voir, *on* **reconnaît** *le philosophe.*

A vous entendre, *on croirait que vous avez été roi malgré vous,* to hear you talk.

So **à vrai dire,** *to tell the truth* (parenthetically); **à tout prendre,** *on the whole;* **à partir de ce moment; à n'en pas douter,** *without a doubt.*

207. **EQUIVALENT TO THE PARTICIPLE IN *DUS*.** After the verb *être* the active infinitive with **à** is used where, in English, we employ the passive infinitive, and where the participle in *dus* would stand in Latin.

Un trône, quel qu'il soit, **n'est** *pas* **à dédaigner** (to be despised). Crébillon.

Ce thème **est à refaire** (is to be done again).

So after verbs of nearly similar signification.

Il **restait à sauver** 4,000 *habitants* (there remained to be saved, *not* it remained to save, which would be *il restait de*),

and in expressions like **emplacement à vendre,** *building land for sale;* **appartement à louer,** *rooms to be let.*

The explanation of these phrases is that the infinitive with **à** denotes that for which anything is fit or destined, so that the first example, for instance, might be translated :—*A throne is not destined for disdaining.*

208. **TO FORM COMPOUND NOUNS,** &c. The infinitive with **à** is also used to qualify nouns, as *to* in English, and especially to form compound nouns, as **salle à manger, chambre à coucher,** and with adjectives to form what is practically an adverb qualifying them.

Napoléon n'était pas **homme à perdre** *le fruit de ce premier succès.* Thiers.

C'est un beau spectacle et **à ravir** *la pensée.*
Que l'Europe ainsi faite et comme il l'a laissée. V. Hugo.

C'étaient des recommandations **à n'en plus finir** (endless). Daudet.

So, too, occasionally with verbs.

Ils se ressemblent à s'y méprendre.

Je suis coiffée à faire *horreur* (my hair is a perfect fright).

Notice il était le premier à la remarquer.

209. *PAR* **WITH INFINITIVE.** Par is used with the infinitive only after commencer, continuer, and finir, where we put the gerund in English.

Il commença par *nous injurier.*

For the translation of *by* with the gerund in other cases, see § 213.

209*a*. *APRÈS, ENTRE* **WITH INFINITIVE.** Après is only used with the past infinitive, entre only as in example.

Après avoir conquis *la Perse, ils se répandirent d'Orient en Occident sur les terres de l'Empire.*

Nul choix ne reste entre vaincre *et* mourir. D. Stern.

210. **THE SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE** governed by pour, sans, après, par, and compound prepositions must be the same as that of the sentence of which they form part Thus *I went away without noticing it* :—

Je m'en suis allé sans *m'en* apercevoir,

because the person who goes away and the person who notices are the same ; but *I went away without* his *noticing it*, can only be turned by sans que :—

Je m'en suis allé sans qu'il *s'en* aperçût.

This rule is not observed in Molière, &c.

Allons! rends-le moi sans *te* fouiller (without my searching you).

Que l'on cherche partout mes tablettes perdues
Et que, sans les ouvrir, *elles me soient rendues.*

elles not being the subject of ouvrir.

An exception must be made in favour of impersonals like il faut (see example, § 196). For the purposes of this rule, the subject of the infinitive they govern is considered the subject of the sentence.

211. **INFINITIVE MUCH USED IN FRENCH.** It should be added that a frequent use of the infinitive is a characteristic of French writing. By means of expressions

like **faute de, à moins de, afin de, au point de**, &c., the French are able to dispense with the dependent sentences, which often impart a certain heaviness to English style. See §§ 259, 261, 265, 271, 279, 285.

Notice especially the use of the infinitive to represent English abstract nouns. Thus "the arts of selection and condensation" becomes *l'art de* **choisir** *et de* **condenser**; "his great object was the acquisition of these provinces," . . . *de* **s'emparer** *de ces provinces;* "he was meditating a change in politics," *il se préparait* **à changer** *de politique;* "he had seen the dissolution of the Long Parliament," *il avait vu* **dissoudre** *le long parlement.*[1] German, on the other hand, is particularly rich in abstract nouns, especially in verbal nouns in **ung**.

XVII.—Present Particíple and Gerund.

212. **PARTICIPLE OR GERUND.** The form in **ant** represents, as our form in *ing*, two distinct parts of the verb: (1) A present participle, used as an *adjective*, agreeing with the noun to which it refers. (2) A gerund and unchanged. **(App. VI.)**

Toutes ces feuilles **gémissantes**, *mouillées pas des larmes de famille,* **traînant** *au hasard sous ses bottes.*

De Vigny (apropos of petitions to Napoleon).

The general principle is that it is an adjective when it denotes a continued state or a habit, a gerund when it denotes an action.

212*a*. **GERUND.** The *gerund* must be used :—

(1.) When it actually governs an accusative.

J'aime à voir des **enfants caressant leur mère.**

(2.) When it comes from a reflexive verb.

Des **milliers** *d'ennemis* **se pressant** *sous nos portes Fondent sur nos remparts.* Delille.

(3.) When it forms an accusative absolute, § 118.

Les massacres inutiles qu'on s'obstinait à faire, **la France offrant** *tout pour la paix.* Michelet.

[1] From Meissner's excellent *Introduction to French Composition.*

(4.) When it forms a secondary predicate, *i.e.*, when a clause followed by *and* might be substituted for it.

Les grands pins, gémissant *sous les coups des haches, tombent en roulant du haut des montagnes.* Fénelon.

(5.) When ne pas, ne . . que, &c., qualifies it.

Je méprise ces insectes et ces folliculaires (penny-a-liners) ne mordant que *pour vivre.* Voltaire.

(6.) When it is followed by an adverb or adverbial expression.

Les feuilles, jaunissant chaque jour, *commençaient à se détacher des arbres.* Bescherelle.

Cette peuplade sortait de villes florissant naguère *par le commerce.*

(7.) When the preposition en precedes.

On hasarde de perdre en voulant *trop gagner.* La Fontaine.

212*b*. **PARTICIPLE.** The *participle* (*declinable*) must be used :—

(1.) When it forms the appositive complement after être, devenir, &c., or verbs of *naming, thinking,* &c.

Sa figure était rayonnante *de joie.* Delavigne.

Je vous trouve aujourd'hui bien raisonnante. Molière.

Les eaux dites dormantes.

(2.) When a simple adverb, as bien, mal, or even a longer adverbial expression stands *before* it.

Ces deux églises, également gémissantes, *sont irréconciliables.* Voltaire.

Cette peuplade sortait de villes, naguère florissantes *par le commerce.*

Ta mère, ombre triste autour de nous errante. V. Hugo.

Je pardonne

Aux condamnés à mort dans ce bourg gémissants. V. Hugo.

(3.) When it is simply an epithet easily replaced by an ordinary adjective.

Des chanoines vermeils et brillants *de santé.* Boileau.

Both occur in the following :—

À peine quelques pages rares et presque ignorées d'un petit paysan disent l'horreur profonde des pauvres troupeaux d'hommes poursuivis par la faim, la laissant *au village*

et la trouvant *partout*, errants *sur la plaine déserte, ivres, éblouis de l'hiver, frappés, mais résignés,* s'asseyant *à terre pour mourir.* Michelet.

Obs. Ayant,[1] étant, soi-disant, are never inflected.

213. **GERUND WITH *EN*.** The French gerund often depends on the preposition **en**, and then represents the English gerund with *in*.[2] In this construction it may be used:—

(1.) Simply to denote a contemporaneous action, much as the simple gerund does.

Il périt en voyant, *de ses derniers regards, Brûler son Ilion, écrouler ses remparts.* Delille.

Compared with—

Le chien voyant *en l'eau sa proie représentée, La quitta pour l'image, et pensa se noyer* (was all but drowned). La Fontaine.

(2.) In a concessive sense (= *although*), *while*, especially after **tout**.

Appelé à faire la guerre en désirant *la paix.*

Tout en faisant *d'énergiques efforts pour se défendre, Louis XIV ne s'arrêta pas dans la voie des concessions.*

(3.) To represent the English gerund with *by*, except after **commencer**, **finir**, **continuer** (§ 209), with which **par** with an infinitive is used.

On hasarde de perdre en voulant *trop gagner.* La Fontaine.

(4.) With the verb **aller**.

Leur réputation à tous deux est allée en grandissant. Ste-Beuve.

in which case, however, **en** may be omitted.

La voix allait roulant *dans le silence des déserts.* Chateaubriand.

214. **THE SUBJECT OF THE GERUND** with **en** must be the same as that of the verb of the sentence.

Thus the following passage of Fénelon should not be imitated—

[1] But *des ayants-cause*, *des ayants-droit* in legal phraseology.

[2] In Italian the gerund in *do*.

En parlant ainsi, de profonds soupirs interrompaient toutes mes paroles.

because the subject of **interrompaient** is **soupirs**, that of **parlant**, *je* understood.

Again, in translating *I met her going to church*, we must use **allant** alone, not *en allant*, which would mean *while I was going.*

We find, however, where no mistake could be the result—

Un peu de timidité ne messied pas **en abordant** *les maîtres qu'on admire.* Ste-Beuve.

215. **AFTER VERBS OF** *KNOWING*, &c. The present participle is used referring to the accusative, after verbs of *knowing*, *believing*, &c.

L'armée de Masséna, qu'il **savait périssant** *de faim.* Lanfrey.

215*a*. **IDIOMS WITH PARTICIPLE.**[1] Notice **des airs entendus**, *knowing looks;* **des couleurs voyantes**, *showy colours;* **séance tenante**, *before the sitting ends;* **à portes fermantes**, *at the closing of the gates;* **après l'arrêt prononcé**,[2] *after sentence had been passed.*

216. **ADJECTIVES FORMED FROM PRESENT PARTICIPLES.** There are a certain number of adjectives which have been formed from present participles, but are now distinguished from them by spelling. Such are:—

Participle.	Adjectives or Nouns.	Participle.	Adjectives or Nouns.
adhérant	*adhérent.*	*intriguant*	*intrigant.*
affluant	*affluent.*	*négligeant*	*négligent.*
coïncidant	*coïncident.*	*pouvant*	*puissant.*
différant	*différent.*	*précédant*	*précédent.*
équivalant	*équivalent.*	*résidant*	*résident.*
excellant	*excellent.*	*présidant*	*président.*
expédiant	*expédient.*	*sachant*	*savant.*
extravaguant	*extravagant.*	*suffoquant*	*suffocant.*
fabriquant	*fabricant.*	*valant*	*vaillant.*
fatiguant	*fatigant.*	*vaquant*	*vacant.*

[1] For a full discussion see Tobler's Beiträge, I.-3.

[2] Also in metropolitan carriages: 12 *places* **assises**, 20 *debout.*

XVIII.—Past Participle.

217. **DIFFERENT WAYS OF USING THE PAST PARTICIPLE.** The past participle may be used in several ways :—

(1.) As an adjective.

(2.) With the auxiliary être, to form the tenses of the passive voice.

(3.) With the auxiliary être, to form the tenses of a neuter verb.

(4.) With the auxiliary avoir, to form the tenses of a neuter verb.

(5.) With the auxiliary avoir, to form the tenses of a transitive verb.

(6.) With the auxiliary être, to form the tenses of a reflexive or pronominal verb.

(7.) To form the tenses of an impersonal verb.

218. **ADJECTIVAL USE, PASSIVE,** &c. In the first three cases the participle is always declined, viz.:—

(1.) When an adjective forming either—an epithet—

Une lettre *bien* écrite, *une* lettre écrite *par mon père.*

or the complement after être, rester, devenir, &c.—

Ainsi, sans votre appui, les élèves *de Flore*
Tomberaient abattus *à leur première aurore.* Castel.

Elle *resta* interdite.

or an apposition to the object of a verb—

Tenez toujours divisés les méchants. La Fontaine.

or an accusative absolute—

La constitution *étant* achevée, *aucune espérance ne restait au roi.*

Ces dispositions faites, *l'armée campa.*

(2.) When it forms the tenses of a passive verb—

Les deux **camps** *sont* **rangés** *autour de nos murailles.*
La **ville** *avait été* **prise.**

(3.) When it forms the tenses of a neuter verb conjugated with **être**, or when coming from such a verb it stands alone—

Du ciel sur nos autels la **flamme** *est* **descendue.**
Didon a fondé **la belle ville** *de Carthage,* **devenue** *si célèbre dans la suite* (which afterwards became).

Obs. **This rule applies also to the infinitive :—**

J'excuse votre erreur, et pour être **approuvés,**
De semblables **projets** *veulent être* **achevés.** Racine.

219. **IDIOMATIC USE OF** *EXCEPTÉ*, &c. The participles **excepté**, *except*; **y compris**, *including*; **vu, attendu**, seeing; **supposé**, *granted, supposing*; **passé**, *after*; **ouï**, *after hearing*, stand *before* the noun to which they refer, and are not then considered as adjectives:—

Il a vingt mille francs de revenu, **y compris** *sa maison.*
Passé *cette époque, il ne sera plus temps.*

Passé *Valence, le peuple du Midi ne connaît guère que ce français-là.* Daudet.

Excepté, y compris, passés may also be used in much the same sense as adjectives after the noun, as *une femme* **exceptée**, *les aumônes* **y comprises** (or without **y**).

220. **NEUTER VERBS WITH** *AVOIR* **AND IMPERSONALS.** The past participle of such neuter verbs as are conjugated with **avoir**, and of impersonal verbs, is never changed:—

Où la guêpe a **passé**, *le moucheron demeure.* La Fontaine.
*Les chaleurs excessives qu'***il a fait.** Condillac.
Il est arrivé *de grands malheurs.* (§ 10).
Quelle fâcheuse aventure vous **est-il arrivé** ?
*La grande inondation qu'***il y a eu.**

221. **TRANSITIVE VERBS.** The past participle, forming part of a compound tense of a *transitive* verb, agrees with the accusative governed by it, provided that accusative *pre-*

cede the auxiliary. The accusative preceding the auxiliary may be—

(1.) A conjunctive personal pronoun ;

Cette ville n'est pas libre, l'ennemi **l'a prise.**

(2.) A relative pronoun ;

Les lettres **que** *mon frère a* **écrites.**

(3.) A noun qualified by an interrogative adjective.

Quelle faute *ai-je* **commise ?**

Je ne sais pas **quelle faute** *j'ai commise.*

The reason of this usage is, that the compound tense **il les a donnés** is the translation of *habet illos donatos*, and means *he possesses them, being given*. In old French, agreement with the object was universal ; as, *elle avait* **faite sa journée**, *je ai* **vues vos lettres**, but it was afterwards limited to the cases in which the concord was forced upon the writer by the fact of the object preceding.

Obs. **Vous**, referring to one woman, requires a singular participle (synesis, construction according to sense, § 29), as,

A mériter l'état où je **vous** *aurai* **mise.** Molière.

222. **PRONOUN IN DATIVE.** The participle cannot agree with a pronoun in the dative case.

Madame, on **vous** *a* **offert** *de grands avantages.*

223. **PRONOUN DENOTING EXTENT.** The participle cannot agree with an accusative which, instead of being governed by it, answers the question *how long?* This is the case after verbs like **dormir, vivre, marcher,** &c.

Les jours **que** *j'ai* **vécu** *sans vous avoir servie.* Corneille.

Obs. 1. The accusative with **valoir, coûter, peser,** may answer the question *how much?* and in that case does not affect the participle. **Coûter** is generally treated, in opposition to the Academy, as a transitive verb. **Valoir**, meaning to *gain, entail upon*, is always so treated.

La somme **qu'a valu** *il y a dix ans ce domaine.* Littré.

Les embarras **que** *lui* **avait valus** *cette double parenté.*
V. Hugo.

Il mérite surtout les pleurs **qu'***il m'a* **coûtés.**

Obs. 2. Of course *peser*, meaning *to ascertain the weight of*, is an ordinary transitive verb. Thus, *les malles* qu'*on a pesées*, but *les 25 kilos* que *cette malle* a pesé.

224. **OBJECT A SENTENCE.** When the real object of the participle is not a noun or pronoun, but a substantival sentence or an infinitive, the pronoun preceding the auxiliary is governed not by the participle, but by the verb of the substantival sentence

Quelles sont les raisons qu'il a dit qu'il fallait alléguer ?

Les critiques qu'on a trouvé bon de diriger *contre mes écrits.* B. Constant.

225. *L'* **AS OBJECT. L'**, when it represents an adjective or sentence, always stands for le, and is therefore masculine, or rather neuter—

Elle est plus jeune que je ne l'*avais* cru.

226. *COMBIEN DE.* If an adverb of quantity governing a genitive precede the verb, the participle agrees with the genitive by *synesis*, *i.e.*, construction according to sense

Je sais tout ce que j'ai commis,
Et combien de devoirs *en un jour j'ai* trahis.
Voltaire.

But le peu de, meaning *the insignificance of*, requires the participle in the singular. (See § 9.)

227. *EN* **AS OBJECT.** En, representing as it does a genitive, does not affect the participle. But when it depends on an adverb of quantity, and the adverb as well as en precedes the participle, the combination influences it as an accusative pronoun would under similar circumstances—

Autant d'ennemis il a attaqués, autant *il* en a vaincus,

where vaincus agrees with the plural sense of autant en.

Des pleurs, ma faiblesse en *a* tant répandus. Voltaire.

Combien en *a-t-on* vus, *je dis des plus huppés,*
A souffler dans leurs doigts, dans ma cour occupés ! Racine.

But, *Le Télémaque a fait quelques imitateurs, les Caractères de La Bruyère* en *ont* produit davantage.[1]

228. *LAISSER, VOIR*, &c., **WITH AN INFINITIVE.** The chief difficulty occurs when the participle of **laisser, ouïr, entendre, voir**, &c., is followed by an infinitive. It then becomes necessary to ask whether the governed pronoun is governed by the participle itself or by the infinitive. In the former case the participle agrees, in the latter it is unchanged **(App. VI.):—**

Les soldats que *j'ai* vus *ensevelir leur camarade ;*
Les soldats que *j'ai vu* ensevelir,

which are translated :—

The soldiers whom I have seen burying their comrade ;
The soldiers whom I have seen buried (*literally*, the burying whom . . . . I have seen).

Again compare *la dame* que *j'ai* entendue *chanter* with *la chanson* que *j'ai entendu* chanter.

In each case we must ask —*what have I seen, heard, allowed*, &c.? —Was it the soldier, the lady, the song, &c., or was it the action of burying, singing, &c.? If the answer be the action, which is neuter, the participle is, of course, unchanged ; if it be the lady, the soldier, &c., the participle agrees.

Obs. 1. Notice the difference between *les hommes que j'ai* vu rassembler (I saw collecting) and *que j'ai* vus rassemblés (I saw already collected).

Obs. 2. The rule applies not only to **laisser**, &c., but to verbs which take an infinitive with a preposition.

C'est une correction que *j'ai* oublié de faire.

If the infinitive depends on *avoir*, there are two points of view, and therefore two constructions possible—

La peine qu'*ils ont* eue *à vous quitter.* Louis XIV.
Les livres que *j'ai* eus *à lire*, the books given me to read.

[1] This rule is not always strictly observed.—In *Vous critiquez nos pièces de théâtre avec l'avantage d'*en *avoir* faites (D'Alembert), the participle agrees with the plural sense implied by *en*.

Les livres que *j'ai* eu *à lire* (it was my duty to read).
Les obstacles que *j'ai eu à* vaincre.

Obs. 3. Faire with an intransitive infinitive does *not* follow the same rule as laisser, but is always invariable, &c. (§ 115.)

Je les *ai* fait sortir (not *faits*).

229. **POUVOIR, &c.** The participles of pouvoir, devoir, vouloir, &c., cannot govern an accusative and therefore cannot change. The infinitive is often omitted after *dû, pu, voulu*. The rule is then the same as if it were present—

Nous lui avons donné tous les secours que nous avons pu.

230. **PRONOMINAL VERBS.** The case of pronominal verbs, however used, is identically the same as that of transitive verbs. The participle agrees with the accusative if that accusative precede the auxiliary. Thus where the reflexive pronoun is the accusative :—

Elles se *sont* plaintes *de sa conduite.*
Ils se *sont* blessés *à la main.*
Nous ne nous sommes *plus* revus.

If the reflexive pronoun be in the dative, the participle does not agree with it :—

Ils se sont blessé *la main.*
Les poètes épiques se sont plu *à décrire les batailles.*
L'homme n'a guère de maux que ceux qu'*il s'est* donnés.
Elles se sont donné *la main* (to each other).

Obs. With laisser, &c., used reflexively, the same rules apply as in § 228.

Que de jeunes gens se sont laissé égarer *par les mauvais conseils !* (to be misled—*se* governed by *égarer*).

230*a*. **PARTICIPLE FIRST.** In French, sentences begin with a participle more frequently than in English :—

Gênes, antique République, constituée par Doria, avait seule conservé une véritable énergie. Placée *entre les deux armées belligérantes depuis quatre ans, elle avait su maintenir sa neutralité.* Thiers.

XIX — Subordinate Sentences and the Use of the Subjunctive.

231. **THEORY OF THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.** A principal sentence consists of *subject* and *predicate;* the subject is a noun or pronoun ; the predicate is either a verb, a verb governing one or more nouns or pronouns, called *objects*, or a part of the verb *to be* or some similar verb, accompanied by an *appositive complement.* Further, the verb may be qualified by *adverbs*, or by combinations of nouns and prepositions equivalent to adverbs. The subject, the object, or any other noun in the sentence, may be qualified by an *adjective.*

Now the *subject*, or *one of the objects*, or a noun otherwise occurring in the sentence, may be replaced by a sentence ; so also may the *adjective* qualifying any noun in the sentence, or the *adverb* or adverbial expressions qualifying the verb. The result is what is called *a complex sentence*, consisting of a principal sentence with one or more so-called *subordinate* sentences attached to it or dependent upon it. The subordinate sentences are classified, according to the part of speech which they replace, into *substantival adjectival*, and *adverbial* sentences.

232. **MEANING OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.** The cases in which the subjunctive is used are very numerous but they may all be reduced to one general principle, namely, that whenever we wish, in a dependent clause, to speak of a statement, not as an actual fact, but as a conception present to our minds which may be true or not, we use the subjunctive. To employ technical words, that which is expressed by the subjunctive is *subjective;* that which is expressed by the indicative, *objective.*

233. **CLASSIFICATION OF SUBSTANTIVAL SENTENCES.** In writing or speaking, we must necessarily use one of three forms of speech; we make a statement, we ask a question, or we express a desire in the form of a command, petition, or wish. Any one of these may, *like a noun*, occur in a sentence as the *object* of a verb of believing, saying, asking, &c., or as the subject of a verb, like *is*, *seems*, &c.; or, lastly, it may depend on various prepositions. Thus we have three forms of substantival sentences :—

(1) Oblique Enunciation.
(2) Oblique Interrogation.
(3) Oblique Petition.

Each of which may occur :—

(α) as object;
(β) as subject;
(γ) as apposition;
(δ) as appositive complement.

To illustrate this classification, let us take a simple sentence having for its theme "the triumph of good over evil."

There are three forms of such a simple sentence :—

Enunciation : *Good will triumph over evil.*
Interrogation : *Will good triumph over evil?*
Petition : *Let (or may) good triumph over evil.*

The next step is to introduce one or other of these forms into a sentence in the place of a noun. We shall begin with the first form—Enunciation.

234. **OBLIQUE ENUNCIATION.** (α) In the sentence—

I anticipate the triumph of good over evil,

write for the noun "the triumph," &c., the sentence "that good will triumph over evil," and we have—

I anticipate that good will triumph over evil,

where "that good," &c., is therefore the *object* of *I anticipate.*

(β) Again, in the sentence—

The triumph of good over evil is certain,

perform the same operation, and we have—

That good will triumph over evil is certain,

an illustration of the Oblique Enunciation as *subject.*

(γ) A far commoner way of turning the last phrase, both in English and French, is—

It is certain that good will triumph over evil,

where the sentence "that good," &c., is in *apposition* to the grammatical subject *it*. Strictly speaking, the sentence represents—

It (the triumph of good over evil) is certain.

In French, the noun sentence is sometimes in apposition to ce after a preposition. Thus—

He complains of the triumph of good over evil

is often rendered—

Il se plaint de ce que le bien a triomphé du mal.

(δ) Lastly, the Oblique Enunciation may form the *appositive complement*, as in—

The most reasonable of all creeds is that good will triumph over evil,

compared with—

The most reasonable of all creeds is the certain triumph of good over evil.

235. **OBLIQUE INTERROGATION.** It will now be easy to see how the noun sentence plays the part of a noun in the following instances of Oblique Interrogation:—

I wish to know whether good will triumph over evil.
Whether good will triumph over evil is uncertain.
It has often been asked whether good will triumph over evil.
The gravest of all questions is whether good will triumph over evil.

Obs. Under this head, Oblique Interrogation, there is little or no difference between French and English. The treatment of the other two heads is one of the most delicate points of French Grammar.

236. **OBLIQUE PETITION.** And in Oblique Petition—

All men wish that good may triumph over evil.

That good may triumph over evil is the earnest desire of all good men.

It is feared by bad men that good will triumph over evil (*let good not triumph . . .*).

The anxiety of the wicked is lest good should triumph over evil (*let good not triumph . . .*).

Notice especially the last two sentences. In French, verbs of *fearing* are treated logically, as expressing a wish that the thing feared may not happen.

237. **CLASSIFICATION OF ADVERBIAL SENTENCES.** Adverbial sentences are divided into several classes, according to the kind of adverb which they replace in a sentence. The classes are as follows :—

(1.) Consecutive sentences, beginning with *so that*, or with *that* preceded by some such word as *such*, *so*.

(2.) Final sentences, denoting a purpose, and introduced by *in order that*, or by *that*, meaning *in order that*.

(3.) Sentences, beginning with *when*, *until*, *where*, &c., and serving instead of an adverb of time or place.

(4.) Causal sentences, answering the question *why?*

(5.) Comparative sentences, beginning with *than*, or answering the question *how?*

(6.) Conditional sentences, beginning with *if*, or an equivalent word.

(7.) Concessive sentences, beginning with *though*.

The following are instances, the sentences in italics being subordinate :—

(I.) He practises *so often that he will be in the eleven*

(II.) ,, ,, *in order that he may be in the eleven*

(III.) ,, ,, *when he ought to be at work.*

,, ,, *wherever he can find a net.*

(IV.) ,, ,, *because he cannot help it.*

(V.) ,, ,, more *than he ought to practise*, as much *as he likes.*

(VI.) He will practise, *if he has time.*

(VII.) ,, ,, ,, *even though it rains.*

XX.—Substantival Sentences.

238. **FORMS OF OBLIQUE ENUNCIATION.** This is one of the points in which French differs most widely from classical Latin. The Latin accusative and infinitive construction only remains in one case of not very frequent occurrence. The normal way of introducing an oblique statement is by que, corresponding to the English *that*. But French is more logical than English, and draws a distinction between those oblique statements which are, in the author's view, facts, and those which he merely wishes to pass through his readers' minds. We have, then, four methods of expressing an oblique statement :—

I. **Que** with the indicative (or conditional).

II. **Que** with the subjunctive (§§ 227, 231).

III. When the subject of the dependent clause is the same as that of the principal, an infinitive is used (§§ 193, 231).

Il croyait *alors* devoir *lui montrer de grands ménagements* (that he ought to show him . . . .).

IV. The accusative and infinitive construction is occasionally used. § 191.

Sans doute un Français peut se risquer dans les grands sujets que *La Bruyère* disait *nous* être *interdits.*

239. **INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE WITH VERBS OF DECLARING**, &c. Verbs of *declaring*, *believing*, *knowing*, and expressions like **il est vrai**, **certain**, &c, are, when used *affirmatively*, followed by **que** with an indicative.

When used *negatively*, *interrogatively*, or *hypothetically*, (*i.e.*, with *if*) they are followed by que with a subjunctive, provided the speaker does not vouch for the truth of the oblique statement.

But if the oblique statement simply states a fact, or what the speaker believes to be a fact, then such verbs take **que**

with an indicative, even when used negatively, interrogatively, or hypothetically.

(1.) Affirmatively—

Burke dit *quelque part* que *la liberté de sa patrie* a *un arbre généalogique et des armoiries.* Ch. de Rémusat.

La vérité est qu'*aucun système d'éducation n'*est *en soi préférable à un autre système.* Chateaubriand.

*Mais en attendant, j'*espère que *vous* voudrez *bien m'écrire.*

(2.) Negatively—

Subjunctive :

On ne m'*a* pas dit que *l'affaire se* soit *passée ainsi.* Molière.

Il est bien éloigné de croire (i.e., ne croit pas) que *cela* soit *vrai.*

Il marcha sur l'Iller, ne pensant pas que *l'ennemi* voulût *tenir ferme avant Ulm* (i.e., before reaching Ulm). Lanfrey.

Here the historian, as well as the general of whom he is speaking, is ignorant of any intention on the part of the enemy to make a stand before reaching Ulm.

Indicative :

Les alliés ne savaient pas qu'*un long abus de nos forces* en avait *presque tari les sources.* Thiers.

M. Thiers means to say that the exhaustion of France was a fact, but a fact of which the allies were not aware.[1]

(3.) Interrogatively—

Subjunctive :

Est-il vrai que *vous* soyez *si habile ?*

---

[1] Notice—

La pensée pourtant n'était pas que *le droit* périt *en un jour devant le fait.* Ste-Beuve.

This is more difficult to explain. Probably the true state of the case is that the writer does not take up any mental attitude toward the statement *le droit périt*, &c., and treats it as a mere quotation.

Croyez-vous que *je* sois *capable de vous aider?* (I don't know, what do you think about it?)

Eh! qui vous a dit, *reprit Robespierre*, qu'*on* ait *fait périr un innocent?* Mignet.

Quelle apparence y a-t-il qu'*il* soit *ici sous une forme de paysan?* Est-il *même* croyable qu'il vive *encore?* Le Sage.[1]

Indicative:

Croyez-vous que *je* suis *capable de vous aider?* (I can help you, do you think so too?)

(4.) Hypothetically—

Subjunctive:

Faites part de cette lettre à M. de la Chapelle, si vous trouvez qu'*elle en* vaille *la peine.* Racine.

Ce serait faire injure à la constitution de l'Angleterre, que de supposer qu'*elle* obtienne *uniquement un respect de routine.* Ch. de Rémusat.

Here que de supposer is equivalent to *if one supposed*, and M. de Rémusat does not endorse the idea that the respect paid to the English constitution is a mere matter of routine.

Supposons qu'*un enfant* eût *à sa naissance la stature et la force d'un homme fait.* Rousseau.

Indicative:

Si vous trouvez que *j'*ai *fait un devoir, pardonnez à mon père* (and I know I have). Augier.

Obs. Il arrive que, il s'ensuit que, il est probable que, and similar expressions, are generally equivalent to verbs of

---

[1] To these we must add that the indicative is often found (1) when the question is a rhetorical one, as Doit-on conclure qu'*un homme* est *coupable parce qu'il est accusé* (Pascal); and (2) when *croyez-vous* means *you seem to think:* Croyez-vous *qu'il* suffit *d'être sorti de moi* (Corneille). See Hölder's Grammatik, to which we are indebted for several examples in this chapter.

thinking, declaring, &c. (*I find that, I infer that*), and are so treated.

Il arriva que je le rencontrai. Littré.

S'il arrivait qu'*on se* moquât *de moi, il n'y aurait pas grand mal.*

239*a*. **SUBSTITUTES FOR SUBJUNCTIVE FUTURE AND CONDITIONAL.** As there is no future or conditional subjunctive in French, other means must be adopted of rendering the English future and conditional in oblique enunciation after negatives, &c.

(1.) The present or imperfect subjunctive may be used according to circumstances. It is always used after verbs of fearing.

Je ne dis pas qu'*un jour je ne* suive *vos traces.* (That I shall not follow). Molière.

Pensez-vous qu'*elle* fût morte *pour être restée quatre heures de plus en diligence* (would have died)? Juliot.

C'était à désespérer qu'il atteignît *jamais à la douceur de l'évangile* (would attain). Ibid.

Or, dans cette journée que je suppose qu'on puisse aller passer au seizième siècle avec son auteur préféré, je doute que *Calvin* eût *beaucoup de chalands.* Ste-Beuve.

(2.) An auxiliary, devoir or aller, may be used :—

Crois-tu que *mes chagrins* doivent *s'évanouir*
A l'aspect d'un bonheur dont je ne puis jouir? Racine.

Croyez-vous *donc* qu'*il* aille *lui pardonner?*

240. *DOUTER, NIER,* &c. The verbs douter, ignorer, nier (and also disconvenir, dissimuler, contester, désespérer) used *affirmatively*, fall under the rule (§ 239) as is due to their negative character, *to doubt* in fact being the same as not to *believe.*

J'ignorais qu' *elle* fût *comédienne.* Le Sage.

Je doute que *le ris excessif* convienne *aux hommes qui sont mortels.* La Bruyère.

On ignora *longtemps à Paris* que *le Premier Consul* dût *prendre un commandement dans la nouvelle armée.* Lanfrey.

Obs. The same verbs used negatively, interrogatively, &c., mostly take a subjunctive ; sometimes, inasmuch as when used negatively, they may be equivalent to an affirmation, an indicative. This applies especially to **ne pas ignorer, il n'y a pas de doute, ne pas dissimuler.**

Doutes-tu qu'*il ne* veuille *implorer ma clémence ?*
Vous ne sauriez nier qu'*un homme* apprenne *bien des choses quand il voyage.* Fénelon.

Il n'y a pas de doute que *cela* tient *à ce que les germes ne peuvent résister . . .* Pasteur.

On ne saurait disconvenir que *le talent* perd *toujours un peu à ne pas avoir un très haut idéal en vue.*
Ste-Beuve.

Il ne pouvait ignorer qu'*il* était *le fils de David.*
La Bruyère.

241. **CONSTRUCTION AFTER VERBS, &c., DENOTING PROBABILITY OR POSSIBILITY.** **Il paraît, il me (te, &c.) semble** are followed by **que** with an indicative, being really equivalent to *I believe*, &c.

Il paraît que *vous* avez *toujours bon appétit.*

But **il semble, il est possible, il se peut, il est rare, on dirait**, &c., used affirmatively, generally take a subjunctive. All of them involve the idea that the speaker is not certain of what is stated.

Il se peut que *Tonine ne* fasse *pas votre affaire.*
G. Sand.

Il semble que *vous* ayez *peine à me reconnaître.*
Molière.

Et ainsi il est rare que *les géomètres* soient *fins.*
Pascal.

i.e., We do not generally find that geometricians, &c. (239 (2).

On dirait que *le livre des destins* ait été ouvert *à ce prophète.* Bossuet.

242. *C'EST QUE, CE N'EST PAS QUE*, strictly speaking, introduce substantival sentences, though we may often render them by *the reason is* (*not*). **C'est que** is

followed by the indicative, **ce n'est pas que** generally by the subjunctive.[1]

C'est qu'*aussi elle le* **comprend** *si bien, elle* **sait** *si bien l'admirer.* Ste-Beuve.

Ce n'est point qu'*il* **obéisse** *du tout à l'esprit oratoire.* Ste-Beuve.

Non que, non pas que, always take the subjunctive.

243. **CLAUSE IN APPOSITION TO** *DE CE QUE, A CE QUE.* **De ce que,** introducing an oblique enunciation, generally takes an indicative; and so does **à ce que,** unless the following clause is really an oblique petition.

On se plaint **de ce que** *les plus belles tragédies de Voltaire sont fondées sur des malentendus.* Ste-Beuve.

but, *Il était très mortifié* **de ce que** *cette scène se* **fût passée** *chez lui,*

where the subjunctive is found, as after a verb expressing emotion.

Cela tient **à ce que** *les germes ne* **peuvent** *résister.* Pasteur.

Villars croyait à son bonheur, et il **tenait à ce qu'***on y* **crût.** Ste-Beuve.

when **tenait à ce que** expresses a desire.

Il croyait que la sévère régularité des tragédies françaises **s'opposait à ce qu'***on* **pût** *traiter un grand nombre de sujets simples et touchants.* Mme De Staël.

244. **VERBS, &c., DENOTING STATES OF MIND.** The subjunctive with **que** is used after verbs and expressions denoting certain states of mind, such as *doubt, pleasure, displeasure, surprise, shame, indignation* :—

Je suis **ravi,** *monsieur,* **que** *votre fils* **ait** *besoin de moi.* Molière.

---

[1] On the same principle as in the familiar Latin example, *Pugiles in jactandis caestibus ingemiscunt, non quod doleant animove succumbant, sed quia profundendo voce omne corpus intenditur venitque plaga vehementior.*—Cicero.

C'est dommage (expressing regret) **que** *ce livre* **ait** *été condamné.*

Quel affront (expressing indignation) *à Dieu* **que** *ses saints* **fussent** *si peu écoutés!* Guizot.

Il est remarquable (expressing surprise) **que ce soit** *de la même époque que date la décadence de notre monarchie.*

Qu'importe (one doesn't grieve) **que** *Vénus et Cupidon* **aient** *perdu leurs autels.*

Obs. 1. The explanation of the subjunctives under this rule is really the same as that which applies to § 227. The statement of the dependent clause is represented not as an actual fact, but as a conception, which may be true or not, and it is at this conception that we are pleased, indignant, &c.

Obs. 2. **Concevoir, comprendre, il est naturel,** &c., often take a subjunctive with **que**, because there underlies them an idea that one might have been astonished, and is not.[1]

Nous **comprenons que** *l'auteur de l'Histoire du Consulat et de l'Empire* **écrive** *tout un demi-volume sur une des grandes batailles livrées par Napoléon, mais nous* **ne comprendrions pas que** *cette bataille* **fût mise** *en poème.* Vapereau.

Ce qui **explique qu'il eût obtenu** *la plus nombreuse clientèle des environs.* Souvestre.

Obs. 3. It will be observed that most verbs of this group take a genitive when they govern a noun. Consequently there are two other constructions admissible after them:—

(1.) **de ce que,** generally with an indicative.

Je suis **étonné de ce qu'***il* **lit** *si mal.*

(2.) When the subject of the dependent clause is the same as that of the principal, an infinitive with **de.**

La cour des pairs **était ennuyée d'avoir** *sur les bras une telle affaire. Les ministres* **regrettaient de** *l'***avoir** *entamée* (that they had begun it). Ch. de Rémusat.

---

[1] Bernhard Schmitz, p. 226.

245. **OBLIQUE INTERROGATION.** An indirect question is asked by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs, or by the word **si**, whether. The indicative or conditional is used, never the subjunctive.

Demandez-moi **pourquoi** *il s'*est *mis en colère.* Acad.

Je suais sang et eau pour voir **si** *du Japon*
Il **viendrait** *à bon port au fait de son chapon.* Racine.

Obs. 1. **Si,** *whether*, must not, as in English, depend upon a noun, or upon **est.** **De savoir** is generally inserted—

Dans la conversation chez la comtesse d'Albany, il agite cette **question, de savoir** *s'il y a un art de la guerre.*
Ste-Beuve.

So, in translating, "It may in the meantime be matter of serious consideration whether . . . . ." we must say :—*Un sujet de considération sérieuse,* **de savoir si** . . . . or **d'examiner si** . . . .

Obs. 2. Occasionally an infinitive is used. (§ 194.)

Je ne sais **que répondre**

Obs. 3. In the 17th century the subjunctive was still sometimes used.

Ils ne voyaient pas **pourquoi** *les charmes de l'éloquence* **dussent** *être exclus.* La Fontaine.

246. **OBLIQUE PETITION.** Sometimes we wish to connect with a verb of *wishing, ordering*, &c., a clause which by itself would be in the imperative, such as : *Come! Let him come!* The sentence then takes the form, *I wish that he should come*, or *I wish him to come.*

(1.) The ordinary way of turning *oblique petition* in French is by the subjunctive with **que.**

(2.) With **prier, commander,** and some other verbs (but not **vouloir**), an infinitive with *de* may be used, the subject of which is the same as the object of the verb.

(3.) Occasionally **que** with a conditional is used.

247. **WISH, COMMAND, &c.** The subjunctive is used with **que** after verbs and expressions denoting *wish, command, necessity, permission,* and the like :—

Veux-tu que je te fasse ma profession de foi? **Feuillet.**
Combattant à vos yeux, **permettez que je meure.** Rac.
Aussi **aimerais-je que,** *lorsqu'on écrit sur un auteur, on se le* **figurât** *présent et écoutant ce que nous en disons.*
Ste-Beuve.
L'intention *de mon père* **était** *que je* **parcourusse** *les pays les plus remarquables de l'Europe.* Constant.

Obs. Notice especially the use of the subjunctive with the impersonal verbs **il faut, il convient, il importe, il vaut mieux, il est temps, il est bon, juste, facile, difficile, nécessaire,** &c., all having meanings that group themselves more or less under the above heads.

Il fallut qu'*au travail son corps rendu docile*
Forçât *la terre avare à lui devenir fertile.* Boileau.

248. **FEAR, HINDERING.** **Craindre,** and other words denoting *fear*, really express a negative wish, and **se garder, se donner garde, empêcher, prendre garde, éviter,** &c., imply the opposite of permission. Consequently, such verbs take **que** with a subjunctive (cf. 239*a*).

Ne **craignez-***vous point* **qu'***on ne vous* **fasse** *le même traitement?* Racine.
Mais la loi **défendait qu'***on ne vous* **ôtât** *la vie.*
Lamartine.

Obs. The subjunctives after **peu s'en faut que, il tient à moi que** fall under the same head.

A qui **tient-il que** *cela ne se* **fasse?**
Peu s'en faut que *Mathan ne m'*ait **nommé** *son père* (has all but told me who his father was). Racine.

249. **FUTURE OR CONDITIONAL IN EDICTS, &c.** *A future or conditional* may take the place of the subjunctive after verbs of *ordering, deciding,* &c., especially in speaking **of** *laws, edicts,* &c.

En conséquence le Premier Consul **a ordonné** *que pendant dix jours des crêpes noirs* **seront suspendus** *à tous les drapeaux et guidons de la République.*
Napoléon I.

On décida que *la lieutenance de la Tour de Londres* serait donnée *à Lord Rivers.* Guizot.

A command is often expressed by the *future* instead of the imperative, as *Thou shalt not steal;* it is therefore quite natural that the corresponding tense, the conditional, should occur when the sentence is translated into oblique oration.[1]

XXI.—Adjectival Sentences.

250. **RELATIVE CLAUSE IN INDICATIVE.** A relative clause, that is a clause beginning with any case of the relative or with où, qualifies a noun as an adjective does. If it *simply qualifies* it, its verb is in the indicative mood.

Heureux le citoyen qui combat *tout ensemble pour la foi et pour la loi de ses pères.*

But it often happens that the relative clause does something more than merely qualify the noun. Thus comparing the two sentences, *He chose the day which suited him* and *He will choose a day which suits him*, we see that in the first the clause is exactly the equivalent of an epithet, in the second it is an epithet and something more; we might, in fact, substitute *such that it will suit him.* It is in the cases where the relative clause is something more than an epithet that French uses the subjunctive mood, as will be seen in the following rules:—

251. **SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER NEGATIVES, &c.** Relative pronouns and adverbs are generally followed by a subjunctive when they depend:—

(1) on a negative (*no one who, nothing which*), or an implied negative, especially an interrogative clause.

Je n'ai rien *vu* qu'*on* puisse *blâmer dans sa conduite.*

[1] In English we have adopted this form almost to the exclusion of the subjunctive. See Abbott's Shakespearian Grammar, § 361, *sq.*

(2) on a conditional clause.

Quant aux libres-penseurs, **s'***il s'en rencontrait un* **qui manifestât** *hautement sa pensée . . . .* Guizot.

Si *c'est une chose* **qui** *se* **puisse** *faire, je vous en aurai obligation.*

(3) on the word **peu**, meaning *not many.*

Il y a **peu** *d'hommes* **qui sachent** *véritablement aimer.* De Staël.

252. **AFTER SUPERLATIVE**, &c. A subjunctive is also put with a relative pronoun or adverb depending on a superlative, or one of the words **le seul, l'unique, le premier, le dernier,** and **il n'y a que.**

Le prince **le plus accompli dont** *l'histoire* **ait** *jamais parlé.* Montesquieu.

L'homme est **le seul** *des animaux* **qui soit** *obligé de se vêtir.* B. de St-Pierre.

Il n'y a que *les villes littéraires* **qui puissent** *vraiment intéresser.* De Staël.

Obs. 1. There are, however, a good many examples in which the indicative is found after *le seul* and superlatives.

Les Français furent **les seuls qui réussirent** *dans ce genre d'éloquence.*

Here the author wishes to say two things : (1) that the French did succeed, and (2) that they were the only people who did ; and lays rather more stress on the fact that they *did* succeed.

La seule *passion* **qui naît** *avec l'homme, et* **qui** *ne le* **quitte** *jamais tant qu'il vit, est l'amour de soi.* Rousseau.

Huy et Dinant sont **les plus jolies** *villes* **qu'***il y* **a** *sur la Meuse.* V. Hugo.

Obs. 2. It should be noticed that there are cases in which the relative refers not to the superlative, &c., but simply to the genitive dependent on it ; the indicative is, of course, then used—

C'est la moindre **des choses que** *je lui* **dois** (of all my obligations to him).

Obs. 3. Again, an indicative is used, of course, in sentences like—

C'est le plus jeune qui a remporté *le prix*,

which means *the youngest* (of the group) *gained the prize;* while

C'est le plus jeune qui ait, &c.,

would mean *he* (some person already known) *is the youngest who ever gained, the youngest of all who have gained.*

Obs. 4. Occasionally a subjunctive is found after autant que, which is equivalent to *in the greatest degree that:*—

Il obtint, autant que l'ait *jamais obtenu aucun autre tout ce que le bon sens, l'intérêt personnel . . . . peuvent donner à la puissance.* Guizot.

253. **PURPOSE OR CONSEQUENCE.** The relative and où, denoting a purpose or a consequence, *i.e.*, when equivalent to *in order that he, so that he*, &c., take a subjunctive :—

(1.) Denoting purpose :

Caïus proposa de faire construire des greniers publics où *l'on* pût *conserver une assez grande quantité de grain* (in order that in them one might). Vertot.

Ils envoyèrent des députés qui consultassent *Apollon* (to consult, who should consult, in Latin *qui consulerent*).

Le théâtre a plus besoin encore que les autres branches de la littérature d'une capitale, où *les ressources de la richesse et des arts* soient *réunies.* De Staël.

(2.) Denoting consequence—in this case either almost suggesting a purpose, or following a negative, interrogative, or hypothetical sentence (§ 251).

Montrez-moi un chemin qui conduise *à Paris* (*i.e.*, some road or other such that it may lead to Paris).

Tu entassais les arguments comme s'il fût agi d'un procès qui pût *compromettre ton honneur.* Souvestre.

Ce n'étaient pas là des avantages qui *nous* permissent *d'abuser beaucoup de la victoire.*

254. **CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.** The concessive (see § 237) adjectival sentence is very common in French and is introduced by **quelque ... que, quel ... que, si ... que.** The subjunctive is required in all such sentences. For examples, see § 108.

XXII.—Adverbial Sentences.

I. Consecutive Sentences.

255. **INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.** (1.) In consecutive sentences, introduced by **que** after **de sorte, tellement, au point, tant,** and similar expressions, we must choose the indicative, where the result is simply stated as a fact.

Il se conduit de sorte qu'*il* plaît *à tout le monde.*
Il est affligé au point qu'*il en perd la raison.* Acad.

But the subjunctive is used when the result is not really a fact, but

(1.) An object to be aimed at.

Conduisez-vous de sorte que *vous* plaisiez *à tout le monde.*

(2.) When it is uncertain, as depending on a principal sentence which is negative, interrogative or hypothetical.

Vous n'êtes pas si bas, que *vous ne* puissiez *vous relever.*

***Obs.* 1.** Notice the use of **à ce point que, à tel point que, si bien que** (but not **si que**):

Il s'apprit tout à fait à penser en français à ce point que *les lettres en anglais qu'il écrivait pendant ce temps* sont *de quelqu'un qui ne sait plus bien sa langue.* Ste-Beuve.

***Obs.* 2.** Occasionally **que** without any adverb preceding means *so that,* with indicative or subjunctive according to circumstances. (See § 279, *Obs.* 2.)

On le régala que *rien n'y* manquait.[1]

Un mois ne se passe pas que *l'occasion ne* vienne (without the opportunity occurring). Michelet.

Obs. 3. Take care not to confound with a consecutive sentence the middle part of the following, which is really a noun sentence.

Tant il est vrai que tout se tourne en révolte *quand l'autorité de la religion est anéantie.* Bossuet.

256. **ASSEZ TROP . . . POUR QUE.** After **assez** and **trop, pour que** has perhaps rather a consecutive than a final sense. It takes the subjunctive—

Le mal fut assez *grand* pour qu'*il* fît *époque.* Ségur.

257. **SANS QUE.** **Sans que,** *without,* which governs a subjunctive, is really used in a consecutive sense, *in such a way that not—*

Lanjuinais combattit l'ordre du jour sans que *la discussion* fût *reprise.* Lanfrey.

258. **IDIOM WITH QUE AND CONDITIONAL.** There is a remarkable idiom, by which what is in English the protasis of a concessive sentence becomes in French the principal sentence, the apodosis being connected with it by **que** as a subordinate sentence. In both we have a conditional—

N'importe ! de mon sang la coupe serait *pleine,*
Que *je* boirais *à toi, France républicaine ;*
Et ton avènement sonnerait *notre mort,*
Que *ceux qui vont mourir te* salûraient [2] *encore !*
Ponsard.

---

[1] In German and in Shakespearian English the corresponding use of daß and *that* is very common.

Man beſetzte alle Thore der Stadt, und jeden Zugang zum Schloſſe, daß der Herzog weder entkommen noch Hilfe erwarten konnte.

Have you not made an universal shout,
That Tiber trembled underneath her banks?
Julius Cæsar.

[2] *Ave, Cæsar Imperator, morituri te salutant.*

(No matter, though the cup were full of my own blood, I would drink to thee, republican France; and even should thy advent sound our death-knell, thy martyrs would still cry, All hail to thee!)

This is generally explained as a consecutive sentence. Thus: *The cup would be full of blood; granted! but it would be full in such a way that I would drink . . .* i.e., *I would drink even though it were full.*

The following falls under 266 (2):—

*On ne m'***aura** *pas* **vu** *trois fois au spectacle,* **qu'***on ne me* **regardera** *plus.* Lanfrey.

259. **INFINITIVE IN CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES.** When the subject of the consecutive sentence is the same as that of the principal sentence, the infinitive with **au point de, de manière à, de façon à,** is generally preferred to the indicative or subjunctive with **de sorte que,** &c.

Il est malheureux **au point de** *n'***avoir** *pas de quoi manger.* Acad.

Obs. 1. The infinitive construction may likewise be used after impersonals like **il faut,** where there can be no mistake as to the true subject of the infinitive.

Obs. 2. Notice the construction *si . . . que de.*

Je ne me repais pas de pensées **si** *vaines* **que de m'imaginer** . . . . . Descartes.

Obs. 3. As sentences beginning with **sans que** are reckoned among consecutive sentences, the infinitive with **sans** should be noticed here.

II. Final Sentences.

260. **WORDS MEANING** *IN ORDER THAT.* **Afin que, pour que,** *in order that,* and **que** in the same sense, introducing final sentences, take a subjunctive:—

Donnez-moi une botte de paille **que** *je* **puisse** *dormir.*

Pour qu'*on vous* **obéisse,** *obéissez aux lois.* Voltaire.

261 [242]. **INFINITIVE IN FINAL SENTENCES.** Like consecutive sentences, final sentences can be turned by an infinitive with **pour** or **afin de** provided the subject of that infinitive be the same as that of the principal verb.

Il faut qu'ils n'aient pas de chevaux du tout **pour** *n'***être** *pas* **tentés** *de s'en servir.* Ste-Beuve.

Obs. If any distinction is to be drawn between **afin de** and **pour**, it is that **afin de** expresses a more definitely conceived purpose.

III. Temporal Sentences.

262. **MOOD AND TENSE REQUIRED.** In sentences beginning with *when*, *while*, the indicative mood is used, as in English; but the choice of tenses is governed by much stricter rules.

When the verb of the principal sentence is in the future, or implies a future, the verb of the temporal sentence, if in the indicative, must also be in the future or future perfect, according as it is present or past in English. (See § 177.)

Vous serez mon ami **quand** *vous me* **quitterez**.

263. *WHEN* **WITH AN ANTECEDENT.** *When* is ordinarily translated by **quand** or **lorsque**; but if it has *an antecedent*, it must be rendered by **où** or **que**. The clause is then really adjectival, and the verb *may* be in the subjunctive, if required by §§ 251, 252.

Au temps même où *la monarchie française n'avait plus qu'à descendre.*

Il n'y a **pas de jour où** *je ne reçoive des vers.* Molière.

Un jour que *le comte de Grammont était revenu plus tôt que d'ordinaire.* Hamilton.

264. **OTHER TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS. Avant que, en attendant que,** always take the subjunctive; **jusqu'à ce que,** generally; **tant que,** occasionally:—

Je l'ai bayé cette somme **avant qu'***il* **partît.**

Adieu! je vais traîner une mourante vie,
Tant que *par la poursuite elle me* **soit** *ravie.* Corneille.

but, **Tant qu'***il* **respirera,** *je ne vis qu'à demi.*

264*a*. **JUSQU'À CE QUE** takes a subjunctive when the subordinate clause, whether in future or in past time, is looked upon as a result or contemplated result of the action of the principal sentence, when, in fact, we could substitute for it *in order that in the meanwhile, so that in the meanwhile.*

Accompagnez-*le* **jusqu'à ce qu'***il* **soit** *hors de la ville.*

Charles **réclama** *du parlement l'exclusion d'Hamilton,*
jusqu'à ce que *son honneur* **fût vengé.**[1] Guizot.

But when it simply tells us of a new action beginning when the other ends, it takes the indicative.

Lucain **fut** *d'abord ami de Néron,* **jusqu'à ce qu'***il* **eut** *la noble imprudence de disputer contre lui le prix de poésie.*
Voltaire.

265. **INFINITIVE IN TEMPORAL SENTENCES.** **Avant que** may be replaced by an infinitive with **avant de** (in 17th century French **avant que de** and even **avant que**), **après que** by an infinitive with **après**, provided the subject of the infinitive be the same as that of the principal sentence. **Après** always takes the past infinitive.

Après avoir haï, *j'ai besoin d'aimer.* Ponsard.

Avant que de combattre, *ils s'estiment perdus.*
Corneille.

266. *QUE* **AS CONJUNCTION OF TIME.** **Que** is used, or appears to be used, as a conjunction of time in four cases:—

(1.) To avoid the repetition, not only of **lorsque, pêndant que,** &c., but also of **comme, quand.** It is then followed by the same mood as the conjunction whose place it takes.

---

[1] The clause, in fact, depends on the verb implied in *l'exclusion.* We mentally turn the sentence "Charles said, Exclude Hamilton, till my honour is avenged." The subjunctive is the most common.

Quand *tout cédait à Louis et* **que** *nous crûmes voir revenir le temps des miracles.* Bossuet.

(2.) After negative sentences, or sentences containing **à peine**, and in affirmative sentences with **déjà, encore**, to denote a sudden occurrence.

Je n'eus pas mis *pied à terre* que *l'hôte vint me recevoir très civilement.* Le Sage.

On leur parle encore, qu'*ils sont partis.* Labruyère.

(3.) Like **où**, after a definite time has been named.

Goethe, un jour qu'*il s'était longtemps promené avec Bettina. . . . .* Ste-Beuve.

(4.) With **attendre, que** with subjunctive often means *until*, with notion of purpose. **Jusqu'à ce que** is not used after *attendre.*

*Ou je n'*attendrai *pas, portant son diadème,*
Que *son ombre me dise une seconde fois....* Delavigne.

267. *DEPUIS QUE, IL Y A QUE.* After **depuis que, il y a . . . que**, *the present* or *imperfect* is often used in French where we use a perfect or pluperfect. The same rule applies to the principal clause (§ 169).

Depuis que *tu* es *avec moi, je ne* suis *plus reine.*

Il y avait *déjà longtemps* **que** *les ordonnances du Sénat le* **défendaient** (had forbidden it). Bossuet.

268. **WHEREVER** may be definite, meaning *in all known places where*, and is then rendered by **partout où**, with indicative ; or it may be indefinite, meaning *in any unknown places where*, and is then translated by **où que, quelque part que**, followed by a subjunctive.

Partout où *se pouvait étendre son pouvoir, l'oppression et l'injustice n'étaient pas libres.* Fléchier.

Hélas ! où que *vous* soyez, *vous êtes mort pour moi.* Rousseau.

269. **WHEREAS** is often rendered by **au lieu que** : —

Villars est d'avis qu'on n'abandonne pas Saverne ; **au lieu que** *Catinat, qui craint pour le pays plat d'Alsace, veut tenir sur le Rhin.* Ste-Beuve.

IV. Causal Sentences.

270. **INDICATIVE AFTER** *PARCE QUE*, &c. An indicative is used after conjunctions like **parce que, puisque, comme, par cela que, vu que, attendu que.**

*Il n'obéit aux lois qu'*à **cause qu'***il les croit justes.*

Pascal.

Obs. **Non que, non pas que, ce n'est pas que** are followed by a subjunctive, but their use, though we often employ the word *because* in translating them, falls rather under the head of substantival sentences (§ 242).

271. **INFINITIVE IN CAUSAL SENTENCES. À cause de,** and **faute de** (*because of not . . . .*) with an infinitive, may take the place of a causal sentence, provided the subject of the infinitive be the same as that of the principal sentences. **Pour** is also used in the same way (§ 201)

On ne dispute sur cette matière que **faute de s'entendre.**

Mme de Sévigné.

The rule of the subject is not always observed, especially in older French.

Je hais les hommes,
Les uns, parce qu'ils sont méchants et malfaisants,
Et les autres, **pour être** *aux méchants complaisants.*

Molière.

V. Comparative Sentences.

272. **INDICATIVE USED.** These sentences are introduced by **comme,**[1] **selon que, de même que,** and after comparatives, **le même, aussi, si, autre,** &c., by **que** alone. The indicative is used :—

De même que *le soleil* **brille** *sur la terre, de même le juste brille dans les cieux.* Acad.

[1] *Comme* is also (1) causal, (2) conjunction of time.

Les hommes sont plus méchants et plus malheureux, **selon que** *la philosophie leur* **manque** *davantage.* Aignan.

Obs. 1. The use of the negative in the clause beginning with **que** after a comparative or **autre** is noticed in the next chapter.

On se voit d'un **autre œil qu'***on* **ne** *voit son prochain.*

Obs. 2. **Que** after **d'autant** also introduces a comparative sentence. **D'autant plus . . . que** is a favourite construction.

Il agissait avec **d'autant** *plus de chaleur* **qu'***il était animé par la reconnaissance.* Acad.

Obs. 3. The English *according as*, *in proportion as* or *to*, is often represented by the French idiom, **plus . . . plus, autant . . . autant** (§ 42), which can rarely be translated literally. Sometimes a very terse English expression is best rendered in French by *plus . . . plus*, &c., (as in Latin by *quo . . . eo, ut quisque . . . ita*). Thus, "Honesty is the best policy," might be turned, *Plus un homme est honnête, plus il est certain de réussir.*

273. **TO QUALIFY SUPERLATIVES.** An adverbial clause beginning with **que** often qualifies superlatives.

Je vous recommande de lui faire **le meilleur** *accueil* **qu'il** *vous* **sera** *possible.* Molière.

Such clauses are often shortened into the single word **possible,**

VI. Conditional and Concessive Sentences.

274. **GENERAL REMARKS.** The principal sentence, the thing which is to happen subject to the condition, is called the *apodosis;* the condition or limitation, the *protasis.* Thus, "if the sky falls" is the *protasis*, "we shall catch larks" the *apodosis.* The delicate distinctions which characterise Greek, and to a certain extent English conditional sentences, do not exist in French. Thus, for example, **S'il était ici** represents equally, *if he was here, if he were here, if he were to be here, if he should be here.*

275. *SI, POSÉ QUE, POUR PEU QUE.* **Si** (*if*) takes

an indicative with all tenses, except the pluperfect. With the pluperfect it very frequently takes the subjunctive :

Si *le nez de Cléopâtre* eût *été plus court, toute la face de la terre aurait changé.* Pascal.

Obs. 1. Nearly all the compound conjunctions meaning *if*, such as **supposé que, en cas que, pourvu que**, take the subjunctive :

Posé que *cela* **fût,** *que feriez-vous ?*

Obs. 2. **Pour peu que** means *if at all, if ever so little*, &c. :—

Pour peu qu'on *s'y* **fût** *prêté à Versailles, il s'ouvrait à de vastes projets* (had people supported him in the least . . .). Ste-Beuve.

Obs. 3. **Bien entendu que** is followed by a future or conditional ; **à condition que**, either by a subjunctive or by a future or conditional.

276. **MOODS AND TENSES AFTER** *SI.* Neither the future nor the conditional, nor any tense of the subjunctive, except the pluperfect, is used after **si**, meaning *if*, even where English has *if I were, if I should be :*

Si **j'étais** *vous*, if I *were* you.
Si vous vous **trouvez** *embarrassé, venez chez moi* (should be).
Si vous **fûtes** *vaillant, je le suis aujourd'hui.* Corneille.
Si *tu* **fusses tombé** *en ces gouffres liquides.* A. Chénier.

Obs. 1. This does not apply to *si* meaning *whether*, introducing an indirect question.

. . . *Cherchant des yeux* **s'***il n'***apercevrait** *pas quelque navire.*

277. *QUE*, **TO MEAN** *IF.* There are two cases in which the simple conjunction **que** must be rendered by *if*. In both cases it takes the subjunctive.

(1.) It is used to avoid the repetition of **si**—

Si le roi de France n'a qu'un million d'écus, et **qu'***il en* **ait** *besoin de deux, il n'a qu'à persuader à ses sujets qu'un écu en vaut deux.*[1]

[1] How do you refute this fallacy ?

Obs. *Si* cannot of course be replaced by *que* in a dependent question.

Il demanda au roi s'il était satisfait et si la solennité lui avait plu.

(2.) At the beginning of a sentence, where it is almost equivalent to an imperative—

Qu'*une occasion moins compromettante* **s'offrît** *ailleurs de soutenir le protestantisme opprimé, Cromwell la saisissait ardemment.* Guizot.

278. **TENSES IN THE APODOSIS.** In the apodosis of a conditional sentence the same tenses are used as in English.

Obs. 1. The pluperfect subjunctive is often used instead of the past conditional :—

Si les Titans avaient chassé du ciel Jupiter, les poètes en **eussent chassé** *les Titans.*

Obs. 2. The indicative is sometimes used in the apodosis for the sake of greater vigour. See § 179, and the example to § 275, *Obs.* 2.[1]

279. *A MOINS QUE, A MOINS DE.* **A moins que, sans que,** *unless*, always take the subjunctive.

Que sert d'amasser, **à moins qu'***on ne* **jouisse** ?

Obs. 1. **A moins de,** with an infinitive, may be used instead of **à moins que,** if the subject of the protasis be really or virtually the same as that of the apodosis.[2]

A moins d'être *fou, il n'est pas possible de raisonner ainsi.* Acad.

---

[1] Compare in Hamlet —

I will find
Where truth is hid, though it were hid indeed
Within the centre.

[2] As to the use of **ne** after **à moins que,** see § 268. As to **sans que,** in the sense of *unless*, see § 239.

Obs. 2. An idiomatic use of que falls under this head—

On ne peut répondre de rien que *tout* ne soit *consommé* (unless or until). Ste-Beuve.

280. *WHETHER—OR.* **Soit que—soit que; soit que—ou que,** *whether*, as well as **que—que,** used in the same sense, are followed by the subjunctive—

Vivez heureux, gardez ma mémoire aussi chère,
Soit que *je* vive *encor*, soit qu'*en vain je l'*espère.
Qu'il soit *brave guerrier*, qu'il soit *grand capitaine,*
Je lui rabattrai bien cette humeur si hautaine.

which we might render, *Be he a warrior*, &c.

281. *LOIN QUE.* This expression takes a subjunctive.

Loin qu'*il* soit *disposé à vous faire des remercîments, il est homme à vous chercher querelle* (far from being prepared to thank you).

It might, however, be more correct to say that the sentence beginning with que is, like one of the sentences beginning with *ut* after *tantum abest* in Latin, a substantival sentence.

282. **WORDS MEANING** *ALTHOUGH.* **Quoique** and all compound conjunctions meaning *although*, **bien que, nonobstant que, malgré que,** govern the subjunctive.

Quoique *Newton* soit venu, *l'enseignement journalier n'y a rien gagné.*

En dépit qu'*on en* ait, *elle se fait aimer.* Molière.

Obs. 1. A subjunctive also goes with qui que, quel que, si...que, quelque...quoi...que, &c.

Qui que *vous* soyez, *ne remettez jamais à un autre les interêts de votre cœur.* Constant.

Mais si *haut cependant* qu' interrogeât *le maître, nul ne lui répondit.* Dumas.

See § 108 for further examples.

Obs. 2. Tout—que is found with both moods.

Tout *cassé* **que** *je* **suis**, *je cours toute la ville.*
Corneille.

Tout *auteur* **que** *je* **sois**, *je ne suis pas jaloux.*
Regnard.

283. **ELLIPSIS OF** *IF, ALTHOUGH.* As in English, conditional and concessive sentences are sometimes put in an interrogative form, without any introductory conjunction. In such cases the pluperfect subjunctive is very commonly used; so is the imperfect subjunctive of **devoir**, and occasionally that of other verbs; and, lastly, the imperfect indicative of **être**.

Ils auraient résisté, **n'eût été** *le canon.* Ponsard.
Dût *ma muse par là choquer tout l'univers,*
Riche, gueux, triste, ou gai, je vais faire des vers.
Boileau.

La bonne volonté centuple les ressources, et ne **possédât-on** *qu'une prise de tabac, on peut encore sauver une famille.*
Souvestre.

Je me soucierais fort peu de tout ce qu'ils peuvent dire **n'était** *l'artifice qu'ils ont de me faire des ennemis que je respecte.*
Molière.

284. *QUAND* **WITH CONDITIONAL.** *Although, even if,* may also be translated with **quand**, or **quand même**, with the conditional :—

Quand *vous me* **haïriez**, *je ne m'en plaindrais pas* (even though you were to hate me). Racine.

Obs. 1. Occasionally the conditional without any conjunction represents what in English is the protasis of a concessive sentence—

Il serait *un Achille, un Pompée, un César,*
Je vous[1] *le conduirais poings liés à mon char.* Regnard.

Obs. 2. Closely connected with this is the idiom noticed under consecutive sentences, § 258

N'importe! de mon sang la coupe **serait** *pleine,*
Que je boirais *à toi, France républicaine.* Ponsard.

[1] Dativus ethicus.

Obs. 3. **Quand** occasionally takes a pluperfect subjunctive instead of a conditional.

285. **INFINITIVE IN CONCESSIVE SENTENCES.** **Pour** with an infinitive occasionally represents a conditional sentence (see § 201). So does **à** (1a) **condition de,** and negatively **à moins de,** § 279, *Obs.* 1. Also **à,** § 206.

Votre lettre a bien attendri mon vieux cœur, qui, **pour être vieux,** *n'en est pas plus dur.* Voltaire.

*On n'entraîne les autres qu'*à **la condition d'être** *soi-même* **entraîné.** Lanfrey.

286. **SEQUENCE OF TENSES.** The tense of the subjunctive in dependent sentences is regulated by the tense of the verb on which it depends. After the present, the first future, and the imperative, and the past indefinite used as a present perfect, the present or preterite subjunctive is used; after past tenses and the conditional past and present tenses, the imperfect or pluperfect :—

je **crains** *qu'il ne* **vienne,**
- - *qu'il ne* **soit venu,**
je **craignais** *qu'il ne* **vînt,**
- - *qu'il ne* **fût venu,**

and so on.

The preterite definite presents some difficulty, inasmuch as it is either a *present perfect* or an *aorist*, i.e., **il est arrivé** may mean either *he has come* (*and is here*), or simply *he came.* In the former case it is treated as a present, in the latter as a past tense.

There are exceptions to this rule, most of which can be explained by a slight change of the speaker's standpoint. Three classes of exceptions, however, call for notice—

(1.) Sometimes an imperfect subjunctive, standing where the sequence of tenses would require a present subjunctive, has nearly the force of a conditional.

Or, dans cette journée que je suppose qu'on puisse aller passer

au XVI*me* *siècle avec son auteur préféré, je* **doute que** *Calvin, de nos jours,* **eût** *beaucoup de chalands.*

Ste-Beuve.

Il n'y **a** *point de souverain qui* **osât** *punir la famille d'un homme qui se serait dévoué pour lui.* Voltaire.

(2.) A present is often used where the writer is thinking of the present results of a past event :—

*Les Romains de ce siècle n'***ont** *pas* **eu** *un seul poète* **qui vaille** *la peine d'être lu.* Boileau.

(3.) The conditionals **pourrais, saurais,** &c., are often practically presents. **(App. VI.)**

For a comparative table of uses of indicative and subjunctive, see Appendix V.

XXIII.—The Negative and Adverbs.

287. **INDEPENDENT NEGATIVES.**

(1.) **Non** (occasionally *non pas*), in answering a question.

Ai-je tort, monsieur ? **Non,** *sans doute.* Scribe.

Léandre.—*Ils sont fort ignorants.*

L'Intimé.—**Non pas,** *monsieur,* **non pas.** Racine.

(2.) To qualify a single word in a sentence, not being a verb, **non, non pas,** and sometimes **pas** or **point,** is used

Je crains votre secours, et **non** *sa barbarie.* Voltaire.

Chez les Germains, il y avait des vassaux, **non pas** *des fiefs.* Montesquieu.

. . . . *lettre* **non** *moins sage que touchante.* Guizot.

Notice **peu ou point,** *little or none.*

(3.) Notice **que non, ou non.**

Si vous répondez **que non.** Pascal.

(4.) **Non pas que, non que,** are equivalent to *ce n'est pas que.*

Non que *je veuille ici Rome imputer quelque crime.*

288. *NE . . . . PAS*, &c., *NE PAS*, *NON PAS*. What are called negative words, as **personne, rien,**[1] **ni, aucun, nul, guère, pas, point, jamais**[2] &c., require that the negative **ne** should accompany the verb of the sentence in which they occur.

Ni *l'or,* **ni** *la grandeur* **ne** *nous rendent heureux.*

Où tout est bien, **rien n'***est injuste.*

Obs. 1.[3] If **sans** precede, **ne** is not required.

Elle pousse jusqu'à S. **sans** *avoir accéléré* **ni** *ralenti son allure calme et intrépide.* Lanfrey.

Obs. 2.[3] When the negative belongs to a verb in the present infinitive, both **ne** and **pas** are generally put before it:—

Voulez-vous bien **ne pas** *bâiller.*

In the past infinitive, **pas**, &c., follow the auxiliary.

Obs. 3.[4] **Ne . . . plus**, followed by **que**, requires care in translating—

Villars **n'***avait* **plus qu'***à exécuter les ordres du roi.* Ste-Beuve.

. . . *had henceforth only to execute* (**ne . . . que** by itself would mean *only*).

288*a*.[3] **ONLY** is rendered in several different ways.

(1.) Most commonly by **ne—que.** Remember that **que** precedes the words which *only* specially qualifies, and that this construction applies only to words following the verb.

On **ne** *perd les états* **que par timidité.** Voltaire.

(2.) If in English *only* qualifies the principal verb, it must be rendered by **ne faire que**—

Il traita à fond ce que les autres **n'***avaient* **fait qu'***effleurer* (had only treated superficially).

---

[1] Also the words *mot, goutte,* in phrases like *ne voir goutte,* to see nothing at all; *ne dire mot,* not to speak a word.

[2] A few expressions, like *de ma vie, de trois jours,* are treated like *jamais,* as, *je ne sortirai de trois jours.*

[3] § 288*a* includes 288, *Obs.* 1, 2, of previous editions.

[4] *Obs.* 5 in old editions.

(3.) If the subject of a sentence be qualified by *only*, **seul** must be used (41*a*).

Deux ennemis redoutables *pouvaient* seuls *rendre vaines tant de circonstances propices.*

Elle était petite, mais **seules les femmes petites** *réunissent toutes les perfections.* G. Sand.

(4.) *Only* emphatic at the beginning of an English sentence and qualifying a word in it may also be rendered by **ce n'est que, il n'y a que.**

Ce n'est que *par ma mort qu'on la peut obtenir.*

Il n'y a que les morts qui *ne reviennent pas.*

(5.) **Seulement** with a verb is the equivalent of the English *simply, only*, and is much the same as (2).

Il était trop tard pour arrêter la révolution, et trop tôt pour la ramener à son but vrai et national. Dieu commençait seulement *à exercer ses justices.* Guizot.

289. *JAMAIS, PLUS*, &c., *RIEN QUE, RIEN MOINS QUE.* In incomplete sentences, **jamais, plus, du tout** have a negative sense:—

Jamais! *never!* plus de pain! *no more bread!* du tout! *not at all!*

Obs. 1. There is a peculiar use of **rien que**, *merely*:—

Rien que *pour ce mot-là vous méritez sa voix.*

Obs. 2. **Rien moins que**, generally with an adjective, may mean *anything but*[1] (as well as *nothing less than*).

Croyez-moi, Rousseau n'*est* rien moins que *un méchant homme* (nothing in a less degree than he is a wicked man, *i.e.*, anything but a wicked man). Marmontel.

Vous a-t-il fait faire des choses impertinentes?—**Rien moins,** *j'y dis de très belles choses* (anything but that, certainly not). Fontenelle.

Compare the German nichts weniger als.

[1] But *rien de moins que*, nothing short of, nothing less than.

290. *PAS* **IS OMITTED IN A FEW CASES.**

(1.) With the verbs **pouvoir, oser, cesser, bouger,** and with **savoir** (especially with the conditional **saurais**), **ne** alone without **pas** is frequently used.

Dans son appartement on **n'osait** *rentrer.* Voltaire.

(2.) In dependent sentences, where **que . . . ne** is equivalent to the Latin **ne,** or **qui . . . ne** to the Latin **quin.**

Il n'y avait pas un homme **qui n'eût** *servi.* Thiers.

(3.) In the phrases, **je n'ai garde de,** *I will take care not to;* **je n'ai que faire de,** *I have no need of;* **n'importe,** *no matter;* **à Dieu ne plaise,** *God forbid;* **n'en déplaise à votre Altesse,** *with your Highness' permission;* **qu'à cela ne tienne,** *I have no objection, if that's all.*

(4.) With **que . . . ne,** *why not?* and in other questions of appeal, *i.e.*, questions not expecting an answer.

Que ne *lui laissez-vous finir sa période?* Racine.

Qui *de nous* **ne changerait** *sa vie laborieuse contre celle de l'oiseau?* Souvestre.

291. *QUE NE,* **AFTER COMPARATIVE AND** *AUTRE.* The sentence which follows a comparative and **que,** though affirmative in English, requires **ne** before the verb in French (App. VI.) :—

Volant **plutôt qu'***ils* **ne** *marchaient.*

C'est encore **plus vrai que** *vous* **ne** *le croyez.* Delavigne.

But if the first sentence be negative, or virtually negative, **ne** is, as a general rule, not inserted in the second clause. Compare.

Jamais homme ne fut **plus embarrassé que** *je suis.* Molière.

Une banque doit réussir si elle **n'***émet* **pas plus** *de billets* **qu'***il* **n'en faut.**

In the former example stress is laid on the fact that I *am* embarrassed; in the latter attention is fixed simply on the comparison, and the natural construction after a comparative is used.

Obs. 1. The construction after **autre** is like that after a comparative :—

On se voit d'un autre *œil* qu'*on* ne *voit son prochain.*
Racine.

Obs. 2. Even when no verb is expressed, a negative is used in the second clause. It is also sometimes used after *autant que*, cf. § 253.

Ulysse entend mieux que nul *autre mortel les lois de Minos.*
Fénelon.

Nos passions ont autant *d'énergie* qu'*en* aucun *temps.*

292. **VERBS OF FEARING**, used affirmatively, require **ne** in the following clause, if that clause be affirmative in English; when they are used negatively, or so as to imply a negation, they do not require it:[1]—

Je crains *qu'il* ne *vienne*, I fear he will come.
Je ne crains pas *qu'il vienne*, I am not afraid he will come.
Craignez-vous *qu'il vienne ?* Are you afraid he will come? (*i.e.*, you are surely not afraid?)
Ne craignez-vous pas *qu'il* ne *vienne ?* (really affirmative.)

But Je crains *qu'il* ne *vienne* pas, I am afraid he will not come.

The conjunctions de crainte que, de peur que, also require ne.

293. *A MOINS QUE* is nearly always followed by **ne.**

Que sert d'amasser, à moins qu'*on* ne *jouisse ?*

Notice que . . . ne in the same sense.

Je ne me bats jamais qu'*aussitôt je* ne *tue.* Regnard.

294. **VERBS OF** *DOUBTING, DENYING, DESPAIRING*, used negatively, or so as to imply a negation, require ne in the following clause. In these cases que ne = *quin:*—

Qui doute que *la chasse* ne *soit de leur invention ?*
Vous ne sauriez disconvenir que *ce remède* ne *soit meilleur que tous les autres.* Mme de Sévigné.
On ne désespérait pas que *vous* ne *devinssiez riche.*

[1] Compare, of course, the Latin *vereor ne.* See App. VI.

But, *Je* **doute** *que le ris excessif convienne aux hommes qui sont mortels.* (*Douter* being used affirmatively.)

Obs. 1. This rule does not apply to phrases like *il n'y a pas de doute*, occasionally followed by an indicative (§ 240).

Obs. 2. When such verbs are used interrogatively, **ne** is most frequently inserted, but this rule is not quite uniform.

Obs. 3. The Academy allows phrases like **je ne nie pas que cela soit.**

295. **VERBS OF HINDERING**, &c. After **empêcher, éviter**, whether used negatively or affirmatively, and the impersonal **il s'en faut**, used negatively or with **peu, que ne** is used (like the Latin *quin*):—

Empêchez qu'*elle* **ne** *se mêle d'aucune affaire.*
Peu s'en faut que *Mathan* **ne** *m'ait nommé son père.*
Racine.

Obs. 1. After **prendre garde, se donner (de) garde**, and the impersonal **il tient à** (*it is my, &c., fault*), **que ne** is used for *that—not.*

A qui **tient-il que** *cela* **ne** *se fasse?* Acad.

Obs. 2. This usage was formerly extended to **défendre, bien s'en faut, il est inévitable**, &c.

Il **défendit que** *personne* **n'en sortît.**
La Rochefoucauld.

296. **NE OR NE PAS AFTER SI.** After **si, ne** without **pas** is very frequently used, especially where **si ne** introduces a sort of correction, and is equivalent to *but for* in English. In such cases the speaker implies that the converse of what he says would be true. If stress is laid on the if-clause, **ne pas** is used.

J'aurais été soldat, si je n'étais poète (but I am a poet, and cannot be a soldier). V. Hugo.

Si *vous* **n'***avez* **pas** *assez d'argent, vous ne payerez pas* (you have not the money, and so you will not pay).

Je crois qu'à l'audience
Il fera, **s'***il* **ne meurt,** *venir toute la France.* Corneille.

297. **ELLIPSIS.** Notice the elliptical form occasionally used with **ne** (not with **ne pas**):—

Il le ferait, **n'était** *le pape* (but for the pope).
Ils auraient résisté, **n'eût été** *le canon.* Ponsard.

298. **NEGATIVE WITH** *DEPUIS QUE, IL Y A QUE.* In clauses beginning with **depuis que, il y a . . . que**, there is a negative in French which does not appear in English. With a compound tense this negative is **ne** alone; with a simple tense, **ne . . . pas.**

La voilà, ce joli sourire . . . Il y **a** *si longtemps* **qu'***on* **ne** *l'avait vu.* Mme de Girardin.

Il y a *fort longtemps* **que** *je* **n'***ai été à l'opéra* (it is a long time since I have been, but literally *there is a long time during which I have not been . . .*).

Il y a *six mois* **que** *je* **ne** *lui parle* **pas.**

Depuis que *je* **ne** *vous ai vu,* **il** *s'est passé de bien grandes choses.* Acad.

Obs. Remember the other use of **il y a**—

Je l'ai vu **il y a** *trois jours* (I saw him three days ago).

If we completed this sentence, it would be *je l'ai vu; il y a trois jours que je ne l'ai vu.*

299. *NE* **AFTER** *AVANT QUE, SANS QUE.* After **avant que, sans que,** the negative **ne** is occasionally, but not always, used where there is no negative in English.

J'irai vous voir **avant que** *vous* **ne preniez** *aucune résolution.* De Sévigné.

Combien de siècles se sont écoulés **avant que** *les hommes* **aient pu** *revenir au goût des anciens!* La Bruyère.

300. *QUI NE* **CONSECUTIVE.** **Pas** is omitted in negative sentences after the relative **qui** or **que** used in a consecutive sense after a negative or an implied negative (§ 236)—

Il n'y a pas d'ennemi **qui ne** *soit en état de nuire.*
Avez-vous un ami **qui ne** *soit aussi le mien?*

301. **TO RENDER** *NOR.* An English sentence often begins with the word *nor*. This cannot be rendered in French by *ni*, which is used only to connect *words*. It is necessary to use a periphrasis with **d'ailleurs, non plus,** or similar words; sometimes **et** with a negative is enough.

Thomas Morus ne va pas, comme Platon, ***jusqu'à la*** *communauté des femmes; il* **n'***admet* **pas non plus** *la distinction des castes* (nor does he admit). Reybaud.

Again the sentence—"Nor were they at all disposed to injure those who had done them no harm merely because they were of high station," may be rendered—**D'ailleurs,** *ils* **ne** *faisaient* **pas** *le moindre mal*, &c.

302. **POSITION OF** *HOW, SO.* In English the adverbs *how, so*, generally qualify single words; in French it is usual to place **tant, combien, à quel point** but not *si*), so as to qualify the sentence. The order, in fact, is as after **plus, autant,** § 42. It is often necessary to render **combien** *how well, how completely*, &c.

Les symptômes de dissolution se montraient partout, **tant** *l'œuvre du nouveau César était au fond* **artificielle** *et* **mal assise** (so artificial, &c. . . .) Lanfrey.

Il savait **combien** *ce langage* **convenait** *à son pays, à son parti* (how well. . .) Guizot.

Combien *tout ce qu'on dit est* **loin** *de ce qu'on pense.* Racine.

Il est singulier de voir **à quel point** *les affaires d'Angleterre y sont présentées sous un* **faux** *jour* (in what a false light). Ch. de Rémusat.

Pauvre mère! Oh! **qu'il** *me* **tarde** *de l'embrasser.*

303. **IDIOMATIC USE OF** *PRES.* A phrase containing a noun with **à** and ending with **près** is equivalent to our *except*.

Les rois de Syrie possédaient presque tous les Etats de Darius **à l'Egypte près.** Montesquieu.

The commonest examples of this idiom are **à peu près,** *nearly, within a little,* **à beaucoup près,** *by no means, within a great deal.*

304. *PEU* **AS NEGATIVE.** **Peu** is often almost equivalent to a negative.

Cette échauffourée **peu digne** *du génie de ce grand capitaine.* Lanfrey.

But *un peu* has never anything of a negative sense.

*Je n'étais qu'*un peu *vif et point méchant.* G. Sand.

Obs. Notice **tant soit peu,** *just a little,* as *un livre* **tant soit peu** *amusant.*

305. **PLACE OF ADVERBS.** The natural place of an adverb in French is after the verb if in a simple tense, between the auxiliary and the participle in a compound tense. If the adverb be placed elsewhere, for example at the beginning of a sentence, or after a participle, there is a slight emphasis laid on it.

Cet accident affligerait **certainement** *les Français.* Saint-Simon.

En vain *Elisabeth les pressait de traiter de la paix.* De Sismondi.

Il ne faut employer aucun terme dont on n'ait **auparavant** *expliqué le sens.* Pascal.

Obs. 1. Of adverbs of *place* **partout** is the only one that precedes the participle.

Obs. 2. Certain adverbs such as **ainsi, mal, bien, trop,** constantly precede a verb in the Infinitive—as *pour ainsi dire, l'art de bien régner.*

Obs. 3. The position of **plus. . .plus, autant. . .autant, tant, combien,** &c., is discussed in previous sections.

306. **QUE SI.** A sentence occasionally begins with **que si,** equivalent to the Latin *quod si,* though the *que* is scarcely as emphatic.

Il s'était dit tout d'abord que même en mettant les choses au pis, et en les supposant décidés à aller jusqu'au bout, il les gagnerait de vitesse. **Que s'***il parvenait à détruire à temps l'armée de l'archiduc Charles, le soulèvement qu'on cherchait à créer en Allemagne ou tomberait de lui-même, ou serait peu redoutable pour nous.* Lanfrey.

307. **À PEINE SI.** **Si** is sometimes almost redundant after **à peine.**

Dans les sociétés aristocratiques, les riches, n'ayant jamais connu un état différent du leur, ne redoutent point d'en changer ; **à peine** *s'ils en imaginent un autre.*

So after **tout au plus** :—

Quand nous entrâmes, rien ne bougea : **tout au plus si** *un des lévriers remua la tête.* Daudet.

308. **SUCH AS.** The English *such as* is sometimes rendered by **comme,** followed by a pronoun.

Un homme d'un sens droit et sévère, **comme** *la garde* **en** *renfermait beaucoup à cette époque.* De Vigny.

Compare Eve's German Grammar, § 431.

309. **ENGLISH ADVERBS RENDERED BY FRENCH VERBS.** In many cases French verbs are used to express the meaning conveyed in English by an adverb. Examples are given in § 190, *il* **faillit** *tomber* (all but) ; § 248. *Obs.*, **peu s'en faut** *que* (very nearly) ; § 288*a*, *Obs.* 2, **ne faire que** (only). Other instances are **finir par** (eventually, at last) ; **ne pas tarder à** (soon) ; **ne pas cesser de** (continually, incessantly); **ne pas manquer de** (invariably).

310. *EITHER* is sometimes used idiomatically in English at the end of a negative sentence. It is then rendered by the use of **pas davantage,** or **non plus.**

Ce que nous nommons salle à manger n'existait **pas davantage** (did not exist either).

311. **À MÊME** is often used to mean *straight out of.* It is sometimes followed by **dans.**

On eût dit que cet aubergiste venait de boire **à même un des tonneaux** *de vin fabriqué que renfermait son établissement.* Cherbuliez.

312. **EMPHASIS.** In English and still more in Latin, emphasis is expressed by the position of a word in a sentence. This is generally effected in French by other artifices. Thus the Latin *Darium vicit Alexander*, where Darium is emphatic, is in French *c'est Darius que vainquit Alexandre*, as it would be in English.[1] Again, if the object is placed first for emphasis it must be repeated by a pronoun. See § 52, *Obs.*

La vie *que menait l'auteur dans ces lieux, on se* **la** *figure sans peine.* V. Hugo.

For the means of emphasizing adverbs see § 305.

[1] From Darnstetter.

APPENDIX I.

HINTS ON PRONUNCIATION.

1. **DIVISION OF WORDS. (Division des mots en syllabes.)** In English the division of words into syllables is for the most part regulated by considerations of etymology, so that a syllable may begin with a vowel or a consonant, just as it happens. Thus we say *am-or-ous*, because *am* is the root of the word, and *ous* a termination. But in French the rule is that *every syllable should, if possible, begin with a consonant*, and therefore they divide *amoureux* thus — *a-mou-reux*. If two unlike consonants come together in the middle of a word, they are generally separated. But the following combinations are treated as single letters, **bl, br, cl, cr, dr, fr, gl, gr, pl, pr, tr, vr, ch, th, gn, st.** Thus *con-qué-rir, fran-chir, sin-cè-re-ment, sub-stan-tif, An-gle-terre, ou-vrir.* For doubled consonants see § 11. Cases where three or four consonants come together can generally be settled by common sense. It is important to remember that *e* mute with consonants constitutes a syllable, as *ta-ble, ils cou-rent.*

2. **MUTE VOWELS.**

A is mute in : *août, aoûteron, curaçao, Laon, Saône, toast,* but not in *aoriste.*

E is mute in : *Caen, Decaen, Jean, Maëstricht* (pr. *Mastrik*), *Staël, seoir* and its compounds. See § 9.

I is mute in : *oignon, encoignure* (generally without *i*).

O is mute in : *faon, paon, taon.*

3. *H* **MUTE OR ASPIRATED.** When **h** is *mute*, as is usually the case, the word it commences is treated in all respects as if it began with a vowel, *i.e.*, the final consonant of the preceding word is carried on to it, and *le, la,* &c.,

suffer elision. If, however, it be aspirated, neither of these takes place, but the preceding word is pronounced exactly as before a consonant, and the **h** is not sounded at all. In many cases the hiatus is perceptible, and there is a little "breath" before the vowel, which might become an **h** and does not, as *le héros = le-éros; la haine = la-aine; funeste hasard = funest'-asard* (not *funèss-tazar*). But *mes haines*, for example, is sounded *méaines*.

The following are the most familiar words in which **h** is aspirated (most of them are of Teutonic origin): *hache, hagard, haie, haillon, le Hainaut, haine, haïr, haire, hâler, haleter, halle, hallebarde, halo, halogène, halte, hameau, hanche, happer, hanter, harangue, haras* (stud-farm), *harasser, harceler, harde, hardes, hardi, hareng, haricot, harnais, harpe, harpie, harpon, hasard, hâte, haubert, hausse, haut, Havane, havre, heaume, hein?, hêler, hennir, héraut, hère, hérisser, hernie, héron, héros,*[1] *herse, hêtre, heurter, hibou, hideux, hiérarchie, hisser, hocher, Hollande, homard, Hongrie, honte, hoquet, horde, hors, houblon, houille, houle, houx, huée, huguenot, huit,*[2] *huis, humer, hune, huppe, hurler, hussard, hutte*, and of course their immediate derivatives, as *hachis, hurlement, hâter*, &c. As to proper names, **h** is mute in most Latin and Greek names, aspirated in most German or Dutch names.[3]

In the middle of a word **h** is mute, except in *enhardir, renhardir, enharnacher.*

4. **MUTENESS OF FINAL CONSONANTS.** Before a word beginning with a consonant, or before a pause, the final consonant of the preceding word is generally mute.

Obs. 1. In the plural of nouns ending in a consonant, both the *s* and the preceding consonant are mute.

Obs. 2. If a syllable ends in *m* or *n* followed by another letter, that letter is mute, and the syllable is nasal, e.g., *aplomb, blanc*, &c.

---

[1] *H* is mute in derivatives of *héros*, as *héroïne, héroïque*, &c.

[2] Except after *dix, vingt*. See Acc. § 58*a*.

[3] Notice especially *la Hollande, la Hongrie, la Haye, le Hanovre.*

The following are detailed rules :—

	MUTE.	SOUNDED.
B	after *m* or *n*, as *aplomb*, and in *Doubs*, *Lefebvre*, and a few more names with old spelling.	after a vowel in foreign names (mute in *Christophe Colomb*), also in *nabab*, *radoub*.
C	and CS (1) after *n*, as—*blanc*, *vaincs*, (2) in *clerc*, *échecs*,[1] *escroc*, *estomac*, *tabac*, *marc* (coin), *croc*, *accroc*, *raccroc*, *arc-boutant*, *lacs* (noose), *cric*, *caoutchouc*. (*cs* is mute in these words and their plurals).	in all other cases[2]; note especially *lac*, pl. *lacs* (lake), *Marc*. (N.B.—The *c* of *donc* is occasionally sounded).
D	nearly always, including proper names ending in *rd*, *and*, *aud*, *auld*, *ond*, *oud*, also in *Madrid* generally. *ds* is mute in *fonds*, and of course in plurals.	in *sud*, *Cid*, *Talmud*, and Latin *ad* (*ad hoc*, &c.). Also in most proper names not ending in *rd*, &c., as *David* and in *Sand*.
F	in *clef*, *cerf dix-cors* (stag of ten), *cerf-volant*, *bœuf gras*, *nerf de bœuf*, *chef-d'œuvre*. For *neuf* see Accidence § 58*a*.	nearly always, including *œuf*, *bœuf* (but not often in *nerf*, *cerf*) [*fs* is mute in plurals of *œuf*, *bœuf*, *nerf*, *cerf*, but if the next word begins with a vowel the *s* is carried, the *f* being still mute]
G	nearly always, including *bourg* and its compounds; *g* is mute in both syllables of *Augsbourg* (*Oz-bour*).	in *joug* sometimes (see § 8 for *liaison* of *bourg*, *joug*). The *g* in *bourgmestre* is sounded.
L	in *baril*, *chenil*, *coutil*, *cul-de-sac*, and other compounds of *cul*, *fusil*, *gentil*, *outil*, *persil*, *soûl*, *sourcil*.	generally, including *il*, *ils*, *mil* (for *mille*), &c. For *il* final *mouillé*, see § 10.

[1] But sounded in *échec !* check !

[2] In *porcs-épics*, *arcs-en-ciel*, *c* is sounded, but *s* is mute.

[3] *Ls* are mute in *pouls*; *lx*, *ld*, *lt*, in *aulx* and many foreign words and proper names, as *Arnauld*, *Larochefoucauld*, but not in *Soult*, *Fould*. *Fils* is pronounced *fiss*, *fi* is only jocular or pedantic; but *fils* often rhymes with *is*, when *s* is mute; *gentilhomme* is pronounced in the singular with *l mouillé*, in the plural *genti-zome*.

MUTE.	SOUNDED.
M, N, never.	always, either as consonant or in a nasal ending, *an*, &c.
P nearly always. See also § 17.	in *cap, cep, croup, julep, Gap, Alep*; in *abrupt* (both *p* & *t* sounded).
Q nearly always.	in *coq*, sometimes in *cinq*[1] (Acc. 58A).
R in most words ending in *er* (including *Alger, Tanger*) especially in infinitives. When *r* is mute, *er* is pronounced like *é*. It is mute also in *monsieur, messieurs*.	after other vowels, also after *e* in *amer, cher, cuiller, enfer, éther, fer, fier* (proud), *Hesper, hier, hiver, mer, outremer, ver, vesper*, and many foreign words and proper names, such as *Esther, Quimper, Saint-Omer, Lucifer*.
RS mostly, as *volontiers*.	in *Thiers, tiers*, and compounds of *quérir*, only the *r* is sounded, not the *s*.

5. RULES FOR *S* FINAL.

S final is mute, except in Latin words and proper names,[2] as—*anglus, Marius, Vénus, Pâris* (son of Priam). It is also pronounced in the words *aloès, as* (ace), *atlas, bis* (twice, but mute in *bis*, brown), *blocus, biceps, cens, ès* (for *en les*), *fils* (pr. *fiss*), *forceps, gibus, gratis, hélas* (not always), *iris, jadis, laps, lis* (but mute in *fleur-de-lis*), *maïs* (maize), *mars* (but mute in *Cinq-Mars*), *mœurs, non-sens, omnibus, ours* (not always), *os*,[3] *pathos, quibus, rébus, Rubens, sinus, sus, us* (*et coutumes*), *vasistas, vis* (screw).

The S of SENS is generally mute, but is subject to *liaison*; in *non-sens*, it is sounded. The S of TOUS is sounded only when it is not used as a qualifying adjective at the end of a sentence or before a slight pause, as *nous nourrons tous* (*touss*).

S is pronounced sharp (not like *z*) in *plus-que-parfait, puisque, presque, lorsque*, and (in rhetorical style) in *tandis que*, mute in *dès que*.

---

[1] *Q* is mute in *coq d'Inde, Cinq-Mars*.

[2] In poetry, *Pallas, Vénus* may rhyme with *appas, aperçus*, dropping the *s* sound.

[3] Sounded in singular, mute in plural.

The **s** of **plus** is sounded (sharp) when it means *plus* (+), and in phrases like *il y a plus*, *bien plus*, followed by a pause. In negative sentences or when followed by other words it is mute.

Legs is pronounced *lè*.

6. RULES FOR *T* FINAL.

T (or **Th**) final is mute, except in *Ath*, *azimuth*, *bismuth*, *Brest*, *brut*, *chut* (hush!), *Christ* (but mute in *Jésus-Christ*, pronounced *Jésu-Chri*), *dot*, *est* (east), *fat*, *granit*, *luth*, *mat*, *net* (not always), *ouest*, *pat* (stale-mate), *prétérit* (not always), *transit*, *ut*, *whist*, *vermouth*, *zénith*, *Goth*, *Ostrogoth*, *Visigoth*. It is also sounded in *soit!* (so be it! good!), and in the singular of the noun *fait* in phrases like *au fait!*

T in **ct** final is sounded, except in *aspect* (*pè*), *circonspect* (*spèk* or *spèkt*), *respect* (*pèk*), *instinct* (*tin*). There has been a good deal of variation in regard to this ending.

Notice **t** mute in **et**, and In **se t**, **huit**, the final consonants are mute *only* before a word they multiply, beginning with a consonant or aspirated *h*. In other cases they are pronounced *cètt*, *uitt*.

Vingt is pronounced *vain* when it stands, (1) alone, (2) at the end of a sentence, or (3) before a consonant or *h* aspirated; the *t* is sounded before a vowel or *h* mute, and in all the numbers from 21 to 29 inclusive. From 80 to 99 inclusive it is mute.

nt is mute only in the third plural of most tenses of verbs, as *parlent*, *parleraient*, *parlèrent*, and many proper names. But the *n* is sounded in the third plural future, *parleront*, and in all other cases.

Ts is mute in *puits*, *rets*, and of course in the plural of nouns like *forêts*, *faits*, &c.

7. RULES FOR *X Z* FINAL.

X, **Z**, final are generally mute. But *Aix* (*èss* or *èks*), *Cadix* (*Cadiss*), *Dupleix* (*èks* or *é*). In words in *ux* (not *aix*), *ex*, *yx*, *ynx*, *inx*, mostly Latin, *x* is pronounced *ks*. It is mute in *prix*, *perdrix*, *crucifix*.

Six, **dix**, are pronounced *cèz*, *dèz*, before a word they multiply, beginning with a consonant: *cèzz*, *dèzz*, before a word they multiply,

beginning with a vowel; *cfss*, *dfss*, in other cases, including *le six avril*, &c.

Z is pronounced in *Suèz* (*Suess*), *Metz* (*Mess*), *Biarritz* (*itss*), *Santa-Cruz*, *Vera-Cruz* (*Cruz'*) *quartz* (*tss*), *eau de Seltz* (*selss*), *gaz* (*gas'*).

8. **LIAISON DES MOTS.** From the principle stated in (1) as to the syllables of a word, we pass naturally to one of the most important peculiarities of French pronunciation, the connection between a word ending in a consonant and a following word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute. Just as in dividing a single word, the consonants are attached, regardless of etymology, to following vowels, so the final consonant is often *partially* transferred by *liaison* to the following word. Thus *il fut amoureux* is read *il fu-ta-mou-reux*.

The following are the chief rules respecting *liaison*:—

(α) It can take place only between words closely connected in sense. Consequently, it can never occur where words are separated by a stop or a pause in the sense.

(β) *Liaison* almost always takes place between a qualifying word and the word qualified, *when the former precedes*, as between article and noun, pronominal adjective or adjective and noun, pronoun and verb, adverb and adjective, preposition and its case. Also between the verb and its object or complement.

(γ) The final *s* of a noun in the plural is generally carried when it is followed by an adjective or verb in agremeent with it. The final consonant of a noun in the singular is carried only in the *style soutenu*, and in compounds like *pied-à-terre* (*piè-ta-terre*). Substantives ending in *and*, *end*, *ond* never make *liaisons*; those in *ant*, *ent* only before the adjectives that qualify them.

(δ) The final letter of **et** (and) is never carried, nor do names of persons, countries, towns or rivers, ever form *liaison*.

(ε) **d**, when carried is pronounced like **t**[1], **g** like **k**, the **f** of *neuf* (nine) like **v**, and **s** and **x** mostly like **z**. This is due to the old spelling.

---

[1] Except in *nord*, *sud*, and in names with sounded final *d*.

(ζ) When **n** is carried, it is sounded in *both* syllables, having a nasal sound at the end of the first, the ordinary sound at the beginning of the second. Thus, *un ami* is pronounced *un* (nasal) + *nami*.

(η) *Liaison* is more practised in reading aloud and in public speaking than in conversation. In conversation it is usual to dispense with *liaisons* not absolutely forced upon one; but in reading, declaiming, and above all in poetry, the strict observance of this French characteristic is indispensable.

(θ) It should be borne in mind that even where no *liaison* takes place, there should be no more interval between the words of a clause than between the syllables of a word. There must be no pause except at a stop. Especially should this be remembered in cases where *e* mute is elided.

The following examples are taken from Lesaint[1] (with the so-called *prononciation figurée*)

Du plomb à vendre,	du plon' a vandr.
Un banc à dos,	un ban a dô.
Du tabac à priser,	du taba=ka prîzé.
Votre père est donc arrivé,	votr' pèrr è don=karivé.
Un arc-en-ciel,	un=nar=kan-cièl.
Des arcs-en-ciel,	dé=zar=kan-cièl.
Grand homme,	gran=tòme.
Le second et le troisième,	l' cegon è l' troazièm.
Le nid a été enlevé,	le ni a été anl'vé.
Un brouillard épais,	un brou-iar épê.
Nord-est, du nord au midi,	nor=dèstt, du nòr ô midi.
De pied en cap,	de pié=tan kap.
Des pied-à-terre,	dè pié=tà-tèrr.
Mettre pied à terre,	mettr' pié a tèrr.
Coud-elle bien?	coû=tèl bi-ain?

[1] We have retained Lesaint's symbols, which are no doubt antiquated. They have, however, the advantage of being intelligible to those unfamiliar with phonetic notation. Our object is rather to meet difficulties than to give a systematic account of French pronunciation. A phonetic transcription is given on page 363.

Il s'assied auprès de toi,	il ça-ciê=toprè d' toa.
Le Juif errant,	le Juif èr-ran'.
Un bœuf maigre,	un beuf mègr.
Des œufs à la coque,	dè=zeu=za la kòk.
Un cerf dix-cors,	un cèrr dî-kòr.
Un cerf agile,	un cèrf ajil.
Cent neuf habits,	çan neu-vabi.
Vingt-neuf héros.	vaintt-neu érô.
Le dix-neuf avril,	le dizz-neuf[1] avril.
Un long hiver,	un lon=kivèrr.
Suer sang et eau,	çué san=ké ô.
Un orang-outang adroit,	un=noran-outan adroa.
Le huit de carreau,	le uitt de karó.
Dix-huit ; vingt-huit,	di=zuitt ; vain=tuitt.
Fusil à deux coups,	fuzi a deu kou.
Des fusils excellents,	dè fuzi=zèk-cè-lan.
Adam et Eve,	Adan é èv.
Aucun autre ouvrage,	okun=nôtr' ouvrâje.
Un examen intéressant,	un=nég-za-main ain-térèçan.
Il va en Italie,	il va an=nitalî.
J'en suis bien aise,	jan sui biain=nêze.
On a beaucoup appris,	on=na bôkou=paprî.
Combien en a-t-on vus ?	konbiain an=na-t-on vu.
Non avenu ; non et oui	non=navenû ; non é oui.
Vous allez trop avant,	vou=zalé tró=pavan.
Un loup affamé,	un lou afa-mé
Il faut manger et boire,	il fô manjé -ré bɔâr.
Le deux ou le trois août,	le deu=zou l' troâ=zoû.
Le premier homme,	le premié=ròme.
Ces petits insectes ailés.	cé p'ti=zain-céktt=zèlé.
Les uns aux autres,	lé=zun ó=zôtr'.
Paris est le centre du bon goût,	Pari è l'çantr' du bon goû.
De bonnes œuvres,	de bònn-zeuvre.
Tu vaux autant que lui,	tu vô=zôtan k'lui.
Un nez aquilin ; les onze,	un né akilain ; lè onze.
Basses-Alpes ; les une heure,	Bass-zalp ; lè une eur.
Vous la rendrez heureuse,	vou la randré=zeureuze.

[1] *Neuf* being put for the ordinal. [2] Not in conversation.

9. PRONUNCIATION OF **E**. There are three different ways of pronouncing the letter e, known as e *muet*, e *fermé*, and e *ouvert*. They do not correspond very closely to the accents ; é is always pronounced as *e fermé*, è as *e ouvert*, but e unaccented *may* be either *muet*, *fermé*, or *ouvert ;* ê may vary from *e ouvert*, its general sound, almost to *e fermé*

(α) e **muet** ranges in sound from something like eu (in *feu*, *peu*, &c.), to absolute silence. e unaccented is considered mute only when it ends a word or syllable.

Bearing in mind the principle on which syllables are divided in French, it will be seen that *e* unaccented, followed by a single consonant, or by two that are sounded together like *br*, *bl*, will always be mute. Whether the *e* is to be dropped altogether, or slightly sounded, depends on considerations of euphony. Thus it is dropped in *acheter*, *mademoiselle*, *si je veux*, but sounded in *celui*, *peser*, *demoiselle*, *il te fallait*.

Notice that in *le* after the imperative, and in the antepenultimate of the conditional first and second plural ending in *erions*, *eriez*, the *e* mute is not dropped.

The pronunciation of words where the final *e* is mute, as *table*, *sobre*, is best learnt by *first* sounding it almost like *eu* (*ta-bleu*) ; otherwise one is apt to fall into the English dissyllabic form, which is quite different from the real pronunciation.

(β) e **fermé** is the name given to the *é* in *répété*, *bonté*, *créé*, &c. It includes—(1) *é* in all cases ; (2) the verbal terminations *er*, *ai*, *ez ;* (3) *er*, *ed*, *ez*, final in nouns and adjectives when the last consonant is not sounded ; (4) *e* before *x* and a vowel, or before a *doubled* consonant pronounced like a single one, as *effacer*, *essor ;* provided always it does not form the penultimate of a word ending in *e* mute. It is pronounced with the mouth almost closed, and must, like *e* mute, be the final letter of a syllable.

An Englishman will do well to remember that *ty* at the

end of English nouns represents, very nearly indeed, the proper pronunciation of the final *té* from which it is derived.

(γ) **e ouvert** is the sound of *è* in *père, lève.* It includes—(1) *è* in all cases; (2) *e* before a double consonant and *e* mute, as *elle, guerre;*[1] (3) *e* before final *t* or *s* mute, or before a final consonant which is sounded; (4) the verbal endings *aie, ais, ait, aient,* together with *ai* (when not verbal) and *aix,* but in *sais, sait* from *savoir,* the sound (except before *je*) is that of *é fermé;*[2] (5) *ê circumflex,* in the last syllable of a word, or the penultimate, when the last syllable is mute. In other syllables *ê* is at least much less open; in some words, as *bêtise,* it approaches very near to *e fermé.*

10. **L** *MOUILLÉ.* **l** or **ll** preceded by **i** is, in a great many cases, entirely or partially dropped in pronunciation.[3] The sound is then represented, but not quite correctly as follows:—*bataillon* (*bata-yon*), *abeille* (*abè-ye*), *vieillard* (*viè-iar*), *bail* (*ba-y'*), *recueil* (*rekeu-y'*).

(1.) In *il* final, preceded by a vowel, as *corail, orgueil.*[3]

(2.) In the combination *ill* in the middle of a word, as *fouiller.* This applies to all cases where *ill* is preceded by a vowel and to most cases where it is preceded by a

---

[1] Except *femme,* pronounced *fa-m'*; *ardemment, patiemment,* and similar adverbs, pronounced *ard-a-man, pa-ci-a-man.*

[2] Notice the different sounds of *ai*—(1) as *e fermé* in the *verbal* ending *ai,* in *gai* and derivatives, *quai, geai, papagai, je sais, tu sais, il sait;* (2) as *e mute* in the present participle *faisant,* with the parts derived from it, both in the simple verb and in its compounds; also in *-faiteur, -faisance;* (3) in all other cases it is more or less open.

[3] Notice that it is not *mouillé* in *il* final, preceded by a consonant, as *mil, vil, viril, exil, fil,* &c.

consonant. The exceptions are *Achille*, *billion*, *codicille*, *distiller*, *guérilla*, *imbécillité*, *Lille*, *mille* (with *milliard* and other derivatives), *scintiller*, *Sillery*, *ville* (and names of towns ending in *ville*), *village*, *tranquille* and its derivatives, and, of course, many words borrowed from other languages.

(3.) In the word *gentilhomme*.

Obs. Notice that *l* is not *mouillé* in *Talleyrand*, *Tuileries*, words in which a mistake is often made. In *avril*, *babil*, *péril*, both pronunciations are in use.

11. *M* **AND** *N*. The letters **m** and **n** with the preceding vowel or combination of vowels form nasal vowels (p. 2):—

(1.) At the end of a word (for the effect on the next word beginning with a vowel, see under *liaison*, § 4).

(2.) When followed by a consonant, except in the combinations *mm*, *nn*, *mn*.

This nasal sound is intermediate between the English *n* and *ng*; to pronounce it exactly like *ng* is very wrong. Notice the following remarks:—

(*a*) *m* and *n*, when nasal, have exactly the same sound.

(β) *imm*, *inn*, are pronounced *im'-m*, *ine-n*, as *immense* (*im'-mense*), *inn* (*in'-né*). But *innocent* is pronounced (*i-no-çan*).

(γ) *enn* is pronounced in several different ways—(1) ordinarily like *è-n* as in *ennemi* (*è-ne-mi*), *ancienne* (*an-ci-è-ne*), *penne* (*pè-ne*); (2) in *hennir*, *solennel*, and cognate words, also in *nenni*, *Rouennais*, *enivrer*, the *e* resembles *a*, as *so-la-nel*, *rou-a-nè*, *a-ni-vrer*; (3) in *ennoblir*, *ennui*, *en* has the nasal sound, as *ennuyeux* (*an-nuyeux*); (4) *annales* and compounds of *ennal* are pronounced *an'-nales*, *bi-èn'-nal*.

emm is pronounced *an-m*, as *emmener*, *an-mener*.

(δ) *en* is pronounced like *ain* – (1) in *bien* and the final syllable of nouns and adjectives ending in *en*[1]; (2) in the parts of *tenir*, *venir*, and their compounds, where *ien* is followed by *d*, *t*, or *s*; (3) in classical words, as *pensum* (*pain-çôme*), *pentagone* (*pain-ta-gône*); (4) in *Amiens*, *Marengo*, *Abencérages*, *Rubens*, &c.

(ε) *um* final (mostly Latin) is pronounced *ôme*, except in the really French word *parfum* (*parfun*); *um* in the middle of a word is usually the nasal *on*, except in *humble* (*un-ble*).

[1] As *examen*, *ancien*, but not in borrowed words, as *hymen*.

(7) In foreign names, the nasal is naturally but little used, as *Amsterdam* (*am-stèr-dam*[1]), *Jérusalem* (*jé-ru-za-lèm*[1]). But notice among others, *Adam* (*a-dan*), *Nuremberg* (*nu-ran-bèrr*).

12. **NOTE ON** *S.* *s* between two vowels is pronounced like *z*, except — (1) in *girasol*, *vraisemblable*, *parasol*, *abasourdir*, *préséance*, *présupposer*, and a number of technical compound words, which might as well be written with a hyphen before the *s*, such as *bisulfure*, *cosinus*. (2) in the present participle of *gésir* and parts derived from it. *Resigner* (to sign again) keeps the *s* sound, ***résigner*** (to resign) is pronounced with *z*.

Notice that *isme* is pronounced *iss-me*, not *iz-me*.

ss is pronounced like a single *s*, not like *z*. Thus distinguish *baiser* (*bè-zé*), *baisser* (*bè-çe*), *croisais*, *croissais*, &c.

13. **PRONUNCIATION OF** *TI.* ti is pronounced like *çi*—(1) in the syllables *tia*[1], *tial*, *tieux*, *tiel*, *tius*, *tium*; (2) in *tio*, except in the first plural of verbs like *gâter*, as *gâtions*;[2] (3) in *tien* when the final syllable of a proper name, or an adjective formed from it, as *Domitien*, *Vénitien* (except *Chrétien*); (4) in *tie* final, preceded by any vowel,[3] as *aristocratie*, pronounced *cra-cie*, *péripétie* (*cie*), *prophétie* (*cie*); (5) in the words *patient*, *ineptie*, *inertie*, *satiété*, and in all parts of *argutier*, *balbutier*, *différentier*, *initier*, *transsubstantier*.

14. *DOUBLE CONSONANTS* are for the most part pronounced like single ones, so as to belong to the next syllable, as *ennemi* (*è-ne-mi*), *comment* (*co-ment*) *tonneau* (*to-nó*).

Ploetz (System. Darstellung) calls attention to the difficulty of carrying out the principle in words like *terre ombrelle*, and recommends that the final *e* should be exaggerated by way of practice, till the correct pronuncia-

[1] Except in words beginning with *anti-*, *centiare*, *Critias*, *éléphantiasis*, *étiage*, *galimatias*, *tiare*.

[2] Except *étioler*, *étiologie*, *Pétion*.

[3] Except *rôtie*, *Clytie*, *sotie*, *épizootie*, and the name *Claretie*.

tion be acquired. Thus, for practice, pronounce *lettre, lè-tre; ombrelle, ombrè-le; botte, bò-te*, and so on.

The following are the chief exceptions; those referring to *m, n* are also mentioned in § 11 :—

CC are separated before *e, i* or *y*, as *accident* (*ak-ci-dan*); but *occasion* (*o-kasion*), *accuser* (*a-kuser*). Also in derivatives of *peccare*, to sin.

GG, in *suggérer, suggestion*, &c., are pronounced as if the word were written *sukjérer*.

LL are separated—(1) in all words beginning with *ill;* (2) in derivatives of *intelligere*, to understand; and (3) in most of the *more learned* words where they occur, as *allégorie, gallicisme, parallaxe*, but they are pronounced like *l* single in *village, collègue, million*, &c.[1]

MM are separated after *i*, as *immortel* (*ime-mor-tel*), and in a few words after *e*, *Emma, Emmanuel*, &c. Notice especially that one of the *m's* is mute in adverbs ending in *emment*, as *prudemment* (*pru-da-man*).

NN are separated after *i* at the beginning of a word, and in derivatives of *annus* (year), as *annales* (*ane-nal*), *biennal* (*bi-ène-nal*), *inné* (*ine-né*). Except *innocent*, &c. (*i-no-çan*).

RR are separated—(1) in words beginning with *irr;* (2) in the future and conditional of *mourir, courir, quérir*, and their compounds[2]; (3) in *errer, horreur, terreur, narrer, torride*, and cognate words, as *horrible* (*òr-ribl'*).

SS is pronounced like *ç* (see §12). The word *pressentir* is pronounced as if written *pré-sentir*.

TT are separated only in *attique, guttural*, and a few Italian words and proper names, e.g., *allégretto, Gambetta*.

15. *TONIC ACCENT.* In passing from popular Latin to French, accent played a most important part. All the word after the accented syllable disappeared, or was repre-

[1] Notice *collation*, pronounced *ko-lacion* when it means a lunch, but *kol-lacion* of MSS.

[2] But not in *pourrai, verrai*, &c.

sented only by e mute. Thus the accent in French differs entirely from that in English and German, and falls on the last syllable, or if the last syllable contains e mute on the last but one. This is illustrated by the pronunciation in English and German of words borrowed from the French. Thus, Soldat from French *soldat*, but Mönat, an indigenous word. Or again, in Shakespearian English, *exile*, *aspect*, *theatre* (retained in the vulgar *theayter*), all of which are now completely naturalised in pronunciation.

The stress is, however, by no means as marked as in English or German. Moreover, the *sentence-accent*, a very important feature in French, often effaces the stress on individual syllables. Emphasis, which is to be carefully distinguished from tonic accent, affects the beginning of words. Thus, in *Le Gendre de M. Poirier*, when the *épicier* is thinking of a title, his aristocratic son-in-law, who is chaffing him, lays stress on the first syllable of *baron*.

It should be added that the ordinary meaning of the word *accent* in French is *provincial pronunciation*. Thus, *Il n'a pas d'accent* mean he speaks quite correctly, not like a Gascon or a Bordelais, but like a Parisian.[1]

16. *QUANTITY.* The rules for the length and shortness of syllables in French are numerous, and require much practice. We have only space for the following :—

(α) All circumflexed vowels are long, except the *ô* of *rôtir*, *hôtel*, *hôpital*, *hôtesse*.

(β) *a* is generally short, but is long in the following cases —(1) in the termination *ation;* (2) before *se* or *ze;* (3) in *basse*, *grasse*, *lasse*, *casser*, *passer*, *amasser*, *compasser*, *entasser*, *passion*, and in the first and second singular and third plural of the imperfect subjunctive of the first conjugation ;

[1] Ploetz calls attention to the stress on the first syllable in the Christian names *Henri*, *Adolphe*, *Rodolphe*, *Alfred*, *Anna*, *Armand*, *Bernard*, *Christophe*, *Conrad*, *Guillaume*, *Jacob*, *Louis*, *Philippe*. Also in *Molière*, *Rabelais*, *Voltaire*, *Fénelon*, *Racine*, &c.

(4) in *nouns* ending in *able*, except *table*, *étable*; (5) in the terminations *abre*, *adre*, *avre*, and parts of the verbs derived from them; (6) in *as* final.

(γ) *o* is long—(1) before *se*; (2) before *tion*, *sion*; (3) in *os* final; (4) in *atome*, *arome*, *idiome*, *tome*, &c.

o is short in most other cases. Notice especially compounds of *nome* (νόμος), as *astronome* (except *binome*), and the words *globe*, *robe*, *école*, *médiocre*, *noble*, *Rome*, &c.

Lastly, remember *o* short in *notre*, *votre*, but long in *le nôtre*, *le vôtre*.

17. *MISCELLANEOUS.* **C** is pronounced *g* (palatal) in *second* and its derivatives, also in *reine-Claude* (pronounced *Glaudé*).

G is soft (sibilant) before *e*, *i*; hard before *a*, *o*, *u*. Consequently, if we want to represent the soft sound before *a*, *o*, *u*, an *e* is inserted, as in *mangeant*. On the other hand, *gu* before *e*, *i*, sounds almost exactly like *g* hard (palatal), perhaps a trifle softened.

CH is pronounced like *k* in most words from other languages, except in words with the German *sch*. Also in *archange*, *archiépiscopal*,[1] *chœur*, *choral*, *écho*, *malachite*, *schème*, *scholiaste*, *scholie*, *scholastique*, &c. In most ordinary French words it is a sibilant.—Notice the sibilant sound in *Achille*, *Achéron*, *Antioche*, *bachique*, *machiavélique*, *Michel*,[2] *monarchie*, *patriarche*,[3] *psyché* (cheval-glass),[4] *schisme*, *hiérarchie*. It is mute in *almanach*.

TH is always pronounced like *t*.

M is mute in *automne*, and in *damner* and its derivatives.

P is not sounded after a nasal, nor in *baptême*, *sculpter*, and cognate words. **PS, PT** are also mute in *corps*, *temps*, *prompt*, *exempt*, *romps*, *rompt*.

---

[1] But soft in all other compounds of *archi*, *archiduc*, &c. (like *sh*).

[2] But hard in *Machiavel*, *Michel-Ange* (like *k*).

[3] But *patriarchal* (*kal*).

[4] Hard in compounds of ψύχη, as *psychologie*.

QU is generally pronounced like *k*. But in the less popular compounds of *équ...* (equal), *quadr...* (square), *sesqui...* (one and a half), *aqu...* (water),[1] as *équateur*, *quadratique*, *aquatique*, *aquarelle*, it is pronounced nearly as in English, viz., *kou* before *a*, *o*; *ku* before *e* and *i*. Also in the words *adéquat* (*t* mute), *loquace*, *quantum*, *quatuor*, *squalide*, *équestre*, *questeur*, *obliquité*, and a few others.

Y initial is a vowel, as in *l'yeuse*, *les yeux* (***lè-zieux***), *jambon d' Yorck* (***diorck***). In a few foreign words it is a consonant, as *le Yucatan*, *le couvent de Yuste*, *le yacht*. In the middle of a word, after a vowel, it is, except in foreign and some technical words, pronounced as *ii*. Thus *pays* is sounded *pai-is*; *paysan*, *pai-i-san*; *appuyer*, *a-pui-ier*. Again the line

Qu'aux murs de l'abbaye elle va s'enfermer.

is scanned

Qu'aux | *murs* | *de* | *l'ab* | *bai* | *i(e)* ||

GN is generally a single nasal sound, as in *si-gnal*, *a-gneau*. But in a few words, as in the derivatives of *ignis*, e.g., *ig-nition*, and in *cog-nat*, *ag-nat*, *stag-nant*, *recog-nition*, *mag-nificat*, *Ag-nus Dei*, &c., the two letters are separated. At the beginning of a word the *g* of *gn* is pronounced hard, *e.g.*, in *gnome*, *gnostique*.

---

[1] But in *équilibre*, *équinoxe*, *équitable*, *équité*, *aqueduc*, the ordinary pronunciation is retained.

	With Accusative.	With Genitive.
abuser,	deceive,	misuse,
s'accommoder,		put up with,
aider,[1]	a person (without infinitive),	
apercevoir,	see (for the first time, unexpectedly),	
appeler,	call, summon,	appeal from or against
applaudir.	*qlqn.* (mostly literal),	*qlqn. de qlqch.*
approcher,	1. *qlqn.* have access to, 2. *qlqch. de qlqch.* bring near,	come near,
assister,	help,[2]	
attendre,	wait for, expect,	
atteindre,	reach, hit, catch (a thief, &c.)	
changer,	1. exchange, 2. alter,	become different in respect of, *changer d'avis, d'habit,* &c.
commander,	1. *qlqch.* enjoin (*à qlqn.*),[4] 2. be the commander of,	
conseiller,	1. *qlqn.* to be the adviser of, 2. *qlqch.* enjoin,	
conspirer,	plan, plot,	
convenir,[5]		1. acquiesce in. 2. agree about,
croire,[6]	1. believe (a story, &c.). 2. believe (a person who tells you),	
défier,	defy, challenge,	
demander,	1. *qlqn.* ask for, want to see, 2. *qlqch.* ask for (*à qlqn.*),	
disputer,	try to gain, dispute (*à qlqn.*) from or with some one,	1. vie with each other in *d'orgueil, de beauté,* &c.), 2. dispute about,
échapper,	(*la prison*) escape going to prison,	escape from prison,

[1] *aider*, with dat., to help when the person helped co-operates, with acc., to help generally, according to some grammarians; but Littré draws no distinction.
[2] Often used of the ministrations of a minister of religion to a dying person.
[3] *e.g. s'échapper jusqu'à dire...*

DIX II.

DIFFERENT CONSTRUCTIONS.

With Dative.	Without Case.	Used Reflexively.
		deceive oneself.
adapt oneself to.		
(à) *qlqn. à faire qlqch.*		
		perceive (when waiting, on the look out, *de*).
(*en appeler à*) appeal to,		be called, named.
à qlqch. (rarely literal),	applaud, clap one's hands,	congratulate oneself on (*de*).
	come nearer,	come nearer to (*de*).
be present at.		
	wait,	1. *à qlqn.* place hope in. 2. *à qlqch.* expect.
attain to, reach with effort.		
	become different,	change completely (sich verwandeln).
exercise authority over,	have authority.	
(*à qlqn. de faire*, &c.) advise a particular thing.		
help in.		
suit, please,	agree, coincide.	
1. believe in the existence of,[6] 2. trust to.		
		distrust, suspect (*de*).
ask of or from.		
(*le disputer à*) vie with,	argue,	*qlqch.* strive with each other for the possession of. (*se* dative).
à la douleur, au soupçon,	escape.	escape, forget one's self.[4]

[4] Notice *commander un habit, un dîner à qlqn.; la forteresse commande la ville.*

[5] With *avoir* in the meaning suit, please; *être* in other meanings.

[6] *croire en Dieu, en Jésus-Christ, en soi,* but *au Saint-Esprit, aux dieux.*

	With Accusative.	With Genitive.
entendre,	hear, understand,	
goûter,	1. taste (in order to judge of), 2. like, appreciate,	1. take some of, 2. taste, try (*du pouvoir, des plaisirs*),
hériter,	*qlqch. de qlqn.* inherit,	1. *de qlqn.* be the heir of, 2. *de qlqch.* inherit, come into.
imposer,	1. impose *à qlqn.* (*le silence, un tribut*), 2. tax (*un pays*), 3. lay on (*les mains*),	
insulter,	treat insultingly,	
jouer,[2]	1. play (*une comédie, un rôle, une carte*, &c), 2. *qlqch.* stake, 3. *qlqn.* deceive, travesty.	play on an instrument (*du violon*, &c.),
manquer,	fail to attain, fail to hit, miss (aim or appointment),	be without, be short of (some necessary),[3]
mêler,	mix, shuffle (cards),	
monter,	ascend (trans.), ride (*un cheval*), carry upstairs,	
occuper,	occupy, take possession of, &c.,	
parer,[5]	1. put in order, adorn, 2. parry,	
participer,		partake of the nature of,
passer,	1. pass, as in English,[6] 2. put on (a dress, &c.),	
persuader,	*qlqn. de qlqch.*,	*qlqn. de qlqch.*,
pourvoir,	*qlqn. de qlqch.*,	*qlqn. de qlqch.*,
prendre,	take, as in English,	

[1] Notice *en imposer à*, in the same sense.

[2] Notice *je joue le piquet*, I play piquet (by preference), I am a piquet-player; *jouer le jeu*, to play the game, *i.e.*, keep its rules. As to I and 3, there is a good story of Molière. He announced that *Le Tartufe* was withdrawn by order of *Monseigneur l'Archevêque; parce qu'il ne veut pas qu'on le joue.*

[3] Also *manquer de foi, de respect*, break one's word, fail in respect.

With Dative.	Without Case.	Used Reflexively.
ne rien entendre à, understanding nothing about, just taste, not take much of.		1. agree (*avec*); 2, be conversant with, *à*, *en*.
1. command the respect of, 2. impose upon,[1] scoff at.	command respect.	
play at a game (*au whist, à colin-maillard*),	1. play, 2. work (into each other of springs, wheels, &c.),	1. *de*, trifle with, treat lightly, 2. *à*, attack inconsiderately.
fail, not do one's duty to,	1. fail, not succeed, 2. become bankrupt.	*il s'en manque de peu*, (all but) *de beaucoup*.[4]
qlqch. à qlqch. mix with, add to,		*de qlqch.* to take part in (often obtrusively).
à une tour, y, ascend, *à cheval*, ride.		1. *de*, mentally, 2. *à*, physically.
defend oneself against (nearly as with acc.), take part in.		
qlqch. à qlqn. forgive, permit, *qlqch. à qlqn.*[7] make arrangements for, provide for.	pass, in its various English meanings,	1. happen, 2. with *de qlqch.* do without.
1. *qlqch. à qlqn.* something from some one, 2. seize, of maladies, fancies, &c., *il lui prit un frisson*,[8] 3. take to, be interested in,	take, take root, become popular, &c.,	1. *à*, lay hold of, set about, 2. *à qlqn. de qlqch.*, find fault with for.

[4] Used parenthetically or with *que* after it. [5] From two different roots.
[6] Except that of passing a bill, speaking of Parliament, or any other legislative body. [7] Especially when the direct object is a sentence.
[8] Notice also *bien lui prend de* or *que*, it's lucky for him that.

	With Accusative.	With Genitive.
présider,	preside over (an assembly, a meeting),	
prétendre,	claim as a right (not modern),	
profiter,		avail oneself of,
protester,	1. assert solemnly, 2. refuse to honour a draft,	*d'incompétence*, &c. (legal), enter a protest on the ground of,
redoubler,	redouble, increase,	
regarder,	look at,	
répondre,		be responsible for,
ressentir,	feel,	
rêver,	excogitate,	dream of (in sleep),
servir,	1. *qlqn.* wait upon, serve (God, one's country, &c.), 2. *qlqch. à qlqn.* serve up (at table),[1]	1. serve as, 2. *ne servir de rien*, to be of no use,
songer,	occasionally with cognate accusative,	dream about,
sonner,	1. ring (a bell), 2. announce by ringing or striking,	sound (an instrument), *du cor. de la trompette*,
tâter,	feel (*le pouls, une étoffe*) for the purpose of testing,	**make trial of,**
tenir,[2]	hold, keep, occupy, &c.,	1. take after (*de son père*, &c.), 2. *qlqch. de qlqn.* have received from, be indebted to for,
toucher,	1. feel with the hands, 2. receive (a salary, &c.), 3. make an impression on, touch, affect, 4. play (the piano),	*du piano, de l'orgue*,
user,	use up, wear out,	make use of.
veiller,	watch (a sick person),	

[1] Notice also *Madame est servie*, dinner is on the table.

[2] Notice the phrases—*sa vie tient à un fil*, his life hangs by a thread; *cela me tient au cœur*, I am deeply interested in it; *qu'à cela ne tienne*, don't let

With Dative.	Without Case.	Used Reflexively.
watch over (*à la formation d'un plan*, &c.),	be president, act as president.	
aspire to, seek to gain.		
be useful for.		
	protest.	
redouble in respect of.		
pay attention to, especially *y*.		
1. answer *à qlqn.* or *qlqch.*, 2. correspond to.	**answer.**	
		1. feel the influence of, *de*, 2. feel resentment at.
meditate on,	dream.	
1. **be the slave of, (obs.)** 2. *à qlqch.* be useful for,	be a slave.	with *de*, make use of.
think of, meditate on.		
	sound.	
be attached to, care for,	hold fast, remain valid, &c.,	1. remain (*debout*, &c.), 2. *de*, restrain oneself, 3. *se tenir* or *s'en tenir à*, keep to.
1. touch (—*porter la main sur*), 2. reach, 3. interfere with.		
look after (also with *sur*),	remain awake.	

that stand in the way. *St.-Simon, à qui il n'a pas tenu de faire de Villars une personne burlesque* (who interposed no obstacle to, did not hesitate).

APPENDIX III.[1]

PREPOSITIONS REQUIRED BEFORE INFINITIVE.

Verbs which take Infinitive without preposition.

accourir,
affirmer,
aimer autant,
aimer mieux,[4]
aller,
assurer,
avoir beau,
avouer,
être censé,
compter,
confesser,
considérer,
convenir,
courir,
croire,
daigner,
désirer,[2]
devoir,[5]
dire (*assert*),
écouter,
entendre,
entrevoir,
envoyer,
espérer,[2]
faillir,
faire,
il fait beau,
il fait bon,
falloir,
se figurer,
s'imaginer,
jurer (*assert with an oath*),
laisser,
mener,
nier,[2]
oser,
ouïr,
paraître,
penser,
préférer,[2]
pressentir,
prétendre,[2]
prévoir,
pouvoir,
protester,
raconter,
reconnaître,
rentrer,
retourner,
revenir,
savoir,
sembler,
sentir,
souhaiter,[2]
soutenir,
se trouver,
témoigner,
venir,[3]
voir,
vouloir,
il vaut mieux,[4]
il vaut autant.

---

[1] Compiled chiefly from Koerting, Ploetz, and Hölder, and (by permission) from the Marlborough French Grammar.

[2] Also with *de*.

[3] Also with *de* and *à*.

[4] Remember *que de* after these verbs; as *il vaut mieux lire ses pièces que de les voir*; but *de* is sometimes omitted.

[5] Takes *de* when also accompanied by a dative.

Verbs which take an Infinitive with *de*.

s'abstenir,
accuser,
achever,
admirer,
affecter,
s'affliger,
il s'agit,
s'apercevoir,
s'applaudir,
appréhender,
avertir,
s'aviser,
n'avoir garde,
avoir peur,
s'attrister,
blâmer,
briguer,
brûler (*desire*),
cesser.
charger,
choisir,
commander,
conjurer,
conseiller,
se consoler,
se contenter,
convenir (*agree*),
il convient.
craindre,
crier,
dédaigner,
dégoûter,
se défaire,
défendre,
se dépêcher,
désaccoutumer,
désespérer,
différer,
dire (*bid*).
discontinuer,
disconvenir,
dispenser,
dissuader,
douter (*hesitate*),
écrire,
s'efforcer,
empêcher,
s'empresser,
enjoindre,
s'enorgueillir,
enrager,
entreprendre,
essayer,
s'étonner,
éviter,
s'excuser,
faire bien,
faire mieux,
faire semblant,
feindre,
féliciter,
se féliciter,
finir,
flatter,
se flatter,
frémir,
gager,
se garder,
gémir,
se glorifier,
gronder,
hasarder,
se hasarder,
se hâter,
s'indigner,
s'inquiéter,
jurer (*promise with an oath*),
louer,
mander,
méditer,
se mêler,
menacer,
mériter,
mourir,
négliger,
nier,
offrir,
omettre,
ordonner,
pardonner,
parier,
permettre,
persuader,
se piquer,
plaindre,
se plaindre,
préférer,
prescrire,
presser,
présumer,
prier,
promettre,
proposer,
se proposer,
protester,
punir,
se rappeler,
recommander,
refuser,
regretter,
se réjouir,
remercier,
rendre grâce,
se repentir,
reprocher,
rire,
risquer,
rougir,
il sied,
sommer,
se soucier,
souffrir,
souhaiter.
soupçonner,
se souvenir,
suggérer,
supplier,
tâcher,
tenter,
trembler,
trouver bon,
se vanter.

Verbs which take an Infinitive with *à*.

s'abaisser,
aboutir,
s'accorder,
s'accoutumer,
aider,
aimer (also *de*),
amener,
amuser,
animer,
appeler,
s'appliquer,
apprendre,
aspirer,
s'attacher,
attendre,
s'attendre,
autoriser,
avoir (*have to, be obliged to*),
avoir peine,
balancer,
se borner,
chercher,
concourir,
condamner,
consentir,
consister,
conspirer,
contribuer,
decider (*induce*),
se décider,
désapprendre,
déterminer,
dévouer,
disposer,
se disposer,
divertir,
donner,
employer,
encourager,
engager,
enhardir,
enseigner,
s'entendre,
entraîner,
être,
s'étudier,
s'évertuer,
exceller,
exciter,
exercer,
exhorter,
exposer,
former,
gagner,
s'habituer,
hésiter,
incliner,
instruire,
s'intéresser,
inviter,
se mettre,
montrer,
s'obstiner,
parvenir,
passer (le temps),
pencher,
penser,
perdre,
persister,
persévérer,
se plaire,
porter (*induce*),
pousser,
préparer,
prétendre,
provoquer,
réduire,
renoncer,
répugner,
se résigner,
résoudre,
se résoudre,
réussir,
servir,
songer,
suffire,
tarder,
tendre,
tenir,
travailler,
trouver,
viser.

Verbs with *de* or *à* before Infinitive.

	de	*à*
commencer,	to begin a thing one is in the habit of doing (*l'orateur commença de parler*),	to begin to do for the first time (*l'enfant commence à parler*).
contraindre,	1. in speaking of a particular action; 2. in passive voice,	in speaking of a general duty.
décider,	intransitive, to make up one's mind,	1. transitive, induce, persuade; 2. reflexive.
déterminer,	as *décider*.	
demander,	when the *person asked* is to do it, § 205,	when the *asker* is to do it.
forcer,	as *contraindre*.	
laisser,	*il ne laisse pas d'être bon*, it is good after all,	*laisser quelque chose à faire*.
manquer,	1. omit to do, fail to do; all but do,	omit to perform; implying that it was a duty.
obliger,	as *contraindre*.	
s'occuper,	mentally,	physically.
oublier,	forget to,	forget how to.
prendre garde,	*de faire*, not to,	*à ne pas faire*, not to.
résoudre,	intransitive,	transitive (*induce*), reflexive.
tarder,	*il me tarde de*, I long,	delay.
venir,[1]	have just,	happen to.

s'amuser, *s'efforcer*, *s'ennuyer*, *s'empresser*, *tâcher*, *essayer*, *différer*, take *de* or *à* almost indifferently.

[1] With no preposition, *come for the purpose of*, *come and*.

APPENDIX IV.

List of some Verbs and Accusatives which omit the article, and are equivalent to a single verb. Syntax, § 22.

Ajouter
foi (*à*), believe.

Avoir
affaire (*à*), have to do with.
besoin (*de*), need.
coutume (*de*), be accustomed.
dessein (*de*), intend.
droit (*à*), be entitled to.
envie (*de*), desire.
faim, be hungry.
garde,[1] care, desire.
honte (*de*), be ashamed.
horreur (*de*), shudder at.
lieu, take place.
lieu (*de*), have reason to.
mal (*à*), have a pain in.
part (*à*), participate.
peine (*à*), have difficulty.
peur (*de*), fear.
pitié (*de*), pity.
raison, be right.
recours (*à*), have recourse.
soif, be thirsty.
soin (*de*), take care to.
tort, be wrong.
vent (*de*), get scent of.

Chercher
fortune, seek one's fortune.
querelle (*à*), pick a quarrel.

Courir
risque (*de*), run risk of.

Demander
audience, ask for an audience.
compte (*à quelqu'un de quelque chose*), call to account for.
grâce, ask for mercy.
pardon (*de*), apologise for.
justice, demand justice.
raison (*de*), call to account for.

Donner
audience, give audience.
carrière, give scope.
cours (*à*), pass, circulate.
jour, (1) fix a day, (2) facilitate.[2]
lieu, give occasion.
naissance, give rise.
ordre (*de*), order.
passage (*à*), allow to pass.
raison (*à*), admit to be right.
sujet, give occasion.
tort (*à*), declare in the wrong.

Entendre
finesse (*à*), suspect something behind.
raillerie, take a joke.
raison, listen to reason.

---

[1] Chiefly with the negative.

[2] From the meaning of *jour*, daylight, a way out.

Faire
abstraction (*de*), bar, exclude.
accueil (*à*), welcome.
attention, pay attention.
banqueroute, fail.
beau temps, be fine weather.
bonne chère, entertain.
bonne mine à, smile on.
cas, *compte* (*de*), care about.
défaut, be wanting.
défense, forbid.
don, present.
eau, let in water, leak.
face (*à*), face, look towards.
faction, stand sentry.
faillite, fail.
fausse route, lose one's way.
feu, fire (with guns).
foi, be taken as evidence.
fortune, make one's fortune.
grâce (*à quelqu'un de quelque chose*), spare, let off.
justice (*de*), pass sentence on.
main basse (*sur*), put to the sword.
mention (*de*), mention.
mine (*de*), pretend.
naufrage, be wrecked.
peur (*à*), frighten.
pitié (*à*), move to pity.
place (*à*), give way to.
preuve (*de*), evince.
présent (*de*), present.
règle, *loi*, serve as precedent.
résistance, resist.
semblant (*de*), pretend.
serment (*de*), swear.
signe (*de*), sign.
silence, keep silence.
usage (*de*), use.

Faire (*continued*).
voile, set sail.
vœu, vow.

Impliquer
contradiction, involve a contradiction.

Livrer
bataille, fight.

Mettre
fin (*à*), put an end to.
obstacle, hinder.
ordre (*à*), set to rights.

Passer
and accusative, plead guilty.

Porter
affection, *amitié* (*à*), love.
bonheur, bring good luck.
envie (*à*), envy.
ombrage, give offence.
préjudice (*à*), injure.
témoignage, give evidence.

Prendre
acte (*de*), record.
congé, take leave.
conseil, ask advice.
cœur, *courage*, pluck up courage.
femme, marry.
feu, catch fire.
garde (*à*), pay attention to.
,, (*de*), take care not to.
haleine, take breath.
naissance, originate.
note (*de*), take a note of.
part (*à*), take part in.
pied, get a footing.
plaisir, take pleasure.
racine, strike root.

Prêter
serment, take an oath

Rebrousser
chemin, retrace one's steps.
Rendre
compte, render an account.
gorge, vomit, disgorge.
grâce, thank.
justice, do justice.
raison, render an account.
visite (*à*), visit.
Savoir
gré (*à quelqu'un de quelque chose*), be grateful.
Tenir
boutique, keep a shop.
compagnie (*à*), entertain.
Tenir, *continued.*
compte (*à quelqu'un de quelque chose*), be grateful to for.
école, keep school.
lieu (*de*), take place of.
parole, keep one's word.
registre (*de*), note down.
rigueur (*à*), refuse to listen to.
tête (*à*), resist.
Tirer
parti (*de*), take advantage of.
Trouver
grâce, find mercy.
moyen, find means.

APPENDIX V.

COMPARATIVE TABLE OF INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.[1]

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
(1.) Oblique enunciation—principal verb used affirmatively.	(1.) Oblique enunciation—principal verb used negatively, interrogatively or hypothetically.
(2.) after *douter*, *nier*, &c., used negatively (but subjunctive very common).	(2.) After *douter*, *nier*, *ignorer*, &c., used affirmatively.
(3.) after *il paraît*, *il me semble*, I have come to the conclusion that.	(3.) After *il semble*, *il se peut*, *on dirait*, *il est possible*, generally.
(4.) after *c'est que*.	(4.) After *ce n'est pas que*, *non que*, *non pas que*.
(5.) After de ce que following verbs denoting feelings or state of mind (generally).	(5.) After verbs denoting such states of mind as pleasure, indignation, &c., followed by que.
(6.) Oblique interrogation.	
(7.) Conditional occasionally after verbs of command.	(7.) Oblique petition—after verbs denoting wish, command, &c.
(8.) In a relative sentence simply qualifying a noun, &c.	(8.) In a relative sentence after a negative or implied negative.
(9.) In a relative sentence after a superlative or *le seul*, when the speaker wishes to dwell rather on the truth of the dependent clause.	(9.) In a relative sentence after a superlative, or *le premier*, *le seul*, &c.
(10.) In a relative sentence denoting an actual consequence.	(10.) In a relative sentence denoting a purpose or a contemplated consequence.

[1] This appendix is of course only to be used in connection with Chapters XX., XXI., XXII.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.
(11.) In nearly all consecutive adverbial sentences.	(11.) In a consecutive sentence introduced by **assez . . . . pour que trop, . . . pour que**, which is practically a final sentence.
	(12.) After **sans que**.
	(13.) In a final sentence—after **pour que, afin que, or que** alone.
(14.) After **quand, lorsque,** and most conjunctions of time.	(14.) After **avant que, en attendant que.**
(15.) After **jusqu'à ce que,** meaning simply *until.*	(15.) After **jusqu'à ce que** with a notion of purpose, &c.
(16.) After **où,** meaning simply *where.*	(16.) After **où** meaning *in order that there, such that there.*
(17.) In causal sentences after **parce que, comme,** &c.	
(18.) In comparative sentences after **de même, que, comme,** &c.	
(19.) In conditional sentences after **si** (except the pluperfect be used, when the subjunctive is common).	(19.) In conditional sentences after **supposé que** and other compound conjunctions.
	(20.) After **à moins que.**
(21.) Conditional after **quand,** meaning *although.*	(21.) After **quoique,** and all words meaning *although.*
	(22.) After **quel—que, quelque—que, quoi . . . que.**
(23.) After **que** used to avoid the repetition of **quand, lorsque,** &c.	(23.) After **que** used to avoid the repetition of **si.**

APPENDIX VI.

THE following deviations from the established rules of French Grammar will henceforth be tolerated in the examinations held under the auspices of the French Government decree of 26th February, 1901. The more questionable licenses admitted by the decree of 31st July, 1900, have been suppressed. Even now it will be much better for English students to conform to the ordinary rules, which rest on the practice of the best writers. The references are to sections of the Grammar.

Accidence.

8. **THE HYPHEN.** Considerable latitude is allowed in the use of the hyphen. Either *entre-croiser* or *entrecroiser* may be written. For further permissible cases, see §§ 48, 59, 148 Accidence; 30, 80 Syntax.

9. **THE APOSTROPHE.** It is allowable to omit the apostrophe in compounds of **entre**, as *entr'ouvrir* or *entrouvrir*, *s'entr'aider* or *s'entraider*.

26. **NOUNS WITHOUT PLURAL INFLEXION.** Proper names preceded by a plural article *may*, in all cases, take the sign of the plural, as *les Corneilles* (see Syntax,

§ 26). So may foreign nouns completely naturalised, as *des exéats*. The number of such nouns is, of course, steadily increasing.

45, 46. **NOUNS WITH TWO GENDERS.**

Amour remains, of course, masculine in the singular; in the plural either gender is allowed, as *de folles amours*, *des amours tardifs*. This does not apply to *Amours*, meaning Cupids, which is always masculine.

Automne, enfant, are of either gender indifferently.

Hymne may be treated as of either gender in both meanings, religious and secular.

Orge may remain feminine in all cases, including *orge mondé(e)*, *orge perlé(e)*, &c.

Orgue, like *amour*, is a masculine noun. The odd rule, making it feminine in the plural, need not now be observed. Thus both *les grandes orgues* and *un des plus beaux orgues* are admissible.

Pâques is masculine singular when simply used to denote the date, feminine when it refers to the religious festival. It is now permitted to make it feminine plural in speaking of the date also, *i.e.*, either *à Pâques prochain* or *à Pâques prochaines* is admissible. But the masculine singular must not be used in phrases like *Pâques fleuries*, *faire de bonnes Pâques*.

47. **GENDER OF** *GENS*. When *gens* is treated as feminine, all adjectives referring to it may also be feminine, as *instruits* or *instruites par l'expérience*, *les vieilles gens sont soupçonneux* or *soupçonneuses*. The rule that *gens* is feminine with adjectives having a distinct form for the feminine, masculine with other adjectives, is presumably unaltered.

48. **COMPOUND NOUNS.** The use of the hyphen in

compound nouns formed of two nouns connected by a preposition, which is now somewhat arbitrary (being used in *chef-d'œuvre*, for instance, and not in *pomme de terre*), is no longer obligatory.

60. **NOTES ON CARDINALS, &c.** The hyphen required below 100 is no longer obligatory. The sign of the plural must be retained with *cent* and *vingt* multiplied by another number when they are followed by a noun, as *quatre-vingts hommes*. The *s* being carried in pronunciation, no change is possible. But the *s* may also be inserted when *cent* and *vingt* are followed by another numeral. Thus we may write either *trois cent quatre vingt dix* or *trois cents quatre vingts dix*. As to *chapitre quatre-vingt*, where the cardinal is used for the ordinal, there is no ruling.

Mille may be used instead of *mil* in giving the date from the Christian Era.

74. The forms *qu'est ce ci*, *qu'est ceci*; *qu'est ce là*, *qu'est cela* may be used indifferently.

148. **INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION.** The hyphen in the interrogative conjugation is no longer obligatory; for example, *est-il?* may be written *est il?*

Syntax.

2. **SUBJECTS NOT COUPLED BY *ET*.** The plural is allowed when there are several subjects not coupled by *et*, as *sa bonté, sa douceur, le font admirer*. It should be remembered that in such cases *tout*, or some such word, is often inserted to sum them up. In that case, we are obviously limited to the singular, as *sa bonté, sa douceur, tout le fait admirer*.

3, 4. **SUBJECTS COUPLED BY** *NI, COMME*, &c. A plural verb is tolerated in all cases. The following examples are given :—

Ni la douceur ni la force n'y peuvent (or *n'y peut*) *rien.*

La santé comme la fortune demandent à être ménagées (or *demande à être ménagée*).

Le général avec quelques officiers sont sortis (or *est sorti*) *du camp.*

Le chat ainsi que le tigre sont des carnivores (or *est un carnivore*).

[In cases where there is a logical distinction of meaning, careful writers will, no doubt, continue to discriminate between singular and plural.]

5. *CE* **AS NOMINATIVE.** The use of *c'est* instead of *ce sont* is tolerated in all cases where a plural noun or a plural pronoun of the third person follows. Thus *c'est* or *ce sont des montagnes et des précipices ; c'est eux* or *ce sont eux.*

7, 9. **NUMBER OF VERBS WITH COLLECTIVES**, &c. In all cases where a collective noun or an adverb of quantity is followed by a genitive plural, the verb may be put in the plural, as *un peu de connaissances suffit* or *suffisent.* [Thus in the case mentioned at the end of § 7 and in that mentioned in § 9, where *le peu de* means "the fewness," a plural verb would be tolerated.]

With reference to *plus d'un*, the rule is different. It is allowed to take the verb in the singular, even when followed by a genitive plural, as *plus d'un de ces hommes était* or *étaient à plaindre.*

23*a*. **THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.** The substitution of *de* for the partitive article before adjectives is no longer essential. Constructions like *du bon pain, de la bonne viande, des bons fruits* are tolerated.

26. **PROPER NAMES OF PERSONS.** The sign of the plural may be added in all cases ; it is permitted to write *les Corneilles* as well as *les Gracques*. In this connection it should be remarked that *des Virgiles* may now mean either copies of Virgil, or editions of Virgil, and that *des Meisonniers* may be used to denote pictures by Meisonnier.

26*b*. **ARTICLE A PART OF SOME PROPER NAMES.** The omission of the article with certain foreign, principally Italian, names as *le Tasse*, *le Corrège* is tolerated.

27. **SINGULAR AND PLURAL.** There are a number of cases in which French prefers a singular to a plural noun, especially if a genitive is used. The cases are mostly those in which, in English, an adjective might be substituted. Such examples are *des habits de femme*, "feminine attire," *des prêtres en bonnet carré*, "square-capped priests." The plural will in future be tolerated in such constructions, *des habits de femmes*, *des prêtres en bonnets carrés*. Other examples given under the same head are *des confitures de groseille* or *de groseilles*, *ils ont ôté leur chapeau* or *leurs chapeaux*.

30. **COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.** The first class, *nouveau-né*, *court-vêtu*, &c., may be written without the hyphen, but no change is allowed in their inflection. Thus we may write either *nouveau-nées* or *nouveaunées*, either *court-vêtues* or *courtvêtues*.

In the second class also no change of inflection is allowed.

30*a*. **ADJECTIVES UNDECLINED.** Compound adjectives of colour must still remain uninflected, as *des robes bleu clair*, *des costumes vert d'eau*, like *des habits marron*.

31. **TWO ADJECTIVES CONNECTED BY *ET*.** It is permitted to write *l'histoire ancienne et moderne* as well as *l'histoire ancienne et la moderne*.

32. **ADJECTIVES WITH NOUNS CONNECTED BY** *ET*. An adjective in the masculine plural may be used with any group containing one masculine noun, whatever the gender of the nearest noun, as *appartements et chambres meublés*.

38. *FEU*, *DEMI*, *NU*, &c. The agreement of these adjectives with the nouns they precede is tolerated, and so is the omission of the hyphen. Thus we may write *nu pieds* or *nus pieds* as well as *nu-pieds; une demi heure* or *une demie heure* as well as *une demi-heure; feue la reine* as well as *feu la reine*.

The adjective *franc de port* before the noun may be inflected, as *envoyer franc* or *franche de port une lettre*.

38*a*. *AVOIR L'AIR*, &c. The distinction between *elle a l'air doux* and *elle a l'air douce* is not insisted on.

In using *se faire fort de* it is permitted to inflect *fort*.

41. **REMARKS ON THE SUPERLATIVE.** The delicate distinction (4) between the ordinary superlative and the absolute superlative, *i.e.*, between *les plus tranquilles* and *le plus tranquilles*, is not insisted on.

80. *MÊME*. *Même* may in all cases agree with a plural noun. The hyphen between *nous*, &c., and *mêmes* may be omitted.

110. *TOUT*, *AUCUN*, *CHACUN*. *Toute Rome* is allowed as well as *tout Rome*. A woman may write either *je suis tout à vous* or *je suis toute à vous*. It is permissible to say *des marchandises de toute sorte* or *de toutes sortes*, *la sottise est de tout (tous) temps et de tout (tous) pays*, and similarly *ne faire aucun projet* or *ne faire aucuns projets*. With *chacun* an odd license is permitted, which would be forbidden in English. The plural possessive adjective may be used after it, *i.e.*, *remettre les livres chacun à leur place*, instead of the logically correct *chacun à sa place*.

212. **PRESENT PARTICIPLE OR GERUND.** The main principle, that the inflected participle denotes the state, the invariable gerund the action, is adhered to, but importance is not attached to delicate distinctions. The example given is *des sauvages vivent errant* or *errants dans les bois.*

219. **IDIOMATIC USE OF** *EXCEPTÉ*, &c. According to the existing rule, the participles *approuvé*, *attendu*, *ci-inclus*, *ci-joint*, *excepté*, *non compris*, *y compris*, *ôté*, *passé*, *supposé*, *vu*, remain unchanged when they stand before the nouns to which they refer. Their agreement with them is now tolerated. Thus either *je vous envoie ci joint* or *ci jointe copie de la pièce* is allowed.

221, 228. **PAST PARTICIPLE OF TRANSITIVE VERBS.** In two cases some license is allowed in the inflection of the past participle—(1) When the past participle of a verb conjugated with *avoir* is followed by an infinitive or another participle, it may remain invariable (as *fait* does) whatever the gender or number of the preceding object, as *les fruits que je me suis laissés* (or *laissé*) *prendre* (which I have allowed to be taken from me). (2) When the object is a relative referring to a noun of multitude with a plural genitive, the participle may agree with either the noun of multitude or the genitive, as *la foule d'hommes, que j'ai vue* or *vus.*

286. **SEQUENCE OF TENSES.** After a conditional the present subjunctive is tolerated instead of the imperfect subjunctive, as *il faudrait qu'il vienne* or *qu'il vînt.*

291. *QU'E NE.* The use or omission of the negative after *que* following a comparative or *autre*, *autrement*, is left optional, as *l'année a été meilleure qu'on l'espérait* or *ne l'espérait ; les résultats sont autres qu'on le croyait*, or *qu'on ne le croyait.*

292 to 295. **VERBS OF FEARING**, &c. The suppression of the negative is also tolerated after the verbs enumerated in these sections, and after the conjunctions *de crainte que*, *de peur que*, *à moins que*, *avant que*. The examples given are *défendre qu'on vienne* or *qu'on ne vienne : de peur qu'il aille* or *qu'il n'aille ; je ne doute pas que la chose soit vraie* or *ne soit vraie ; il ne tient pas à moi que cela se fasse* or *que cela ne se fasse ; à moins qu'on accorde le pardon* or *n'accorde le pardon*.

APPENDIX VII.

PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION OF PP. 330, 331.

In drawing up the following phonetic version of the examples on pp. 330, 331, chiefly intended to illustrate *Liaison*, the *Dictionnaire phonétique de la langue française*, by H. Michaelis and P. Passy, has been consulted. The notation is as follows, each symbol representing the italicized letters in the words printed after.

a	pa*tt*e, pa*r*t	o	p*o*t, c*ô*te, b*eau*
ɑ	pa*s*, p*â*te	ɔ	n*o*te, t*o*rt
ɑ̃	*en*, t*an*te	ɜ	bl*on*d, tr*om*pe
b	*b*out, ro*b*e	ø	p*eu*, cr*eu*se
d	*d*ent, ru*d*e	œ	se*u*l, p*eu*r
e	*é*té, d*é*jà	œ̃	*un*, h*um*ble
ɛ	f*ai*t, t*ê*te	p	*p*ar, ta*p*e
ɛ̃	v*in*, t*ein*te	r	*r*ar*e*, *r*ond
ə	d*e*, cr*e*ver	s	*s*i, ros*s*è, français
f	*f*ort, neu*f*	ʃ	*ch*at, ha*ch*e
g	*g*ant, do*gu*e	t	*t*as, pa*tt*e, *th*é
h*	*h*aut, o*h*o	u	*tou*t, *tou*r
i	n*i*, p*i*re	w	*ou*i, p*ô*le
j	*y*eux, b*i*en	v	*v*ent, ri*v*e
k	*c*ar, co*q*, *qu*i	y	p*u*, p*ur*, *eu*
l	*l*ong, seu*l*	ɥ	h*u*ile, n*u*age
m	*m*ot, da*m*e	z	*z*èle, ro*s*e
n	*n*i, â*n*e	ʒ	*J*ean, rou*g*e
ɲ	ré*gn*er, pei*gn*e		

* Not of course pronounced.

The symbol : printed after a vowel means that it is long, as ro:z (*rose*), rɔ:b (*robe*), pasa:ʒ (*passage*). A single dot means half-long. Mute letters are omitted, including *e* mute, except in such words as *de*, *le*, *que*. Letters enclosed in brackets are not always pronounced.

Du plomb à vendre,	dy plɔ̃ a vɑ̃:dr.
Un banc à dos,	œ̃ bɑ̃ a do(:).
Du tabac à priser,	dy tabɑ(k)a pri:ze.
Votre père est donc arrivé,	vɔt(r) pɛ:r ɛ dɔ̃kari:ve.
Un arc-en-ciel,	œ̃narkɑ̃'sjɛl.
Des arcs-en-ciel,	dezarkɑ̃'sjɛl (*or* dɛ).
Grand homme,	grɑ̃tɔm.
Le second et le troisième,	lə səgɔ̃[zgɔ̃] e lə trwɑ'zjɛm.
Le nid a été enlevé,	lə ni a ete ɑ̃'lve.
Un brouillard épais,	œ̃ bruja:r epɛ.
Nord-est ; du nord au midi,	nɔrdɛst ; dy nɔr o midi.
De pied en cap,	də pjetɑ̃ kap.
Des pied-à-terre.	de [dɛ] pjeta tɛ:r.
Mettre pied à terre,	mɛt(r) pje a tɛ:r.
Coud-elle bien ?	kutɛl bjɛ̃.
Il s'assied auprès de toi,	i(l) sasjetoprɛ də twa.
Le Juif errant,	lə ʒɥif ɛr:ɑ̃.
Un bœuf maigre,	œ̃ bœf mɛ:gr.
Des œufs à la coque,	dezøza la kok (*or* dɛ).
Un cerf dix-cors,	œ̃ sɛ:r di kɔ:r.
Un cerf agile,	œ̃ sɛ:r aʒil.
Cent neuf habits,	sɑ̃ nœvabi.
Vingt-neuf héros,	vɛ̃ nœ(f) he'ro.
Le dix-neuf avril,	lə di:znœf avri(l).
Un long hiver,	œ̃ lɔ̃kivɛ:r.
Suer sang et eau,	sɥe sɑ̃ke o.
Un orang-outang adroit,	œ̃ ɔrɑ̃utɑ̃ adrwɑ.
Le huit de carreau,	lə ɥit də kɑ'ro.
Dix-huit ; vingt-huit,	dizɥit ; vɛ̃tɥit.
Fusil à deux coups,	fyzi a dø ku.
Des fusils excellents,	de (dɛ) fyzizekselɑ̃.
Adam et Eve,	adɑ̃ e ɛ:v.
Aucun autre ouvrage,	okœ̃notr uvrɑ:ʒ.

Un examen intéressant,	œ̃negzamɛ̃neteresɑ̃.
Il va en Italie,	i(l) va ɑ̃nitali.
J'en suis bien aise,	ʒɑ̃ sɥi bj ˜nɛːz.
On a beaucoup appris,	ɔ̃na bokupapri.
Combien en a-t-on vus ?	kɔ̃jɛ̃bnɑ̃natɔ̃ vy.
Non avenu ; non et oui,	nɔ̃navny ; nɔ̃ e wi.
Vous allez trop avant,	vuzale trɔpavɑ̃.
Un loup affamé,	œ̃ lu afame
Il faut manger et boire,	i(l) fo mɑ̃ːʒe e bwaːr.
Le deux ou le trois août,	lə døzu lə trwɑzu.
Le premier homme,	lə prəmjɛːrɔm.
Ces petits insectes ailés,	se (sɛ) p(ə)tizɛ̃sɛktzɛle.
Les uns aux autres,	lezœ̃ ozot(r) (*or* lɛ).
Paris est le centre du bon goût,	paˈri ɛ lə sɑ̃ːtr dy bɔ̃ gu.
De bonnes œuvres,	də bɔnzœːvr.
Tu vaux autant que lui,	ty vozoˈtɑ̃ kə lɥi.
Un nez aquilin ; les onze,	œ̃ ne akilɛ̃ ; le (lɛ) ɔ̃ːz.
Basses-Alpes ; les une heure,	baːszalp ; le (lɛ) yn œːr.
Vous la rendrez heureuse,	vu la rɑ̃ːdre œrøːz (øˈrøːz).

INDEX.

N.B.—The references are to *pages*. It may be convenient to notice that pp. 1—137 form the Accidence, and 141 to the end the Syntax and Appendices.

The Index is not intended to supersede the lists of Irregular Verbs, &c., printed in other parts of the book, but many Verbs are inserted in it because their irregularities are specially referred to in the text.

A, elided in *la* 4
à (see Dative)
a and *à*, distinguished 3
abest, tantum...ut 311
abstract nouns, article with 149
abuser, case 217
accent, grammatical..... 2
,, sentence 337
,, tonic 337
accroire 116
,, *en faire...à* 230
accusative 209
,, absolute 214
,, apposition 214
,, cognate..... 210
,, double 211
,, of time and place 211
,, place of 210
,, position of adverbs as 215
,, with infinitive 214, 264
,, with *voici, voilà* 215
à ce que 294
acheter, conjugated 102
,, with *à* 233
across, how translated 246
active with *on* for Engl. passive 261
acute accent 2
adaptation, verbs, &c., of, 234
adjectival sentences 298
adjectives 160
,, as adverbs...117, 170
,, as nouns 168
,, comparison of... 39
,, compound 161
,, concord of 160
,, demonstrative ... 48
,, denoting feeling 217
,, feminine of 12
,, from present participle 278
,, of fulness, &c.... 217
,, plural of 11
,, position of 163
,, possessive 47
,, pronominal 45
,, two 166
admirable de 227
adverbial phrases with *en*... 242
,, sentences.....288, 301
adverbs, formation of 117
,, joining sentences.. 121
,, of degree, manner 120
,, of place 120
,, of quantity ...118, 144
,, of time..... 119
,, place of.....122, 215
æ 1
afin que 303
,, *de*..... 304
after, how translated..... 126
-age, termination 26

âgé de 226
agent, how expressed...223, 243
ago, *il y a* 320
aïeul, plural 9
aigre-doux 161
aïeu, accent 2
ail, plural 9
ailing members 182
-aindre, verbs in ... 71, 74, 114
ainsi, so 121
air, avoir l' 170
-aître, verbs in 72, 74, 114
-al, plural of adjectives in.. 11
à la 239
all Rome, &c. 207
aller, conjugation.....75, 108
,, as auxiliary 259
,, with infinitive 265
,, *en grandissant*, &c... 277
alors, then 120
alphabet 1
although..... 311
,, *quand (même)*..... 312
,, ellipsis of..... 312
amiable à l' 236
à moi, with verbs of motion 238
amour, gender of 35
-ans, plural of *-ant* 9
antecedent omitted 198
,, place of 192
any, how translated 206
apercevoir, s'apercevoir 210, 223
apodosis 308, 310
apostrophe 2
apparoir 113
appeal, questions of 201
appeler, conjugation 101
,, *en...à* 231
apposition, after *faire*, &c. 214
,, and genitive ... 229
,, article in..... 152
appositive complement... .. 153
approaching, with *de* 225
après with infinitive 274
arriver, present of..... 248
article 5, 148
,, definite 148
,, idioms with..... 149
à quoi bon 162
article omitted 152
,, omitted after *de, sans* 149
article omitted after *jamais* 160
,, partitive 7, 222
,, repeated..... 158
,, with *autre* 208
,, with place names ... 150
,, with names of persons 158
,, with *tout*..... 207
as, how translated 119, 121, 125
„ after *servir, traiter* 228
„ rendered by *en*..... 242
asking, verbs of, with dat... 233
assaillir, conjugation..... 68
s'asseoir, conjugated 76, 109
asservir, conjugation..... 68
assez..... 118
„ *de* 227
„ *pour que*..... 302
-assiez, &c., avoided 256
assiéger, conjugated 103
assortir, conjugation 68
astonishment, *de* 217
,, *de ce que*..... 295
,, *que* with subj. 294
Athènes, gender..... 19
attendant, en...que.....304, 306
attendu, inflected or not ... 280
attraction of relative..... 199
,, of verb 142
aucun, meaning any..... 206
au-devant de, to meet 244
au-dessous de 244
au-dessus de 244
aune, etymology..... 33
auprès de..... 246
au revoir and *à revoir* 240
aussi, so 121
„ effect on order..... 146
autant..... 119
„ *...autant* 172
„ *d'autant plus...que*... 308
„ *que* with subj..... 300
auteur, fem. 17
autre 54, 208
„ *part*, elsewhere...208, 211
„ *que*..... 208
„ *que ne* 317
„ with or without article 208
„ with *nous, vous* 208
autrui 209
auxiliaries conjugated 60
,, of mood 263

avancer, conjugated 101
avant and *devant* 243
,, *de* or *que de* 269
,, *que* with subjunctive 304
,, *que ne* 320
avec 242
,, and *de*..... 224
,, as adverb..... 179
avoir, conjugated 60, 113
,, *à* with infin. 271
,, *beau*, infinitive with 264
,, *en*, *à* 231
,, *l'air* 170
,, *peur*, *pitié*, without article 156

Bas as adverb 118
battre, conjugation 74
beau, *avoir*, with inf. 264
beaucoup 118, 220
before, how translated 126, 305
Bel, *le*..... 14
belle, *l'échapper* 180
bénir, *bénit*..... 110
bétail, *bestiaux* 9
bien 118
bien de, many 156, 220
,, *que* 311
billion, French and Engl. 41
body, parts of, 150, 160, 181, 233
boire 115
bonheur, etymology 23
bonne heure, *à la* 240
both 54, 209
bouillir, conjugation 109
braire, defective..... 116
bruire, defective 116
broad, *de largeur* 227
by, rendered by *de* 223
,, rendered by *par* ...223, 243
,, with gerund..... 277

C, pronunciation 2
,, like *g* in *second* 338
,, mute when final 320
ça, *ça*, distinguished 3
caleçon, singular..... 11
calendar 126
capital letters..... 4
cardinal numerals 40
cas, *en...que* 309
causal sentences..... 307
cause, *à...de* 307
ce..... 48, 184
,, as nominative ... .142, 185
,, indeclinable 184
,, equivalent to "the" ... 184
,, omitted after *voilà*..... 198
,, pleonastic 186
,, with *là* after verb 187
ceci 49, 189
cedilla... 2
cela 49, 189
celer, conjugated 102
celui 49, 188
,, omitted 198
celui-ci, *celui-là*..... 49, 188
celui-là as antecedent 188
,, pleonastic 188
cent 42
ce qui, *ce dont*, *ce que* ...51, 197
-cer, verbs in 101
c'est 185
,, (*aimable*, &c.), *à*..... 235
c'est, *ce sont* 185
c'est, *il est* 187
c'est que, *ce n'est pas que* ... 293
c'était à qui 198
ch, pronunciation 338
chacun..... 52
chaloir, defective 112
changer de 182, 227
chaque..... 52
charmé de 218
chatain-clair 162
chef de son..... 217
chiasmus..... 166
choir 113
chose, gender 35
ciel, plural 8
cinq, pronunciation 40
circumflex accent 3
clair-semé 161
clore, defective 116
cognate accusative..... 210
collectif, *général ou partitif* 143
collective nouns..... 143
colon before quotation 4
colour, adjectives denoting 162
combien 121
,, *de*, plural 144
,, ,, participle after 282

command, verbs of, with *que* and subj. ... 296
comme ... 246, 307
,, and *comment* ... 121
,, *qui dirait* ... 198
commencer par with inf. ... 274
comparative and *que ne* ... 317
,, sentences ... 307
comparison of adjectives ... 39
,, of adverbs ... 39, 117
,, genitive of ... 226
complex sentences ... 285
compound adjectives ... 161
,, nouns with *à* ... 238
,, ,, ,, gender ... 19
,, ,, plural ... 36
,, perfect ... 258
comprendre que, with subj. 295
concessive sentences ... 301, 308
concevoir que, with subj. ... 295
concord, first ... 141
,, second ... 148
,, third ... 192
condition, à...que ... 309
conditional, formation ... 86
,, in exclamations ... 255
,, in oblique oration 255
,, in oblique petition 296
,, in polite questions 255
,, with *quand* ... 255, 312
conditional sentences ... 308
conjugation of verbs ... 57
conjunctions ... 124
conjunctive pronouns 45, 46, 172
connaître ... 72, 114
consecutive sentences ... 301
consonants, sounds of ... 2
content de ... 218
continuer par, with inf. ... 274
contre as adverb ... 179
convenir, être or *avoir* ... 260
coopérer à ... 234
coucher, avoir or *être* ... 260
could have ... 257
countries, article with ... 150
countries, *en* and *dans* with 241
courir, conjugation ... 76, 106
coûter, past participle of ... 281
couvrir ... 68, 110
craindre, conjugation ... 71
,, etymology ... 114
craindre, que...ne ... 297, 318
crainte, de...que ne ... 318
croi for *crois* ... 85
croire ... 77, 115
crû and *cru* ... 3
cuiller, gender, &c. ... 25

Dans and *en* ... 240
,, after *prendre* ... 241
dates ... 42
dative ... 231
,, elliptical cases ... 239
,, ethic ... 235
,, of good or harm ... 234
,, of instrument ... 235
,, of pers. pron. for poss. 233
,, of place ... 236
,, of possessor ... 235
,, of relation ... 232
,, of remoter object ... 232
,, of time ... 237
,, representing *of* or *from* ... 233
,, superseded by *à* ... 174
,, used as an adjective 154
dativus commodi ... 234
davantage ... 119
d'avec ... 243
day, time of ... 43
days of month ... 44
,, names of ... 126
de (see Genitive).
,, and *avec* ... 224
,, and *par* ... 223
,, *hauteur*, &c. ... 227
,, *nos jours, du vivant de*, &c. ... 226
,, *trop, moins* ... 223
,, used wrongly for *des* ... 221
,, with geog. names ... 151
de ce que ... 294, 295
declaring, verbs of, with infinitive ... 265
,, verbs of, with *que* 289
defective verbs ... 110, 113, 116
défendre à ... 233
definite article ... 5, 148
,, ,, instead of poss. 181
dehors ... 246
demander à ... 233
,, infin. with *de* or *à* 272

déménager, *être* or *avoir* ... 260
demeurer, *être* or *avoir* ... 260
demi, inflected or not 169
,, and *la moitié* 43, 169
demi-mort 161
demonstrative pronouns 49, 184
d'entre..... 221
denying, *que ne* after..... 318
de par 243
dependent interrogative ... 201
,, sentences, inversion in 146
dépit, *en*, *que j'en aie* 231
depuis and *dès*..... 244
,, *longtemps*, &c., tense with 249
,, *quand* 249
,, *que*, tense with...249, 306
,, ,, *ne* 320
dernier, subj. after *le*..... 299
des, *dès* distinguished..... 3
dès and *depuis* 244
desire, *que* with verbs of ... 296
despairing, *que ne* after..... 318
dessus, **darauf** 179
devant and *avant* 243
devenir, conjugated 88
devoir, conjugation 69, 112
,, as auxiliary.....257, 292
,, as pleonastic 258
diæresis 3
difficile de or *à* 272
diphthongs 1
dirait, *on...de*..... 219
dire, compounds of 115
,, infinitive after 268
disconvenir mood after..... 292
disjunctive pronouns ...46, 172
,, answering to *se* 178
displeasing, verbs of..... 234
distributive pron. and adj. 52
division into syllables 324
dix, pronunciation..... 40
donc..... 120
donner intransitive 209
dont 50, 194
,, noun after has article 195
,, not used with noun gov. by prep. 195
,, order after 195
don't mention it..... 194
dormir, conjugated 67
,, *de* 210
d'où... 197
double consonants, pronunc. 335
doubt, verbs of, with *que*... 292
,, ,, *que ne* 318
douter, *que* 292
du, *dû*, distinguished..... 3
du tout 316
-duire 114
-dus, Latin participle in ... 273
dussé-je, *dût-il* 97

E, when elided 4
,, pronunciation of 332
échapper with *être* or *avoir*. 260
ecquis, Latin 207
-eindre, verbs in 71, 114
either 209
elision 4
ellipsis of antecedent 198
,, of *ce*, *celui*.. 198
,, of if, although 312
,, of nominative 148
,, of partitive word ... 221
,, of *pas* 317, 320
emotion, *que* and subj..... 294
empêcher, *que ne* after...297, 319
employer conjugated 103
emprunter, *de* or *à* 233
en (of it)..... 46
,, *aller* with *faire*..... 213
,, as a genitive..... 230
,, idiomatic uses of 229
,, used for possessive 184
en (preposition) and *dans*... 240
,, adverbial phrases with... 242
,, influence on past part.... 282
,, rendered *as*, or *like*..... 242
,, repeated 246
,, with *abonder*, &c..... 217
enfant, gender 35
-ens as plural of *ent* 9
enseigner à 232
entendre with infinitive, 213, 264
,, past part. of..... 283
entendu, *bien...que* 309
entre 245
,, with inf. 274
enunciation, oblique 286
envoyer, conjugation 108

ès 6, 240
-esse, termination 16
et (an·), *t* mute in..... 328
-et, feminine of 13
état, Etats 10
-eter, verbs in..... 101
ethic dative..... 235
être, conjugated..... 62
,, *de*.....218, 228
,, *à* (possession).....173, 235
,, conj. of verb with..... 88
,, etymology 84
,, with simple infinitive 263
,, with infinitive with *de* 269
,, with infinitive with *à* 271, 273
,, with what neuter verbs 259
êtres, les 10
euphony, adjectives 164
,, subj. tenses 256
,, *tout* inflexion..... 170
,, with *t* 96
-eur, feminine of 15
éviter, que ne after..... 319
excepté inflected or not 280
exceptional tenses..... 258

Facile de or *à* 272
façon, de, à..... 303
faillir, conjugation 111
,, infinitive with 264
faire, conjugated..... 77, 114
,, with infin. 211, 264, 284
,, case governed by..... 211
,, *de* 214
,, *ne...que* 258, 315
,, *ne...que de* 258
,, with neuter adj. 169
fait, il...beau, with infin... 263
falloir, conjugated 94, 112
faut, il, infinitive with 263
,, subjunctive with ... 297
,, *s'en* explained 231
,, ,, *de* 226
,, *s'en que...ne*..... 319
,, *peu s'en*..... 297
faute de 275, 307
fearing, verbs of, with subj. 297
,, ,, with *ne*... 318
feelings, verbs, &c., denoting 217
feminine, formation of 12

férir, féru 111
festivals, gender..... 19
feu (late) plural 11
,, construction 169
final sentences 303
finir, conjugated 66
first conjugation 64, 108
,, ,, irregularities 100, 108
fleurir, conjugation 110
force, many.....157, 220
formation of tenses 83
fortnight 44
fourth conjugation..... 71
,, ,, irregularities 114
fractions 43
frais-cueilli 161
franc-comtois 161
franc de port 162, 169
frangue (langue) 14
frémir de..... 218
frire 116
from, translated by *de* 216
,, ,, by *à* 233
fuir, conjugation 109
fulness and reverse, verbs of 217
future, formation of 86
,, idiomatic use of..... 253
,, in clauses with when 254
,, in oblique petition... 297
,, subj. how rendered 292
future perfect..... ... 254

G hard or soft 2, 338
garde, pl. of compounds of 37
garde-française 33
garde prendre, subj. after ... 297
,, ,, *ne* after 319
garder, se, subj. after 297
geler, conjugation 102
gender.. 5
genders, double..... 33
,, general rules 18
,, rules depending on termination..... 22
,, abridged rules..... 30
Génes, gender..... 19
genitive 215
,, and apposition ... 229
,, forming adverbs... 227
,, meaning *as* 228
,, meaning *from*..... 216

genitive of agent 223
,, of comparison ... 226
,, of instrument.. ... 224
,, of manner 227
,, of measure..... 226
,, of object..... 220
,, of origin..... 216
,, of place, time, 225, 226
,, of possessor 218
,, of price 228
,, of quality 218
,, of respect 227
,, of subject 220
,, partitive..... 220
,, used as an adjective 154
,, with *là, où*..... 220
,, with negatives ... 220
,, with *plus, moins* 229
gens, gender of 35
geographical names 150
-ger, verbs in..... 100
gerund 275
,, with *en* 277
,, subject of 277
gésir 110
giving, verbs of..... 232
gn, pronunciation 339
God addressed *tu* or *vous* 177
good or harm, verbs of doing 234
governed pronouns, place of... 175
grand'mère, grand'messe 4, 38
grave accent 2
grief, verbs of, with *de*..... 217
,, ,, with subj.... 294
gris-blanc 162
guère 118
-gu, -gue..... 12
guillemets 4

H aspirated or mute..... 324
haïr, conjugation 109
haut..... 118
,, *de, de haut* 227
hearing, with inf. 264
,, with *qui* or participle 265
hériter, case after 217
héros, feminine of 16
heur (luck) 23
high (*de hauteur*) 227
hindering, with subj. 297
historical present 247
hors, hors de 246
how, translat on of 121
however, *quelque*, &c. 205
hyphen 2
,, with numerals..... 42

I elided in *si* 4
if, ellipsis of 312
ignorer, mood after 292
il est, c'est... 187
il y a, conjugated 94
,, meaning *ago* 320
,, syntax 144
,, *que* 306
,, followed by *que...ne* 320
imperative, formation 85
,, past..... 258
,, pronouns with, 99, 175
imperfect, formation..... 83
,, use 249
,, for past condit. 256
,, compared with past def. 250
,, stem 83
,, subj. formation 83, 86
impersonally, verbs used ... 144
impersonals, conjugation... 93
,, syntax 144
,, with inf. 263, 268
,, with subj. ... 297
imposer en...à ..... ,.. 230
in, rendered by *dans* or *en* 241
,, ,, *de* after super. 221
indefinite article 6
,, pronouns ... 52, 203
indignation. with subj..... 294
-ine, termination 16
infinitive..... 262
,, as nominative 262
,, derived tenses..... 86
,, historical 269
,, in oblique oration 265
,, in conj. sent. ... 303
,, in concessive sent. 313
,, in final sentences 304
,, in exclamations, &c. 266
,, really a noun 262

infinitive subject of 274
,, without preposition 262
,, with *à* 270
,, with *de*..... 266
,, with *entre* 274
,, with *par* 274
,, with *pour*..... 270
,, with *que de* 269
inspirer à 233
instruire, conjugated... 73, 114
instrument 224, 235, 243
interrogation, oblique 287, 296
interrogations, order in ... 145
interrogative adj. and pron. 51, 199
,, adverbs 122
interrogatively, verbs conj. 95
inversion 145
irregular verbs, table 130
issir, *issu* 108, 111
it is..... 185
it pleonastic 179
,, with preposition 178
ivre-mort 161

Jamais 118, 316
,, *homme* 160
jeter, conjugated 101
jouir de 217
jour, *du*, *au lendemain*..... 237
joy, verbs of, with *de* 217
,, ,, with subj. ... 294
judging, verbs of, with *à* .. 235
jusqu'à 246
,, *ce que* 304, 305

K, in what words 1

L *mouillé* 333
l', participle agreeing with 282
la, *là*, distinguished 3
là with preposition 179
,, with *en* (of it) 220
laisser, with infinitive 213, 264
,, participle of 283
Latin and French verbs ... 104
laver, *se*, conjugated 91
le, *la*, *les*, pleonastic..... 180
léger-vêtu 161
lequel as epithet..... 193
,, declined 50
lequel distinguished from *qui* 195
,, interrogative..... 51, 203
,, with genitive 203
les Newton 159
leur, no feminine 15
liaison..... 329
lieu, *au..que* 306
limbe, *limbes* 10
lire, conjugated..... 78
livre, gender 33
loin que 311
l'on 52, 204
Londres, gender..... 19
long de, *de longueur* 227
lorsque 304
,, *e* elided 4
loup-garou 38
lui, *qui* 188
lui-même not *soi* 178
luire, conjugation 74, 114
l'un l'autre 54

M, pronunciation..... 334, 336
madame, pleonastic 183
majuscules (*lettres*) 4
mal, compared 39
,, as negative 120
malgré que..... 311
malheur, etymology 23
ma mie 47
manger, conjugated 100
manière de.. à 303
manner, genitive of 227
,, dative of 235
manquer with inf..... 264
many, how translated 118
many a (*tel*) 190
maudire 115
measure, genitive of..... 226
meilleur, *mieux* 39
même, *le* 48, 191
,, *mêmes*, with nouns... 191
,, *un*..... 191
mener, conjugated..... 102
mentir, conjugation 68
merci, gender 33
mien without *le*..... 181
might have..... 257
mil 42
mille 42
millier 43

million 42
mine, thine..... 181
,, a friend of 181
minuscules (*lettres*) 4
moins 118
,, and *moindre* 39
,, *de* or *que*..... 229
,, *à...de* 267, 310
,, *à...que* subjunctive .. 310
,, ,, negative 318
moitié, la 43, 169
,, with gen. pl. 144
mon ami, mon capitaine ... 183
monsieur..... 183
,, pleonastic 183
monter, être or *avoir*..... 260
,, transitive 209
month, days of 44
months 126
,, republican..... 127
mood, aux. verbs of ... 176, 263
more, the, the better... 172
most, a 171
motion, verbs of..... 88, 259
,, ,, followed by *à*... 237, 238
,, ,, with infinit. 265
moule, etymology 34
mourir 78, 109, 110
mouvoir, conjugation 112
moudre ,, ... 114
multitude, nouns of 143
muteness of final consonant 325

N, pronunciation 334, 336
naître 74, 116
nasal vowels 2
ne (see Negative).
nearness, with *de* 225
necessity, with subjunctive 296
negative, use of..... 314
,, adverbs 118
,, clauses followed by subj. 298
,, pronouns 53
negatively, verbs conj 94
negatively-interrog., verbs conj 97
neither, pronoun 54
ne...pas .....l..... 315
ne or *ne pas* after *si* 319
ne pas with infinitive..... 315
ne...plus 315
,, *que* 315
ne...que 315
n'était, si omitted 312, 320
neuf, pronunciation 40
neuter verbs 259
,, ,, past part. of 260, 280
ni...ni, words joined by ... 142
nier que 292
non, non pas 314
non que, non pas que...294, 307
nonobstant que 311
nouns, compound..... .. 36
,, different senses in sing. and plural . 9
,, English rendered by verbs 160, 275
,, feminine of 12
,, gender of 18
,, plural of 7
,, used in plural only 9
nor at beg. of sentence 321
notre, votre, idiomatic 183
nous autres..... 208
nouveau, compounds of ... 161
nu 169
nuire, conjugated 74
,, *se*, conjugated 92
,, *à* 234
nul 53
nulle part, nowhere ... 120, 211
number 5
numerals..... 40

Obedience, verbs of 234
obéir passive 234
oblique enunciation ... 286, 289
,, interrogation...287, 296
,, petition... .....288, 296
o'clock 43
œ 1
œil, plural 9
œuvre, gender 33
of for agent, old English .. 224
offrir, conjugation 68, 110
-oindre, verbs in..... 74, 114
on 52, 203
only, *ne que, ne faire ...que* 315
,, expressed by *seul* ... 316
optative 257

ordinal numerals 41
orge, gender 35
orgue, gender..... 35
origin, genitive of..... 216
orthographic signs..... 2
oser, *pas* omitted with 317
où relative ; dverb..... 122
,, for *dans lequel*. &c. 196
,, meaning when 304
,, *que* 306
,, with *en* 220
ou, *où*, distinguished..... 3
oublier, *de* or *à* 272
ouï. inflected or not 280
ouïr, conjugat on 111
,, with infinitive 213
ouvrir, conjugation 68, 110

P, not sounded 338
page, etymology..... 33
paître, conjugation 74
pal, plural 8
pantalon, singular..... 11
Pâque, *Pâques*, gender..... 35
par, preposition..... 243
,, and *de*..... 223
,, *de* ..*le roi* 243
,, *là* 179
,, *où* 197
,, with infinitive 274
paraît, *il*...*que* 293
parce que 307
pardonner à 234
,, passive 234
parler, conjugated..... 64
parmi 245
part, *de ma* 184
partir, conjugation 68
participle, present..... 276
,, formation..... 106
,, superfl. in Eng. 247
,, syntax 279
partitive article..... 7, 157, 222
,, genitive 156, 220
,, words 118, 221
,, ,, ellipsis of... 221
pas 118
,, omitted 317, 320
passé. when inflected 280
passer, *être* or *avoir* 259
,, *pour* 270
passive voice 89
,, equivalent of 261
,, verbs that have no... 234
pas un..... 53
past anterior 253
,, definite, formation ... 106
,, ,, derived tenses 86
,, ,, and imperf.... 249
,, ,, indefinite..... 257
payer, conjugation of 103
pêcheur, *pêcheur* 15
peine, *à*, effect on order ... 146
,, *que* 306
penser à.. ..... 173, 234
,, with inf. 264
perceiving, verbs of 222
periphrastic interrogative... 200
,, tense-forms ... 258
permission, with subj. 296
person-endings 106
personal pronouns 45, 172
personne 53
,, meaning any one... 206
peser, past participle of ... 281
petition, oblique 288, 296
peu and *un peu* 118
,, as negative 120
,, *le*...*de*, number ... 144, 282
,, *pour*...*que* 205, 308
,, *qui* with subj. 299
peur, *de*...*que ne* 318
peut-être, effect on order ... 146
pire, *pis* 39
place, what case 211, 236
plaire à 234
pleasing, verbs of, case..... 234
pleonasm of *ce* 186
,, *devoir*, &c. ... 258
,, govd. pron. ... 177
,, *le*, *la*, *les* 179
,, nominative ... 148
,, *que*..... 186
plupart, *la*, number 144
pluperfect 252
,, subjunctive for conditional 57, 310
plural, formation of 7
plus..... 118
plus de or *que*..... 229
,, meaning no more 316
plusieurs 15, 54

pluralia tantum 11
poêle, etymology 34
point, negative 118
point à ce...que 301
,, *au...que* 301
point, au, de 237, 303
posé que 309
possessive adj. and pron. 47, 181
,, repeated 184
,, replaced by *en* ... 184
possessor, dative of 235
,, genitive of 218
possible, adj. or adv..... 170
pour, preposition 245
,, in casual sent..... 307
,, in cond. sent. 313
,, with infinitive..... 270
,, *peu que* 308
,, *que* 303
pourvoir, conjugation 113
pouvoir, conjugated .. 79, 112
,, infinitive no prep. 263
,, *pas*, omitted with 317
pourvu que..... 309
préférer, conjugated..... 103
prendre, ,, ... 79, 115
,, *s'en...à* 231
,, with dative 234
prepositions, list of 123
,, not joining nouns 247
,, repeated 246
present for future 248
,, historical 247
,, ind., formation, ... 86
,, of *arriver*, *tomber* 248
,, participle 273
,, subj., formation 83, 106
,, with *depuis*, &c. ... 248
près de 225, 246
prêt à 226
preterite (see Past).
prévaloir, conjugation 112
prévoir, ,, ... 113
price, accusative of 211
,, genitive of 228
primitive tenses..... 54
primus fecit 172
profiter de 217
pronominal adjectives 45
,, verbs 91
,, ,, participle . 284
pronominal verbs, translation 93
pronouns, classification of . 44
,, conjunctive...45, 172
,, demonstrative48, 184
,, disjunctive... 45, 172
,, distributive 52
,, governed, order 175
,, indefinite... 52, 203
,, interrogative 51, 199
,, personal 45, 46, 172
,, position of... 99, 175
,, possessive... 46, 181
,, reciprocal..... 54
,, reflexive ... 46, 178
,, relative..... 50, 192
,, repeated 178
proper names, plural 158
protasis 308
proverbs, article omitted in 158
puer, with acc. 210
puis..... 120
puisque, *e* of elided 4
puissé-je 97
punctuation of relat. sent. 198
purpose in adjectival sent. 300
,, adverbial sent. ... 303
,, rendered by infin. 270

Qu, pronunciation..... 339
qualifier de..... 228
quand, with cond..... 312
,, with future 304
,, with plup. subj. ... 313
,, *même* 312
quantity of syllables..... 337
,, adverbs of... 118, 144
que or *où* for *dans lequel* ... 196
,, for if..... 309
,, for when..... 197, 305
,, interrogative..... 51, 200
,, meaning so that 301
,, pleonastic after *c'est* .. 186
,, relative..... 50
,, various uses 353
,, with conditional... 302, 312
,, with superlative 308
que de, after *avant* 269
,, ,, *c'est* 186, 269
,, ,, comparative . . 269
que si 322
que ne, until, unless... 306, 311

que ne, with comparative or *autre* 317
,, equal *quin* 317
quel 51, 201
quelconque 54
quel...que 52, 205
quelque 52, 205
,, meaning any..... 206
,, meaning however... 205
,, with numerals 205
quelque chose, gender 35
,, *de* with adjective... 223
,, *part*, somewhere ... 211
,, *part, que* 306
quelque...que 52, 205
quelques, les, the few 206
quelqu'un 52, 207
,, *de moins* 223
querir 109, 111
qu'est-ce qui or *que* 200
questions of appeal 266
,, repeated 202
qui and *lequel* 193
qui and *que*, relative 193
,, *de* 221
,, demonstrative..... 196
,, *est-ce qui* or *que* 200
,, interrogative 51, 200
,, *ne*, consecutive 320
,, *pis èst* 198
,, *que* 205
,, *que ce soit* 206
,, relative..... 51, 192
quiconque 54, 199
quin? Latin 317
Quint, Charles 44
quinze-vingts, les 42
quis, siquis, ecquis, Latin... 207
quisquam, Latin 206
quivis, Latin 206
quoi, de, wherewithal 193
,, *il n'y a pas de* 194
,, relative..... 193
,, interrogative..... 201
,, followed by *de*... 201, 223
quoique 311
,, *e* of, elided 4
quoi...que 205
quoi que ce soit 206

Raillerie, entendre 156
rapporter, dative or *à* 174
ravi de 218
ravoir 113
recevoir. conjugated ... 69, 111
reciprocal pronouns 54
reconnaître à 233, 235
redoubler de 182, 227
reflexive pronouns..... 46
,, omitted with *faire* 213
reflexive verbs, conjugated 91
,, dative with..... 173
,, past participle of 284
,, for Eng. passive... 261
regular verbs, table 128
relâche..... 34
relative adverbs..... 122
,, pronouns...50, 129, 192
,, ,, idiomatic use 195
,, ,, position 192, 195
,, clauses, ind. or subj. 298
,, ,, punctuation 198
relatives, to address 183
relever de 216
remembering, verbs of 222
rencontre, à sa 184
renoncer à 234
repartir, répartir 68
repentir (*se*) 68
repetition of article 158
,, of demonstrative 187
,, of govd. pronoun 177
,, of possessive..... 184
,, of prepositions ... 246
reprocher à..... 233
Republican calendar..... 127
resemblance, verbs of 234
resistance, verbs of 234
respect, genitive of 227
ressortir, conjugation 68
,, *de* 216
reste donc 148
,, *du* or *au reste* 122
rester, être or *avoir* 260
revoir, à or *au* 240
rien..... 53
,, meaning anything 206
,, *que, moins que* 316
,, with *de* and adj..... 223
rigueur, de..... 219
rire, conjugated..... 80, 115
,, *de* 218

rompre, conjugation 74
rougir de..... 218

S, pronunciation 2, 335
,, inorganic 85, 106
sans, but for 245
,, *commettre de fautes* ... 221
,, *que*..... 302
,, *que ne* 320
sansculottides, les 127
satisfaction, verbs of..... 217
sauf..... 169
,, *à* 272
saurais, pas omitted 317
savoir, conjugated 80, 112
,, namely 266
second conjugation 66
,, ,, irregularities 108
seeing, verbs of, with infin. 264
semble, il...que 293
sentir, conjugation 68
,, with acc..... 210
seoir, conjugation 112
sept, pronunciation 40
sequence of tenses..... 313
servant, serviteur 16
servir, conjugation 68
,, *de* 228
seul, le...qui, ind. or subj. 299
shame, verbs of, with subj. 294
should have 257
si, so 121
,, if... ..... 125, 308
,, ellipsis of..... 312, 320
,, *ne* or *ne pas* 319
,, *que*, however..... 205
six, pronunciation..... 40
so, how translated..... 121
soi 52, 203, 204
soi-disant 162
soit que...soit que 311
somme, etymology..... 33
songer à 173
sorte, de la 227
,, *de...que* 301
sortir, conjugation..... 68
,, transitive..... 209
soucier, se...de 218
souffrir, conjugation ... 68, 110
sourdre 116
souris, etymology 33
sous..... 244
stems 83
stops 4
-struire 114
subjunctive mood 289
,, in subord. sentences 285
,, in oblique inter. ... 296
,, in princ. sentences 257
,, substitutes for fut. 292
subordinate sentences 285
substantival sentences 286, 289
such a great man 190
suffit, il...de 227
suivre, conjugation 114
superlative absolute 171
,, formation 39
,, genitive after ... 221
,, *qui* and subjunc. 299
,, with *a* or *an* 171, 221
supposé inflected or not ... 280
,, *que*..... 309
sur 244
surprise, with subj. 294
surseoir, survivre, à..... 234
synesis, with pronouns 161, 281
,, with participle ... 282

T, so-called euphonic... 96, 107
taking away, verbs of 233
tant 119
tant que 304
teaching, verbs of 211
tel 48, 50, 189
tel...tel 190
tel quel 190
telling, verbs of..... 232
temporal sentences 304
temps primitifs 59
tendency, dative 238
tenir, conjugation 81, 110
,, *à* 236
,, *que...ne*. subj....297, 319
,, *s'en...à* 231
tenses, formation of ... 83, 106
,, use of..... 247
-teur, fem. of..... 15
th, pronunciation 338
then to 269
Thèbes. gender 19
the more, the better..... 172
then, how translated..... 120
third conjugation 69
,, ,, irregularities 112

third person for second ... 181
ti, pronunciation 335
tiers 41
tiret 8
tistre, *tissu* 116
time of day 43
,, how long 211
,, when 211, 237
titles, numerical 44
tmesis of *ce...là* 187
tomber, present of 248
,, *être* or *avoir* 259
tonic accent 337
tour, etymology 33
tout 53, 206
,, article with 207
,, as adverb, inflected ... 170
,, *autre*, *toute autre* 170
,, *du* 316
,, meaning any 206
,, with names of towns ... 207
,, *que* 205, 311
tout-puissant 170
trait d'union 2
trait suspensif 4
traiter de 228
trancher du grand seigneur 222
transitive verbs 209
travail, plural 9
travers, *à* or *au...de* 246
tréma 2
tressaillir, conjugation 68
trop 118
trop, *de* 223
trop...pour que 302
trousses 10
trouver à 233
trust, verbs of 234
tu and *vous* 176
tutoyer 176

-Uire, verbs in 74
ullus, Latin 206
unless 310
unlikeness, verbs of 234
until 125, 305, 306
user, case 217

Va, *vas* 75
vaincre, conjugation 114
val, plural 9
valoir, conjugated 81, 111
,, past participle of ... 281
vaut, *il...mieux*, with infin. 263
,, ,, with subjunct. 297
vendre, conjugated 70
venir, conjugated 81, 110
,, *à moi* or *me* ... 174, 238
,, *de* 258
,, with infinitive 265
very much, how translated 119
vêtir, conjugation 110
viennent ensuite 148
vingt 40, 42
,, pronunciation 40
viva voce 228
vivre, conjugation 116
vocative 150
voici, *voilà*, pronouns with 176, 215
voilà-t-il 215
voilà qui 198
voir, conjugated 82, 113
,, compounds of 113
,, with infinitive ... 213, 283
,, with dative 233
vouloir, conjugated 82, 111
,, *en... à* 230
,, *ne pas...de* 221
vous and *tu* 176
vouvoyer 176
vowels, sounds of 1
vu, inflected or not 280

W 1
week 44
,, this day 44
what, that which 51, 197
,, interrogative 51, 201
whatever 198, 205
whereas 306
wherever 306
whether—or 311
when 304
,, with antecedent 197, 304
which, relative 50
,, interrogative ... 51, 202
whoever 199, 205
whose, interrogative 202
will, not future 248
wishes, with *que* and subj. 296

Y 46, 174
,, *avoir*, conjugated 94
,, *compris* 280
-yer, verbs in 103